



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



EducT918.95.302



HARVARD UNIVERSITY

LIBRARY OF THE

Department of Education

COLLECTION OF TEXT-BOOKS

Contributed by the Publishers

TRANSFERRED

TO

HARVARD COLLEGE
LIBRARY



3 2044 097 075 063

1895-

LATIN LESSONS

FOR BEGINNERS

BY

E. W. COY, PH.D.

PRINCIPAL OF HUGHES HIGH SCHOOL, CINCINNATI



NEW YORK · CINCINNATI · CHICAGO
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

~~T. 113.2957~~

Educ T 918.95.302
v

**Harvard University,
Dept. of Education Library**

TRANSFERRED TO
HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY
June 12, 1929

COPYRIGHT, 1895, BY
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY.

LAT. LESS. — COY.

PREFACE

THIS book for beginners in Latin aims to introduce the pupil early to good connected Latin reading, and at the same time to give him a thorough knowledge of the common forms and simple constructions of the language. A knowledge of the forms is essential, because it is not possible to read intelligently a language as highly inflected as the Latin without such knowledge. An early introduction to connected reading is essential, because the pupil needs to be trained to feel and know, from the beginning, that one of the chief objects in the study of the language is to learn to read it. Too exclusive attention to the study of forms in paradigms and in disconnected and trivial sentences leads to the feeling that the language is simply a curious mechanism to be examined and dissected, instead of a vehicle for the conveyance of thought. Every teacher of Latin beginners is familiar with the difficulties experienced in passing from the study of what may be termed the mechanics of the language, as seen in forms and rules, to the attempt to grasp the thought as expressed in the works of a Latin author. In order to avoid this difficulty in the present volume, the author proposes to begin very early the reading and translation of a connected Latin text.

After a few exercises have been given in the conjugations and declensions, selections have been made first from *Viri*

Romae, to form the basis of the lessons immediately following these exercises. These selections are presented in short passages, and are accompanied with such help in vocabularies and notes as the learner seems to need. Grammatical instruction in inflections and in the syntax is introduced gradually, as it is required in explanation of the text of the lesson. Each lesson also contains an exercise for translation at sight, and one made up of English to be turned into Latin, both of which are based upon the passage that has been read. Thus the vocabulary of each lesson is used three times: first, in the text to be read; again, in the passage for sight translation; and a third time, in the English to be converted into Latin. Besides this, frequent reviews have been given; and important words and constructions are repeated in several lessons, in addition to the one in which they first occur. It is believed that a working vocabulary will thus be acquired more easily and more naturally than by the mechanical memorizing of word lists.

Following the selections from *Viri Romae*, and treated in the same general manner, comes Nepos' *Life of Timoleon*, and finally *The Last Struggle for Gallic Freedom* under Vercingetorix, taken from the close of the seventh book of Cæsar's Gallic War.

In the earlier part of the book, the meaning of the new words accompanies each lesson, so that the beginner, in his first efforts at translation, may not have his attention diverted by being compelled to search for words in a general vocabulary. Farther on, the special vocabulary for each lesson is removed to the Appendix; and in the selections from Nepos and Cæsar, the student is referred for definitions to the general vocabulary at the end of the volume.

From the beginning, attention has been called to English derivatives; and groups of such words, derived from the Latin already used, have been given at frequent intervals. As soon as it could be done with advantage, groups of allied Latin words have also been given, and the more common synonymous words and phrases are noticed. It is hoped that these features may add to the interest and profit of the learner.

As an aid to pronunciation, all vowels long in quantity have been marked throughout the volume. In the case of hidden quantities, the *Hilfsbüchlein für die Aussprache der lateinischen Vokale in positionslangen Silben* of Anton Marx has been taken as authority. To assist further in securing a correct pronunciation, the accent of all inflections in the lessons has been marked. If by these means anything shall be contributed towards a more careful and accurate pronunciation of Latin in secondary schools the author's purpose will be answered.

In order to fix the attention of the learner upon the variable element in inflections, the endings of nouns and adjectives and the tense signs of verbs have been printed in heavier type.

The book is intended to furnish material for the first year's work, and is complete in itself; all grammatical forms, rules, and explanations needed being given with the lessons. What is unusual and exceptional has been excluded as confusing and foreign to the purpose of a beginner's book.

With these carefully selected portions of *Viri Romae*, Nepos, and Cæsar, an attempt is made to render the passage easier from the first to the second year's work in Latin, and to prepare the pupil, not alone for Cæsar, but

for any more suitable book that may be placed in his hands. The beginner who has been kept for the first year at the study of forms and the dreary translation of lifeless artificial sentences finds himself, at the threshold of the second year, when set at work upon a Latin author, facing a blank wall which he can neither scale nor batter down. Many plans have been proposed to relieve the difficulties of this situation; but with the limited time at our disposal, I think that there is no better way than the one presented in this book.

The author desires to acknowledge his indebtedness to a number of his colleagues and friends for generous aid in his work, and especially to Miss Clara B. Jordan, teacher of Latin in Hughes High School, Cincinnati, and Mr. A. F. Kuersteiner, formerly a teacher in the same school, whose kindly criticisms and suggestions have been of the greatest value in the preparation of this volume.

E. W. COY.

August, 1895.

CONTENTS

LESSON	PAGE
Introductory	9-12
I-III. First Conjugation — Present, Imperfect, and Future Active	13-18
IV. Second Conjugation — Present, Imperfect, and Future Active	18, 19
V. Nouns — First Declension	20-23
Declensions, Cases, Gender	23-25
VI. Fourth Conjugation — Present and Imperfect Active	26, 27
VII, VIII. Second Declension of Nouns and Adjectives .	28-33
IX. Third Conjugation — Present and Imperfect Active	34, 35
X. Third and Fourth Conjugations — Future Active	36
XI-XIII. Third Declension	37-46
XIV, XV. Perfect Active	46-50
XVI. The Irregular Verb Sum . Present and Imper- fect	51
Pluperfect of Regular Verbs	51, 52
XVII. Future Tense of Sum	53
Future Perfect of Regular Verbs	53, 54
XVIII. Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect of Sum	55, 56
XIX-XLII. The Beginnings of Rome	57-112
Declension of Quī	61
Declension of Rēs	63
Declension of Is	66
Declension of Vāgītus	70
Declension of Hic and Vīs	78
The Passive Voice	83-86

LESSON		PAGE
	Participles, and the Principal Parts of	
	Verbs	87, 88
	Imperfect Subjunctive	97
	Declension of Alius	109
XLIII.	Nouns of the Third Declension — 1-stems	112, 113
XLIV-LIX.	Romulus, the First King of the Romans .	114-152
	Declension of Ipse	116
	Declension of Ille	129
	Declension of Sinister	130
	Adjectives of the Third Declension . .	132
	Use of the Infinitive	135
	Declension of Deus	150
	The Infinitives	151
LX-LXVII.	Numa Pompilius, the Second King of the	
	Romans	152-174
	Periphrastic Conjugations	157
	The Subjunctive	159, 160
	Sequence of Tenses; Construction with	
	Cum	161, 163
LXVIII, LXIX.	Comparison of Adjectives	175-178
LXX-LXXII.	The Story of Horatius Cocles	179-184
LXXIII.	Formation and Comparison of Adverbs .	185-187
LXXIV-LXXXII.	The Story of Lævinus and Pyrrhus . .	188-210
	Indirect Discourse	188, 189
	Conditional Sentences	194, 195
LXXXIII-LXXXVIII.	Paulus Æmilius and Terentius	
	Varro	211-226
	Declension of Aliquis	225
LXXXIX-XCVI.	Life of Timoleon	227-240
	The Last Struggle for Gallic Freedom	241-253
APPENDIX		254-290
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY		291

LATIN LESSONS



INTRODUCTORY

1. The Latin alphabet is made up of twenty-four letters. The letters **w** and **j** are wanting, **k** is seldom used, and **y** and **z** are found only in words derived from the Greek or from other foreign sources.

2. There are two ways of pronouncing Latin in this country; the one known as the Roman, and the other as the English, method. By the former method, which is supposed to be nearly like that used by the ancient Romans, each letter has always the same sound; the long and the short vowels differ only in the time occupied in uttering them. By what is called the English method, the letters are given nearly the same sound as in English.

Sounds of the Letters by the Roman Method

3. (a) Vowels and Diphthongs.

a as *a* in *father*.

e as *ey* in *prey*.

i as *i* in *machine*.

o as *o* in *go*.

u as *oo* in *moon*.

ae as *ai* in *aisle*.

au as *ow* in *now*.

ei as *ei* in *feint*.

eu as *ew* in *new*.

oe nearly as *o-a* in *o-a-sis*,
not quite like *oi* in *coin*.

ui nearly as *oo-i* in *cooing*.

The vowels, when short, have the same sound, only less prolonged. The difference in the sound of the long and the short vowels is a difference of quantity, not of quality; yet in giving the sound of short *e* and of short *o* it is customary with most teachers in practice to change somewhat the quality of these vowels, in order that the distinction between the long and the short vowels may be made more apparent.

In the following words, the vowel sounds of the first syllables represent the short Latin vowels; those of the second syllables, the long Latin vowels:—

a *papá.*

o *foregó.*

e *entaíl.*

u *footstoól.*

i *redeém.*

(b) Consonants.

c and **g** are always hard, as in *cat*, *go*.

v has the sound of *w* in *wine*.

s has always the hissing sound, as in *so*; never the sound of *z*, as in *is*.

t has always the sound of *t* in *time*; never the sound of *sh*, as in *motion*.

i consonant, *i.e.* between two vowels or at the beginning of a word before a vowel, has the sound of *y* in *yes*.

bs, when both letters are in the same syllable, has the sound of *ps*, not of *bz*.

Syllables

4. (a) Every Latin word has as many syllables as it has separate vowels and diphthongs.

(b) In dividing a Latin word into syllables, a single consonant, or any combination of consonants that may begin a

word, goes with the following vowel. In compounds, the parts are separated.

(c) The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima*; the last but one, the *penult*; the last but two, the *antepenult*.

Quantity

5. Of Vowels. Vowels are either long or short.

(a) A vowel before another vowel, or **h**, is short.

(b) A vowel before **nd** or **nt** is usually short.

(c) A diphthong, a vowel derived from a diphthong, or a vowel formed by contraction, is long.

(d) A vowel before **nf**, **ns**, **gn**, **gm**, or **i** (consonant) is long.

The quantity of other vowels must be learned from observation.

6. Of Syllables. Syllables are long, short, or common.

The quantity of a syllable depends upon the quantity of its vowel, or the position of its vowel.

(a) A syllable containing a long vowel or a diphthong is long.

(b) A syllable in which a short vowel is immediately followed by two consonants (the latter of the two not being **l** or **r**) or by a double consonant (**x**, **z**) is long. It is then said to be long by position.

(c) A syllable in which a short vowel is followed by two consonants, the latter of which is **l** or **r**, is common; *i.e.* it may be used as either long or short in verse.

In the last two cases, (b) and (c), the vowel retains its short sound.

(d) All other syllables are short.

In the following Lessons, all long vowels are marked thus (˘). All unmarked vowels are short.

Accent

7. All words of two syllables are accented on the penult.

8. All words of three or more syllables are accented on the penult, if the penult is long; if the penult is short or common, the accent is on the antepenult.

It is important that the learner should, from the beginning, give careful attention to the accent of the Latin words which he uses. He will observe that, in words of two syllables, the accent is uniformly on the penult, without regard to quantity. In words of more than two syllables, the only thing necessary to be known, in order to determine the place of the accent, is the quantity of the penult. If that is long, it takes the accent; if it is short or common, the accent goes to the antepenult.

9. Divide into syllables, accent, and pronounce the following:—

māter	compulsus	amābat
pater	Infantēs	servilis
Caesaris	coepērunt	dīcantur
nātiō	vāgītus	māgnus
amicitia	exitus	differō
tempora	vēnandō	Rhodanus
faciō	imperium	cōnscribō

Pronounce the following often-recurring monosyllables, observing particularly the quantity of the vowel:—

sīc, <i>thus, so.</i>	sē, <i>himself, themselves.</i>	sī, <i>if.</i>
cūr, <i>why.</i>	mē, <i>me.</i>	nōn, <i>not.</i>
cum, <i>when, since.</i>	est, <i>is.</i>	sed, <i>but.</i>
tum, <i>then.</i>	quīn, <i>but that.</i>	hī, <i>these.</i>
quī, <i>who.</i>	ē, <i>out of.</i>	nē, <i>lest.</i>
quis, <i>who?</i>	ā, <i>from, by.</i>	-que, <i>and.</i>
ut, <i>so that, that.</i>	hōc, <i>this.</i>	et, <i>and.</i>

LESSON I

VERBS

First Conjugation — ā-stems

Amō (stem **amā-**), *I love*.

10. Latin verbs are divided into four classes, or conjugations, distinguished from one another by the final letter of the verb stem. This final letter is called the characteristic.

The characteristic¹ of the First Conjugation is **ā**.

"	"	"	Second	"	ē .
"	"	"	Third	"	a consonant or u .
"	"	"	Fourth	"	i .

11. The stem is that part of a word to which the endings are added in order to indicate different relations, such as voice, mode, tense, person, number, and case. In adding these endings to form the word, the final letters of the stem often either disappear, or undergo important changes.

12. The Pres. Ind. Act. of **amō** is thus inflected: —

Present Tense

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. ám-ō , <i>I love</i> . ²	amā-mus , <i>we love</i> .
2. ámā-s , <i>you love (thou lovest)</i> .	amā-tis , <i>ye or you love</i> .
3. áma-t , <i>he, she, or it loves</i> .	áma-nt , <i>they love</i> .

It will be observed that **amō** is for **amaō**, and that the stem vowel **ā** disappears before the ending **ō**.

¹ We shall see that the long vowel characteristics are shortened in some of the forms.

² *I love, do love, or am loving.*

A study of these forms will show that they are made up of the stem **amā-**, together with certain endings that are joined to this stem.

These endings, used in the inflection of the verb in the active voice, are as follows:—

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. -ō or -m , <i>I</i> .	-mus , <i>we</i> .
2. -s , <i>you (thou)</i> .	-tis , <i>you</i> .
3. -t , <i>he, she, or it</i> .	-nt , <i>they</i> .

These endings are added to the stem, to form the different persons and numbers. They stand for the personal pronouns, and hence are called the *Personal Endings*.

13. Like **amō** inflect the following:—

rēgnō , <i>I reign</i> .	līberō , <i>I set free, I liberate</i> .
prīvō , <i>I deprive</i> .	properō , <i>I hasten</i> .
vocō , <i>I call</i> .	ēducō , <i>I bring up, I rear</i> .
indīcō , <i>I point out, I inform</i> .	peragrō , ¹ <i>I wander through</i> .

EXERCISE

14. Pronounce, analyze into stem and personal ending, translate, and inflect:—

1. **Rēgnāmus**; properant; peragrat. 2. **Prīvās**; indicātis; rēgnant. 3. **Liberō**; educat; vocās. 4. **Properāmus**; liberāmus; peragrātis. 5. **Amat**; properās; indicō. 6. **Ēducāmus**; prīvant; amās. 7. **Peragrāmus**; vocant; properat; rēgnātis. 8. **Indicāmus**; prīvō; properātis. 9. **Ēducās**; rēgnat; liberant.

¹ Compounded of **per** and **ager**. The parts of a compound word are separated, in the division into syllables, — **pér-a-grō**.

Write in Latin and give orally:—

1. I am wandering through; we are setting free; he is reigning. 2. They hasten; he deprives; you inform. 3. We do love; he is loving; they set free. 4. You reign; I wander through; we hasten. 5. You are rearing; he hastens; they are calling. 6. Thou settest free; we deprive; she points out. 7. We are calling; you hasten; he is rearing.

15. Of **rēgnō** give the 3d sing.; 2d sing.; 2d plu.; 1st plu. Of **vocō** give the 1st sing.; 3d plu.; 2d sing.; 2d plu. Of **properō** give the 2d plu.; 3d sing.; 1st plu.; 3d plu.

Observe the following English derivatives:—

<i>amiable</i>	<i>privation</i>	<i>regnant</i>	<i>indicate</i>
<i>educate</i>	<i>education</i>	<i>vocation</i>	<i>liberate</i>

LESSON II

First Conjugation — Continued

16. *Imperfect Tense*

SINGULAR

1. **amābam**, *I was loving*.¹
2. **amābās**, *you were loving*.
3. **amābat**, *he, etc., was loving*.

PLURAL

- amābāmus**, *we were loving*.
amābātis, *ye or you were loving*.
amābant, *they were loving*.

The Imperfect Tense is formed, as will be seen, by adding to the stem the syllable **ba** and the personal endings; thus, **amā-ba-t**, **amā-bā-mus**. Hence **ba** may be called the tense sign of the Imperfect Tense.

¹ *I loved or did love.*

EXERCISE

17. *Pronounce, analyze into stem, tense sign and personal ending, translate, and inflect:—*

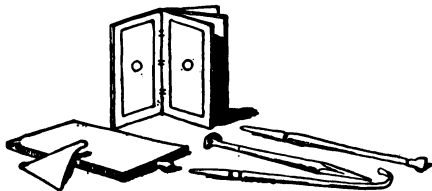
1. *Prīvābat*; *rēgnant*; *amābātis*. 2. *Peragrābās*; *vocat*; *properābat*. 3. *Indicābam*; *liberābāmus*; *rēgnābant*. 4. *Ēducābātis*; *amābās*; *vocābat*. 5. *Liberābam*; *prīvābāmus*; *rēgnābat*. 6. *Vocat*; *vocābat*; *vocātis*; *vocābātis*. 7. *Indicās*; *indicābās*; *liberant*; *liberābant*. 8. *Rēgnāmus*; *rēgnābāmus*; *amō*; *amābam*.

Write in Latin and give orally:—

1. We were liberating; he was reigning; they are rearing. 2. He hastens; he was hastening; you were calling. 3. They were traversing; they are traversing; we were loving. 4. She was informing; he was rearing; they are liberating. 5. We did liberate; he did traverse; they were hastening. 6. I called; I am calling; we were informing. 7. We call; we do call; we did call; we were calling.

18. Of *rēgnō* give the Pres. and Impf. 1st sing.; 3d sing.; 1st plu.; 3d plu.; 2d sing.; 2d plu.

Give the same of *vocō*, *liberō*, and *prīvō*.



WRITING MATERIALS

LESSON III

First Conjugation — Continued

19.

Future Tense

SINGULAR

1. amābō,¹ *I shall love.*²
2. amābis, *you will love.*
3. amābit, *he, etc., will love.*

PLURAL

- amābimus, *we shall love.*
- amābitis, *ye or you will love.*
- amābunt, *they will love.*

It will be seen that the Future Tense is formed by adding to the stem the syllable **bi** (3d plu. **bu**) and the personal endings; thus, **amā-bi-t**, **amā-bi-mus**.

Hence **bi** may be called the tense sign of the Future Tense.

In like manner inflect the other verbs already given.

EXERCISE

20. Pronounce, analyze into stem, tense sign and personal ending, translate, and inflect: —

1. Prīvābit; peragrābimus; vocābunt.
2. Amābis; liberābitis; properābō.
3. Liberābit; indicābimus; prīvābunt.
4. Peragrābis; properābitis; educābimus.
5. Vocat; vocābat; vocābit.
6. Rēgnāmus; rēgnābāmus; rēgnābimus.
7. Liberant; liberābant; liberābunt.
8. Amās; amābās; amābis.

Write in Latin and give orally: —

1. We set free; we shall bring up; he hastened.
2. He will liberate; thou didst rear; they will be traversing.

¹ The final vowel of the tense sign disappears before the ending **ō**. Compare **amō**.

² Or *shall be loving*.

3. She called; they will love; they were loving. 4. He calls; he was calling; he will call. 5. He will point out; we were pointing out; we point out. 6. You are rearing; you were rearing; you will be rearing. 7. They are reigning; they were reigning; they will be reigning. 8. I call; I was calling; I shall be calling. 9. We shall set free; they will rear; they were calling.

21. Of **vocō** give the Pres., Impf., and Fut. 1st sing.; 3d sing.; 1st plu.; 3d plu.; 2d sing.; 2d plu.

Give the same of **liberō**, **rēgnō**, and **educō**.



LESSON IV

Second Conjugation — **ē**-stems

Moneō (stem **monē-**), *I warn.*

22. The Present, Imperfect, and Future Tenses of **moneō** are formed from the stem **monē-** just as the same tenses of **amō** are formed from the stem **amā-**. The personal endings and the tense signs are the same in both of these conjugations. Compare **amā-tis**, **monē-tis**; **amā-bit**, **monē-bit**; **amā-bāmus**, **monē-bāmus**.

23.

Present Tense

SINGULAR

1. **mone-ō**,¹ *I warn.*
2. **mone-s**, *you warn.*
3. **mone-t**, *he, etc., warns.*

PLURAL

- monē-mus**, *we warn.*
monē-tis, *you warn.*
mone-nt, *they warn.*

¹ Unlike **amō**, **moneō** retains the stem vowel before the ending **ō**.

Imperfect Tense

SINGULAR

PLURAL

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. monēbam, <i>I was warning.</i> | monēbāmus, <i>we were warning.</i> |
| 2. monēbās, <i>you were warning.</i> | monēbātis, <i>ye or you were warning.</i> |
| 3. monēbat, <i>he, etc., was warning.</i> | monēbant, <i>they were warning.</i> |

Future Tense

- | | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| 1. monēbō, <i>I shall warn.</i> | monēbimus, <i>we shall warn.</i> |
| 2. monēbis, <i>you will warn.</i> | monēbitis, <i>you will warn.</i> |
| 3. monēbit, <i>he, etc., will warn.</i> | monēbunt, <i>they will warn.</i> |

24. Like **moneō** inflect the following: —

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------|
| habeō , <i>I have.</i> | teneō , <i>I hold.</i> |
| moveō , <i>I move.</i> | videō , <i>I see.</i> |
| augeō , <i>I increase, enlarge (trans.).</i> | iubeō , <i>I order.</i> |

EXERCISE

25. 1. Monet; monēbat; monēbit. 2. Iubēbam; habēbant; habent. 3. Vidēbitis; tenēmus; movēbis. 4. Augēbāmus; iubent; tenēs. 5. Habēbātis; movēbant; vidēbunt. 6. Augēbit; iubēbit; tenet. 7. Monēbimus; iubēbāmus; habētis. 8. Movēmus; vidēbant; habēbitis. 9. Habēbant; rēgnābant; videt; vocat. 10. Vident; vidēbant; vidēbunt.

1. He orders; he was ordering; he will order. 2. We increase; we were increasing; we shall increase. 3. They have; they had; they will have. 4. You (sing.) see; you (plu.) see; they will hold. 5. They were calling; they were moving; he was moving. 6. He will reign; he will have; they see. 7. You (plu.) were warning; you will

warn; you warn. 8. I am holding; I was holding; I will hold. 9. You are liberating; you were enlarging; they were ordering.

26. Of *rēgnō*, *habēō*, and *tubeō* write the 1st sing. of the Pres., Impf., and Fut.; 3d sing.; 3d plu.; 2d plu.

Of *teneō*, *vocō*, and *videō* write the 3d plu. of the Pres.; 2d plu. of the Impf.; 1st plu. of the Fut.; 3d sing. of the Impf.

Observe the following English derivatives:—

<i>habit</i>	<i>monument</i>	<i>vision</i>
<i>move</i>	<i>tenet</i>	<i>visible</i>
<i>motion</i>	<i>tenement</i>	<i>augment</i>



LESSON V

Nouns—First Declension

27.

Stella, a star.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	<i>stēlla, a star.</i>	<i>stēllae, stars.</i>
Gen.	<i>stēllae, of a star.</i>	<i>stēllarum, of stars.</i>
Dat.	<i>stēllae, to or for a star.</i>	<i>stēllis, to or for stars.</i>
Acc.	<i>stēllam, a star.</i>	<i>stēllas, stars.</i>
Voc.	<i>stēlla, O star.</i>	<i>stēllae, O stars.</i>
Abl.	<i>stēllā, by or with a star.</i>	<i>stēllis, by or with stars.</i>

28. The First Declension includes nouns whose stem ends in *a*. The terminations, made by the union of the case endings with the final vowel of the stem, are affixed to the base,—the part of the word unchanged in inflection,—to form the different cases. The

base may be found by dropping the termination of the Genitive singular,¹ which in the first declension is *-ae*.

Hence the base of *stella* is *stell-*. The terminations affixed to this, to form the different cases, are as follows:—

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	<i>-a</i>	<i>-ae</i>
Gen.	<i>-ae</i>	<i>-arum</i>
Dat.	<i>-ae</i>	<i>-is</i>
Acc.	<i>-am</i>	<i>-as</i>
Voc.	<i>-a</i>	<i>-ae</i>
Abl.	<i>-ā</i>	<i>-is</i>

(a) It will be observed that the vowel of these terminations is long in all cases except the Nom., Acc., and Voc. sing. Observe also that, although there are six different cases, we have but four different forms in the sing., and four in the plu. The Nom. and Voc. sing. are alike, the Gen. and Dat. sing., the Nom. and Voc. plu., and the Dat. and Abl. plu. The Abl. sing. is like the Nom. and Voc. sing., except that it has *ā*.

29.

VOCABULARY

rīpa, gen. *rīpae*, a bank (of a river).

aqua, gen. *aquae*, water.

casa, gen. *casae*, a hut.

incola,² gen. *incolae*, an inhabitant.

fēmina, gen. *fēminae*, a woman.

filia,³ gen. *filiae*, a daughter.

silva, gen. *silvae*, wood, forest.

rēgina, gen. *rēginae*, a queen.

via, gen. *viae*, way, road.

puella, gen. *puellae*, a girl.

est, is.

sunt, are.

¹ As the final vowel of the stem is sometimes changed, and sometimes entirely disappears before the case ending proper, the pupil would not be aided in learning the forms by referring the formation to the stem. Hence the formation of the cases is referred to that unchanged part of the noun which we have called the base.

² *Incola* is either masc. or fem.

³ *Filia* and *dea* (goddess) have *-abus* in the Dat. and Abl. plu.

māgna , gen. māgnae , adj., <i>great</i> , <i>large</i> .	longa , gen. longae , adj., <i>long</i> . ad , prep., <i>to, towards</i> ; always followed by the acc.
multa , gen. multae , adj., <i>much</i> , <i>many</i> .	in , prep., <i>in, into, on</i> .

In casā filiam relinquit, *he leaves (his)¹ daughter in the hut.*

In casam filiam dūcit, *he leads (his) daughter into the hut.*

Observe that in these sentences **in** denoting *rest in a place* is followed by the ablative; denoting *motion to a place*, by the accusative.

Rēx Albānōrum duōs filiōs habuit, *the king of the Albans had two sons.*

a. **Rēx** (*king*) is in the nom. case, the subject of **habuit** (*had*).

b. **Albānōrum** (*of the Albans*) is in the gen. case, limiting **rēx**.

c. **Filiōs** (*sons*) is in the acc. case, the object of **habuit**.

These three facts illustrate the following rules of syntax:—

Rule. — *The subject of a finite verb is in the Nominative case.*

Rule. — *The object of a transitive verb is in the Accusative case.*

Rule. — *A noun limiting another noun denoting a different person or thing is in the Genitive case.*

EXERCISE

30. 1. **Rēgīna**² iubet. 2. **Stellās** vidēbant. 3. **Ad ripam** properābimus. 4. **Via** est longa. 5. **Multae** sunt stellae. 6. **In ripā** multās incolās vidē. 7. **Māgnam** silvam peragrābat. 8. **Puellae** sunt in casā. 9. **Fēmina** in casam pro-

¹ The possessive pronouns may not be translated into Latin when they are unemphatic and may be easily inferred from the context.

² **Rēgīna** means *a queen*, or *the queen*, or simply *queen*. The Latin has no article, and the context will show what article is to be supplied, or whether none is to be used.

perābit. 10. Incolae longam viam indicābunt. 11. Rēgīnae filia est in rūpā. 12. Rēgīna filiās educābit. 13. In rūpīs sunt multae casae. 14. Puellae ad māgnam silvam properrābant. 15. Rēgīna multās filiās habet.

1. We see many stars. 2. The way is long. 3. The girls are in the hut. 4. The daughters of the queen pointed out the hut of the woman. 5. The queen was reigning. 6. She called the girl into the great wood. 7. He is hastening towards the bank. 8. The queen is ordering. 9. They are hastening towards the water. 10. The queen will order. 11. He set free the inhabitants. 12. They see the women in the forest. 13. There¹ are many stars.

Decline together *via longa, multa casa*.

Observe the following English derivatives:—

<i>stellar</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>magnitude</i>
<i>aquatic</i>	<i>sylvan</i>	<i>multitude</i>
<i>aquarium</i>	<i>magnify</i>	<i>longitude</i>

31. The Latin admits of greater freedom of arrangement of words in a sentence than does the English. This is made possible by the fuller inflection of the Latin. The natural, unemphatic Latin order is the subject followed by its modifiers, the modifiers of the verb, and, last of all, the verb. But this order is constantly being disregarded for the sake of emphasis. Any word placed out of its natural order is thus made emphatic.

Pater filiam amat, the father loves his daughter. In this sentence the words have the natural order, and no special emphasis is given to any part.

¹ Not to be translated.

Filiam pater amat. Here **filiam** is made emphatic, and we might express the thought thus: *It is the DAUGHTER whom the father loves.*

Again, **Amat pater filiam** gives emphasis to **amat**, and we might translate thus: *It is LOVE that the father has for his daughter.*

The force of the Latin sentence can be understood only by careful attention to the order of words. The pupil should, from the first, be required to read with proper emphasis the Latin in the order given, and should be trained to discover the meaning of the sentence in this way. The translation into idiomatic English should follow this exercise.

32. DECLENSIONS.—Latin nouns are divided into five declensions, distinguished from one another by the final letter of the stem, called the characteristic.

The characteristic of the First Declension is **a**.

"	"	"	Second	"	o .
"	"	"	Third	"	a consonant or i .
"	"	"	Fourth	"	u .
"	"	"	Fifth	"	e .

(a) As the stem ending is not apparent in all cases (**28**, n. 1), these declensions may in general be best distinguished by the endings, especially by the ending of the genitive singular.

The ending of the Genitive sing. of the First Declension is **ae**.

"	"	"	"	"	Second	"	i .
"	"	"	"	"	Third	"	is .
"	"	"	"	"	Fourth	"	ūs .
"	"	"	"	"	Fifth	"	eī .

33. CASES.—Latin nouns have six cases; namely, Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, and Ablative.

The Nominative corresponds in meaning and use to the English nominative; the Accusative, to the objective; the Vocative, to the

case of address; the Genitive, to the possessive, or the objective with *of*; the Dative, to the objective with *to* or *for*; the Ablative, to the objective with *by*, *with*, or *from*. These meanings will be best understood from the use of the cases in sentences.

All of the cases except the Nominative and Vocative are called oblique cases.

34. GENDER. — Latin nouns have three genders; Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.

The gender of Latin nouns, as will be seen from the following rules, is not determined solely by sex. It depends in part upon the meaning and in part upon the endings.

(a) General Rules for Gender: —

1. Names of males are masculine.
2. Names of rivers, winds, and months are masculine.
3. Names of females are feminine.
4. Names of countries, towns, islands, and trees are feminine.
5. Indeclinable nouns and infinitives used as nouns are neuter.

(b) Special rules for gender depending upon the endings will be found in the following lessons.

Nouns of the First Declension are feminine, except such as are masculine under the general rules.



CASA

LESSON VI

Fourth Conjugation — i-stems

35. Audiō (stem audi-¹), *I hear.**Present Tense*

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. audi-ō	audi-mus
2. audi-s	audi-tis
3. audi-t	audi-unt

Imperfect Tense

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. audiēbam	audiēbāmus
2. audiēbās	audiēbātis
3. audiēbat	audiēbant

Observe that the Pres. and Impf. Tenses of this conjugation are inflected throughout just like the same tenses of the Second Conjugation, with the following exceptions:—

1. In the Pres., *u* is found between the stem and the personal ending of the 3d plu. Cf. *monē-nt* and *audi-u-nt*.

2. In the Impf., *ē* is found between the stem and the tense sign *ba* in all the forms. Cf. *monē-ba-m* and *audi-ē-ba-m*.

36.

VOCABULARY

pūniō,² *I punish.*

fīniō,² *I finish.*

mūniō,² *I fortify.*

veniō,² *I come.*

volō (1st Conj.), *I fly.*

laudō (1st Conj.), *I praise.*

aquila, *an eagle.*

rāna, *a frog.*

agricola, m., *a farmer.*

bona, adj., *good.*

mala, adj., *bad.*

ē³ or ex, prep., *from, out of.*

Followed by the Ablative.

¹ The final vowel of the stem is shortened in some of the forms, as in the second conjugation. N. 1, Less. I.

² Inflect, in the Pres. and Impf. Tenses, like audiō.

³ *Ē* is used only before consonants; *ex*, before both vowels and consonants.

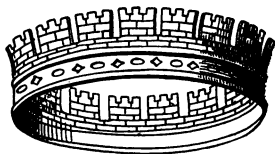
EXERCISE

37. 1. Rānās audiō. 2. In silvam veniēbant. 3. Aquilae ex silvā volant. 4. Rēgīna ad casam venit. 5. Viam mūniunt. 6. Bona rēgīna agricolās laudābit. 7. Fēmina ex casā veniēbat. 8. Filia bonae rēgīnae venit. 9. Fīniunt; finīēbant; vocant; habēbant. 10. Vident; veniunt; tenēbat; mūniēbat. 11. Rēgīna rēgnat. 12. In māgnam silvam veniēbant. 13. Longam viam peragrat. 14. Mala rēgīna agricolās pūnit. 15. Audiēbās; mūnīs; pūniēbātis; finītis.

1. The good women are in the hut. 2. The eagle will fly to the forest. 3. They were coming out of the water. 4. We are fortifying the long road. 5. The inhabitants punish the bad queen. 6. The queen was reigning. 7. They are finishing; they were finishing. 8. The farmers heard the frogs. 9. Many eagles were hastening into the wood. 10. We are coming; we are seeing; we are praising. 11. The daughter of the farmer came from the bank. 12. We hear; we were hearing; you fortify; you were fortifying.

Observe the following English derivatives:—

<i>punishment</i>	<i>finish</i>	<i>audience</i>	<i>volatile</i>	<i>laudatory</i>
<i>munitions</i>	<i>convene</i>	<i>auditor</i>	<i>laud</i>	<i>agriculture</i>



LESSON VII

Second Declension

38. **Servus**, m.,¹ *a slave.*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	sérvus	sérvī
Gen.	sérvī	servórum
Dat.	sérvō	sérvis
Acc.	sérvum	sérvōs
Voc.	sérve	sérvī
Abl.	sérvō	sérvis

Bellum, n., *war.*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	béllum	bélla
Gen.	béllī	bellórum
Dat.	béllō	béllis
Acc.	béllum	bélla
Voc.	béllum	bélla
Abl.	béllō	béllis

The Second Declension includes nouns whose stem ends in -o. The Nom. sing. ends in -er, -ir, -us, or -um. Those ending in -um are neut.; the rest are masc.

TERMINATIONS

39.

Masculine

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	-us or —	-ī
Gen.	-ī	-ōrum
Dat.	-ō	-is
Acc.	-um	-ōs
Voc.	-e	-ī
Abl.	-ō	-is

Neuter

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	-um	-a
Gen.	-ī	-ōrum
Dat.	-ō	-is
Acc.	-um	-a
Voc.	-um	-a
Abl.	-ō	-is

These terminations are added to the base, which in the above nouns is **serv-** and **bell-**, found by dropping the ending -ī of the gen. sing.

(a) It will be observed that, in masculine nouns, the vowel of these terminations is long, except in the Nom., Acc., and Voc. sing.

¹ m. = masculine; n. = neuter; f. = feminine.

Cf. 28. (a). In neuters the vowel is long, except in the Nom., Acc., and Voc., both numbers.

(b) Observe also that the endings of the Nom., Acc., and Voc. neuter are alike; being in the sing. **-um**, and in the plu. **-a**. These cases are alike in neuter nouns of all declensions, and in the plural they always end in **-a**.

It will be seen that the only difference between the endings of the masculines and the neuters of this declension is in the Nom. and Voc. sing., and in the Nom., Acc., and Voc. plu.

(c) Nouns in **-us** of this declension are the only Latin nouns in which the endings of the Nom. and Voc. sing. are not alike.

(d) Comparing the endings of nouns of the First Declension with those of the Second Declension, we find that the Acc. sing. of the First Decl. ends in **-am**, Second Decl. **-um**; Gen. plu. First Decl. **-ārum**, Second Decl. **-ōrum**; Acc. plu. First Decl. **-ās**, Second Decl. **-ōs**; Dat. and Abl. plu. both declensions, **-is**.

Where may **servī** be found (give case and number)? **servō**? **servīs**? **bellō**? **bellum**? **bella**? **bellīs**?

40.

VOCABULARY

rēgnūm , -ī, n., a kingdom.	filius , ¹ -ī, m., a son.
vinculūm , -ī, n., a bond, chain.	populus , -ī, m., the people.
caelūm , -ī, n., heaven, the sky.	fluvius , -ī, m., a river.
Amūlius , -ī, m., Amulius (a legendary king of Alba).	Albānī , -ōrum, plu. m., Albans (inhabitants of Alba).
amicus , -ī, m., a friend.	et , conj., and.
equus , -ī, m., a horse.	nōn , adv., not.

Inflect the masculine nouns given in the vocabulary like **servus**; the neuter nouns, like **bellum**.

¹ Nouns in **-ius**, like **Amūlius**, **filius**, and **fluvius**, and nouns in **-ium**, contract **-ii** in the gen. sing. into **-ī** without changing the accent.

Proper names in **-ius**, also **filius** and **genius**, drop **e** in the voc. sing.

41. Adjectives like **bonus**, *good*, are declined in the masculine like **servus**, in the feminine like **stella**, and in the neuter like **bellum**.

SINGULAR

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	bónus	bóna	bónum
Gen.	bónī	bónae	bónī
Dat.	bónō	bónae	bónō
Acc.	bónum	bónam	bónum
Voc.	bóne	bóna	bónum
Abl.	bónō	bónā	bónō

PLURAL

Nom.	bónī	bónae	bóna
Gen.	bonórum	bonárum	bonórum
Dat.	bónīs	bónīs	bónīs
Acc.	bónōs	bónās	bóna
Voc.	bónī	bónae	bóna
Abl.	bónīs	bónīs	bónīs

In giving the forms, read from left to right.

In like manner decline the adjectives **multus**, -a, -um, **māgnus**, -a, -um, **longus**, -a, -um, and **malus**, -a, -um.

42. Study the following sentences:—

Māgnum bellum gerit, *he is waging a great war.*

Bonōs amīcōs habet, *he has good friends.*

Via est longa, *the way is long.*

Observe that the adjectives **māgnus**, **bonōs**, and **longa** have the same gender, number, and case as the nouns to which they belong. Hence the following

Rule.—*An adjective agrees with its noun in Gender, Number, and Case.*

EXERCISE

43. 1. Amūlius filiōs habet. 2. Oppidum Albānōrum tenēbat. 3. Multōs servōs dominus habēbat. 4. Albānī māgnū bellum finiēbant. 5. Amūlī amīcus est. 6. Filiōs et filiās rēgīnae vidēmus. 7. Servi dominum nōn amant. 8. Populus multōs amīcōs habet. 9. In fluvi rīpā est māgnū oppidum. 10. Albānī multōs equōs et servōs habēbant. 11. Stellae in caelō sunt. 12. Vincula servōs nōn tenent. 13. Albānōrum oppida liberābat. 14. Rēgnī oppida mūniēbat. 15. Servi bonum dominum amant. 16. Multa aqua est in fluviō. 17. Ad oppidum amīcus populī properābat. 18. Filiī Amūlī servōs liberābunt.

1. Many stars are in the sky. 2. Amulius finished many wars. 3. Amulius is not a friend of the queen. 4. The master was punishing the bad slaves. 5. The good people were moving into the town. 6. He will increase the kingdom of the Albans. 7. The horses were hastening towards the river. 8. He will set free the sons and daughters of Amulius. 9. He wanders through the kingdom of the Albans. 10. The bad master does not have many friends. 11. The chain is long. 12. The water of the river is good. 13. He will finish the war.

Inflect together *māgnū oppidum*, *bonus amīcus*, and *longū vinculum*.

Observe the following English derivatives:—

<i>filial</i>	<i>popular</i>	<i>servile</i>
<i>domineer</i>	<i>nonentity</i>	<i>belligerent</i>
<i>amicable</i>	<i>equine</i>	<i>servitude</i>

LESSON VIII

Second Declension — Continued

44. **Ager**, m., *a field.*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
N. V.	áger	ágrī
Gen.	ágrī	agrórum
Dat.	ágrō	ágrīs
Acc.	ágrum	ágrōs
Abl.	ágrō	ágrīs

Puer, m., *a boy.*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
N. V.	púer	púerī
Gen.	púerī	puerórum
Dat.	púerō	púerīs
Acc.	púerum	púerōs
Abl.	púerō	púerīs

Vir, m., *a man.*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
N. V.	vír	vírī
Gen.	vírī	virórum
Dat.	vírō	vírīs
Acc.	vírum	vírōs
Abl.	vírō	vírīs

45. Most nouns of the Second Declension ending in **-er** are declined like **ager**. The principal nouns declined like **puer** are

gener, m., *a son-in-law.*

socer, m., *a father-in-law.*

liberī, m., *children* (plu. only).

vesper, m., *evening.*

(a) The terminations added to the base of nouns in **-er** and **-ir** are the same as in nouns in **-us**, except that the Nom. and Voc. sing. have no termination.

(b) **Vir** and its compounds are the only nouns commonly met with that end in **-ir**.

(c) It will be noted that, in nouns like *ager*, the *e* is not found in the stem, but is simply inserted before *r*, in the Nom. and Voc., to aid in the pronunciation.

46.

VOCABULARY

aper, *apri*, m., a wild boar.

caper, *capri*, m., a goat.

culter, *cultri*, m., a knife.

faber, *fabri*, m., a carpenter.

liber, *libri*, m., a book.

magister, *magistri*, m., a master.

doceō (st. *docē-*), I teach.

hortus, -i, m., a garden.

dominus, master of a household, or of slaves.

magister, master of a school.

EXERCISE

47. 1. *Caper et equus in viri hortō sunt.* 2. *Magistri puerōs amant.* 3. *Magister generum rēgināe docēbit.* 4. *Liberi fabri librōs et cultrōs habent.* 5. *Sunt multi capri et apri in silvā.* 6. *Dominus malōs puerōs pūniēbat.* 7. *Vir in soceri hortum venit.* 8. *Magister amicī liberōs docet.* 9. *Multōs aprōs in agrīs vidēbam.* 10. *Liberi et fabri et agricolae et rēgināe filiī in oppidum properābant.* 11. *Ager agricolae est in fluvi ripā.* 12. *Populus nōn multōs amicōs habet.*

1. The masters were teaching the carpenter's sons. 2. They were traversing the fields of the Albans. 3. The father-in-law is hastening into the town. 4. He saw the goats and wild boars in the farmer's garden. 5. The slaves saw the horses of (their) master. 6. The carpenter had many knives. 7. The farmer has many¹ good horses. 8. The children saw the eagles in the wood. 9. The boys came to

¹ The Latin should be "*many and good.*"

the bank of the river. 10. The men called the children into the hut.

Decline together **bonus vir, magnus culter, malus aper.**

Observe the following English derivatives:—

<i>virile</i>	<i>fabric</i>	<i>docile</i>
<i>puerile</i>	<i>library</i>	<i>doctor</i>
<i>capricious</i>	<i>magistrate</i>	<i>horticulture</i>



LESSON IX

Third Conjugation—Consonant and u-stems

48. Most verbs of the Third Conjugation are formed from stems ending in a consonant. In the other conjugations, the present stem, as we have seen, is the same as the verb stem.

In the Third Conjugation, the present stem is formed by adding *e* to the verb stem. This vowel appears as *i* in the Pres. Ind. Act., except in the 1st pers. sing., where it disappears before the ending *-ō* (cf. *amō*); and in the 3d pers. plu., where we have *u* before *-nt*.

Regō (verb stem *reg-*; pres. stem *rege-*), *I rule.*

Present

I rule or am ruling.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <i>rég-ō</i>	<i>régi-mus</i>
2. <i>régi-s</i>	<i>régi-tis</i>
3. <i>régi-t</i>	<i>rég-u-nt</i>

Imperfect

I ruled or was ruling.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <i>regébam</i>	<i>regébāmus</i>
2. <i>regébās</i>	<i>regebātis</i>
3. <i>regébat</i>	<i>regébant</i>

49. Like *regō* inflect the following:—

dūcō, I lead.

relinquō, I leave.

mittō, I send.

gerō, I bear, carry on.

currō, I run.

pellō, I drive away, expel.

EXERCISE

50. 1. *Dūcis; dūcēbās; mittit; mittēbat.* 2. *Equi currēbant.* 3. *Virōs mittunt; bellum gerēbat.* 4. *Oppidum relinquimus.* 5. *Rēgīna incolās pellit.* 6. *Aper in silvam currit.* 7. *Amūlius regēbat.* 8. *Virī equum in aquam dūcēbant.* 9. *Agricolārum agrōs relinquēbant.* 10. *In hortum puerī currunt.* 11. *Populus rēgīnam pellēbat.* 12. *Multa bella Albānī gerunt.* 13. *Multōs librōs ad magistrum mittunt.* 14. *Ad māgnōs Albānōrum agrōs veniunt.* 15. *Agricola equōs in māgnam silvam dūcit.*

1. The boy is leading the horse. 2. The friends of the people are good men. 3. The children of the farmer have many books. 4. The inhabitants of the town expel the good queen. 5. The wild boars and the goats leave the fields. 6. The Albans were carrying on war. 7. They are running; we are sending; he is leading. 8. The slaves leave their masters. 9. The master teaches the boys and girls. 10. They were running towards the town. 11. He sends; he has; he calls; he punishes. 12. We lead; we move; we deprive; we finish.

Observe the following English derivatives:—

relinquish

concur

duct

mission

current

expel

conduct

remit

occurrence

compel

reduce

gesture

LESSON X

Third and Fourth Conjugations — Future Tense

51. THIRD CONJ.

FOURTH CONJ.

Regam, *I shall rule or be ruling.* **Audiam**, *I shall hear or be hearing.*

SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. régam	regémus	1. audiam	audiémus
2. régēs	regétis	2. audies	audiétis
3. réget	régent	3. audiet	audient

It will be observed that the tense sign **bi** of the First and Second Conjugations is wanting in the Third and Fourth Conjugations.

Inflect, in like manner, the Future Tense of the verbs given in **36** and **49**.

EXERCISE

52. 1. Relinquent; relinquēbant; relinquent. 2. Mittit; mittēbat; mittet. 3. Servōs pūnient; puerōs docēbunt. 4. Magister liberōs agricolārum docēbit. 5. Puer ex oppidō equum dūcet. 6. Curret; movet; mittent; habent. 7. Pūniēmus; vidēmus; dūcit; dūcet. 8. Multa bella Albānī gerent. 9. Puerī rānās ex aquā pellent. 10. Populus rēgīnam in oppidum dūcet. 11. Vinculum servum nōn tenēbit. 12. Equī in agricolae agrum current. 13. Albānī oppidum mūnient.

1. I shall lead; I was leading; I am leading. 2. He runs; he was running; he will run. 3. He hears; he was hearing; he will hear. 4. The people will wage a long war. 5. Amulius will fortify the town of the Albans. 6. They

will punish the children. 7. He will lead the horse to the river. 8. They will send good books to (their) friend. 9. Many people will come to the bank of the river. 10. The farmers will leave the horses in the field. 11. He will leave; he is moving; they will punish; they are holding. 12. The master will send the slave into the town. 13. The king of the Albans has two sons.



LESSON XI

Third Declension

53. The Third Declension includes nouns with stems ending in a consonant or *i*.

Consonant stems may be divided into the following classes:—

1. Mute stems { (a) Stems ending in a labial (lip sound), *p, b*.
 (b) “ “ “ lingual (tongue sound), *t, d*.
 (c) “ “ “ palatal (throat sound), *c, g*.
2. Liquid stems, or stems ending in *l, m, n, r*.
3. Sibilant stems, or stems ending in *s*.

54.

TERMINATIONS

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. V. -s or —	—	-ēs	-a or -ia
Gen. -is	-is	-um or -ium	-um or -ium
Dat. -i	-i	-ibus	-ibus
Acc. -em or -im	—	-ēs or -is	-a or -ia
Abl. -e or -i	-e or -i	-ibus	-ibus

Mute Stems

55.

(a) LABIALS

Princeps, m.,
a chief.
st. **prīncip-**¹.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
N. V.	prīnceps	prīncipēs
Gen.	prīncipis	prīncipum
Dat.	prīncipi	prīncipibus
Acc.	prīncipem	prīncipēs
Abl.	prīncipe	prīncipibus

(b) LINGUALS

Miles , m., a soldier. st. mīlit- ¹ .	Aetās , f., age, time of life. st. aetāt- .	Custōs , m. & f., a guard, keeper. st. custōd- .
--	---	--

	SINGULAR		
N. V.	mīles	aetās	cústōs
Gen.	mīlitis	aetātis	custōdis
Dat.	mīliti	aetāti	custōdi
Acc.	mīlitem	aetātem	custōdem
Abl.	mīlite	aetāte	custōde
	PLURAL		
N. Acc. V.	mīlitēs	aetātēs	custōdēs
Gen.	mīlitum	aetātum (-ium)	custōdum
Dat. Abl.	mīlitibus	aetātibus	custōdibus

56. Masculine and feminine mute stems form the Nom. sing. by adding **s**. A labial before **s** unites with it without change, as **prīnceps**; a lingual is dropped, as **custōs**; a palatal unites with **s** to form **x**, as **rēx** (st. **rēg-**).

¹ These stems were primarily **prīncēp-** and **mīlēt-**, and the short **e** was changed to short **i** before an added syllable.

57.

VOCABULARY

comes, -itis, m. and f., a companion.	eques, -itis, m., a horseman.
nepōs, -ōtis, m., a grandson.	pedes, -itis, m., a foot-soldier.
sacerdōs, -ōtis, m. and f., a priest, priestess.	quod, conj., because.
cīvitās, -ātis, f., state, citizenship.	quid, conj., why?
	ubi, ¹ adv., where.
	quō, adv., whither.
	iūcundus, -a, -um, adj., pleasant.

EXERCISE

58. 1. Quō militēs dūcet? 2. In oppidum Albānōrum militēs dūcit. 3. Silvae custōdēs vidēmus. 4. Quid prīncipēs in oppidum equitēs mittēbant? 5. Quod māgnū bellum gerēbant. 6. Nepōs prīncipis comitēs relinquet. 7. Peditēs et equitēs cīvitātem liberābunt. 8. Filius prīncipis bonōs comitēs habet. 9. Ubi sunt amīcī Albānōrum? 10. Filii Amulī sunt iūcundī comitēs. 11. Militēs longum bellum finient. 12. Quid militēs in silvam properant? 13. Quod equitēs ex oppidō veniunt.

1. The keepers set free many slaves. 2. The priest warns the companions of the chiefs. 3. He will send the horsemen to the chiefs of the state. 4. Whither are the slaves of the master running? 5. Where are the friends and companions of the keeper? 6. Not many soldiers are fond of (amō) war. 7. The daughter of the queen will have many companions. 8. Pleasant friends will come to the hut of the farmer. 9. The horsemen and the foot-soldiers are the guards of the state. 10. Why do the foot-soldiers run out of the town? 11. Because the soldiers of the Albans are

¹ Sometimes ubi.

coming. 12. The chiefs will finish the war. 13. They will have pleasant companions. 14. The soldiers of the chiefs are not the friends of the people.

Observe the following English derivatives :—

<i>comity</i>	<i>equestrian</i>	<i>military</i>
<i>nepotism</i>	<i>pedestrian</i>	<i>principle</i>
<i>sacerdotal</i>	<i>custodian</i>	<i>ubiquitous</i>



LESSON XII

Third Declension

Mute Stems — Continued

59.

(c) PALATALS

Rēx , m., <i>a king.</i> st. rēg-	Dux , m. & f., <i>a leader.</i> st. duc-	Iūdex , m. & f., <i>a judge.</i> st. iūdic- ¹	Cōniūnx , m. & f., <i>a spouse.</i> st. cōniug-
---	--	--	---

SINGULAR

N. V.	rēx	dux	iūdex	cōniūnx
Gen.	rēgis	dúcis	iūdicis	cōniugis
Dat.	rēgī	dúci	iūdicī	cōniugī
Acc.	rēgem	dúcem	iūdicem	cōniugem
Abl.	rēge	dúce	iūdice	cōniuge

PLURAL

N. Acc. V.	rēgēs	dúcēs	iūdicēs	cōniugēs
Gen.	rēgum	dúcum	iūdicum	cōniugum
D. Abl.	rēgibus	dúcibus	iūdicibus	cōniúgibus

¹ See note 1, p. 38.

60.

VOCABULARY

vōx, **vōcis**, f., a voice.**lēx**, **lēgis**, f., a law.**grex**, **gregis**, m., a flock.**lūx**, **lūcis**, f., light.**periculum**, -ī, n., danger.**caput**, **capitis**, n., the head.**frumentum**, -ī, n., corn.**vincō** (3d Conj.), I conquer.**vinciō** (4th Conj.), I bind.**studium**, -ī, n., desire, zeal.

61. Examine the following sentences:—

Equōs aquā privābat, he deprived the horses of water.**Māgnō mē metū liberābis**, you will free me from great fear.

Observe that **aquā**, in the first sentence, is in the Ablative, after **privābat**, a verb of *depriving*; and in the second sentence, **metū** is in the Ablative, after **liberābis**, a verb of *freeing*.

Rule.—*That of which a person or thing is DEPRIVED, or from which it is FREED or SEPARATED, is expressed by the ABLATIVE.*

Multi convēnere studiō videndae novae urbis, many came together from a desire to see the new city.

Lūdicriis certāminibus virēs auxere, they increased their strength by friendly contests.

Vinculis servōs vinciunt, they bind the slaves with chains.

In the first sentence, **studiō** is in the Ablative, denoting the *cause* of **convēnere**; in the second sentence, **certāminibus** is in the Ablative, denoting the *means* of **auxere**; and in the third sentence, **vinculis** is in the Ablative, denoting the *instrument* of **vinciunt**.

Rule.—*CAUSE, MEANS, and INSTRUMENT, are expressed by the ABLATIVE.*

EXERCISE

62. 1. Iúcunda est vōx amīcī. 2. Quō rēx mīlites dūcet? 3. Lēgēs rēgnī sunt bonae. 4. Sacerdōtēs et iūdicēs vidēbimus. 5. Rēx populum agrīs nōn prīvābit. 6. Oppidum bellī perīculo līberābunt. 7. Māgnā vōce equitēs iubēbat. 8. Ducēs vinculis līberābat. 9. Rēx est caput cīvītātis. 10. Populus bellī studiō ex oppidō properat. 11. Albānōs bellō mīlitēs rēgis vincent. 12. Vinculis amīcōs Albānōrum vincient.

1. The voice of the judge warns the companions of kings. 2. He will send the chiefs of the state to the leader of the horsemen. 3. Why did the chiefs of the state expel the good inhabitants from the kingdom? 4. The friends of the good man are coming with a desire for war (Gen.). 5. The chief they were praising with a loud voice. 6. We will free the slaves from the danger of chains. 7. The boys will lead the herd of goats into the woods. 8. They conquered the leaders of the Albans in war and bound (them) with chains. 9. They deprived the inhabitants of corn.

Observe the following English derivatives:—

<i>vocal</i>	<i>gregarious</i>	<i>lucid</i>	<i>induce</i>
<i>legal</i>	<i>capital</i>	<i>judicial</i>	<i>conduct</i>
<i>regal</i>	<i>invincible</i>	<i>conjugal</i>	<i>studious</i>

Compare **vōx** (**vōcīs**) and **vocō**; **rēx** (**rēgis**) and **regō**; **dūx** (**ducīs**) and **dūcō**; **amīcus** and **amō**.

Compare also the endings of the Genitive singular, Third Declension, and the possessive case in English, as **rēgis** and *king's*, **mīlitis** and *soldier's*; also the Nominative plural in Latin and in English, as **vocēs** and *voices*, **iūdicēs** and *judges*.

LESSON XIII

Third Declension — Continued

63.

Liquid Stems

Pāstor, m.,
a shepherd.
st. **pāstor-**.

Legiō, f.,
a legion.
st. **legiōn-**.

Flūmen, n.,
a river.
st. **flūmin-**¹.

Pater, m.,
a father.
st. **pater-**.

SINGULAR

N. V.	pāstor	legiō	flūmen	pāter
Gen.	pāstoris	legiōnis	flūminis	pātris
Dat.	pāstorī	legiōnī	flūminī	pātrī
Acc.	pāstorem	legiōnem	flūmen	pātrēm
Abl.	pāstore	legiōne	flūmine	pātre

PLURAL

N. V.	pāstorēs	legiōnēs	flūmina	pātrēs
Gen.	pāstorū	legiōnum	flūminum	pātrū
Dat.	pāstoribus	legiōnibus	flūminibus	pātribus
Acc.	pāstorēs	legiōnēs	flūmina	pātrēs
Abl.	pāstoribus	legiōnibus	flūminibus	pātribus

Multitūdō, f.,
a multitude, a great number.
st. **multitūdin-**².

SINGULAR

PLURAL

N. V.	multitūdō	multitūdinēs
Gen.	multitūdinis	multitūdinum
Dat.	multitūdinī	multitūdinibus
Acc.	multitūdinem	multitūdinēs
Abl.	multitūdine	multitūdinibus

¹ Primarily **flūmēn-**, but ē becomes ī before an added syllable.

² Primarily **multitūdōn-**, but ō becomes ī before an added syllable.

64.

Sibilant Stems

Flōs, m.,
a flower.
st. flōs-.

Corpus, n.,
a body.
st. corpos-.

SINGULAR

PLURAL

N. V.	flōs	flōrēs	cōrpus	cōrpora
Gen.	flōris	flōrum	cōrporis	cōrporum
Dat.	flōrī	flōribus	cōrporī	corpóribus
Acc.	flōrem	flōrēs	cōrpus	cōrpora
Abl.	flōre	flōribus	cōrpore	corpóribus

Liquid stems form the Nominative singular without the addition of *s*. Those ending in *l* or *r* have the Nominative like the stem. Those ending in *n* drop the final *n* to form the Nominative, except neuters in *-men* and a few others.

Nearly all sibilants change *s* to *r* between two vowels, like *flōs* and *corpus*.

Like *pater* are declined *māter* and *frāter*. It will be noted that *e* of the stem in these nouns is kept only in the Nominative and Vocative sing.

65.

VOCABULARY

āgmen, -inis, n., an army.
carmen, -inis, n., a song.
virgō, -inis, f., a maiden, girl.
soror, -ōris, f., a sister.
mercātor, -ōris, m., a merchant.
lĕgātīō, -ōnis, f., an embassy.
templum, -ī, n., a temple.
frāter, -tris, m., a brother.

māter, -tris, f., a mother.
Ītalia, -ae, f., Italy.
prōvincia, -ae, f., a province.
ōrnō (1st Conj.), I adorn.
canō (3d Conj.), I sing.
altus, -a, -um, adj., high, deep.
novus, -a, -um, adj., new.

EXERCISE

66. 1. Rēx māgnum āgmen in Ītaliā dūcet. 2. Rēgīnāe frāter et soror templum ōrnābant. 3. Albānī lĕgātīōnem ad

rēgem mittent 4. Quid virginēs nova cārmina in altīs templīs canēbant? 5. Alta sunt Ītaliae flūmina. 6. Novae legiōnēs mercātōrēs frūmentō prīvābunt. 7. Milītēs prōvinciā pellēbant. 8. Bonus pater filiōs ēducābit. 9. Rēgis pāstōrēs sunt in flūminis rīpā. 10. Comitēs habēbitis ad multitūdinem iucundōs. 11. Alta templa flōribus ōrnābit. 12. Multīs periculīs prōvinciam āgmen liberābit.

1. The leader of the Albans moved the army into the province. 2. The rivers of Italy are large and deep. 3. Whither are the mothers and maidens hastening? 4. Why do not the priests adorn the temples with flowers? 5. The merchants will send an embassy into the new province. 6. The soldiers of the queen will free the state from the dangers of war. 7. The fathers and mothers love the songs of the maidens. 8. The chiefs of the state were waging a great war in Italy. 9. The voice of the king is the law of the state. 10. The good master will not deprive the children of books. 11. There was much corn in the fields. 12. They were expelling from the state the leaders of the army.

RULES FOR THE GENDER OF NOUNS IN THE THIRD DECLENSION

67. 1. Nouns ending in **ō**, or, **ōs**, **er**, **es** (increasing in the Genitive¹) are masculine. Exception: abstract and collective nouns in **-iō**, and nouns in **-iō** and **-gō** of more than two syllables, are feminine.

2. Nouns ending in **ās**, **ēs** (not increasing in the Genitive) **is**, **s** preceded by a consonant, **aus**, and **x** are feminine.

¹ That is, having more syllables in the Gen. sing. than in the Nom. sing. These are from consonant stems.

3. Nouns ending in **i, o, e, l, a, n, t, y, ar, ur, and us** are neuter.

There are many exceptions to these rules, which must be learned by observation. The above rules do not apply to nouns the gender of which may be determined by the General Rules under 34.

NOTE. — While these rules may be found useful in teaching the gender of nouns of the 3d Declension, they should not be relied upon as the only means to be used for this purpose. It is earnestly recommended that the beginner be required to learn the gender of each noun as he learns the noun itself, and that special attention be called to the use of the noun in connection with adjectives whose terminations indicate the gender.

Observe the following English derivatives: —

<i>fraternal</i>	<i>pastoral</i>	<i>ornament</i>	<i>altitude</i>
<i>maternal</i>	<i>corporeal</i>	<i>floral</i>	<i>novel</i>
<i>paternal</i>	<i>provincial</i>	<i>canticle</i>	<i>novelty</i>



LESSON XIV

Perfect Tense of the First and Second Conjugations

68. The endings of the Perfect Tense are the same for all conjugations, and are as follows¹: —

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. -i	-imus
2. -isti	-istis
3. -it	-erunt or -ere

¹ These endings are made up of the tense sign **i** and the pers. endings.

69. Inflection of the Perfect of *amō* and *moneō* :—

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <i>amāvī</i> , <i>I loved or have loved.</i>	<i>amāvimus</i> , <i>we loved or have loved.</i>
2. <i>amāvistī</i> , <i>you loved or have loved.</i>	<i>amāvistis</i> , <i>you loved or have loved.</i>
3. <i>amāvit</i> , <i>he loved or has loved.</i>	<i>amāvērunt</i> or <i>-ēre</i> , <i>they loved or have loved.</i>

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <i>mónuī</i> , <i>I warned or have warned.</i>	<i>monuimus</i> , <i>we warned or have warned.</i>
2. <i>monuistī</i> , <i>you warned or have warned.</i>	<i>monuistis</i> , <i>you warned or have warned.</i>
3. <i>mónuit</i> , <i>he warned or has warned.</i>	<i>monuērunt</i> or <i>-ēre</i> , <i>they warned or have warned.</i>

70. The perfect stem in the First Conjugation is regularly formed by adding **v** to the present stem; as, *amā-*, *amāv-*; *rēgnā-*, *rēgnāv-*.

71. The perfect stem in the Second Conjugation is usually formed by dropping the final vowel **e** of the present stem and adding **u**; as, *monē-*, *monu-*; *tenē-*, *tenu-*. A few verbs of this conjugation form the perfect stem by adding **v** to the present stem, as in the First Conjugation. Other ways of forming the Perfect of this conjugation must be learned by observation.

Like *amāvī* inflect the following :—

<i>rēgnāvī</i> (<i>rēgnō</i>)	<i>indicāvī</i> (<i>indicō</i>)
<i>prīvāvī</i> (<i>prīvō</i>)	<i>properāvī</i> (<i>properō</i>)
<i>volāvī</i> (<i>volō</i>)	<i>ēducāvī</i> (<i>educō</i>)

Also form the Perfect of *vocō*, *laudō*, and *liberō*, and inflect the same.

Like **monui** inflect the following:—

habui (habeō)

tenui (teneō)

auxi (augeō)

vidi (videō)

mōvi (moveō)

iussi (iubeō)

EXERCISE

72. 1. Vocāvērunt; vīdimus; liberāvistī. 2. Tenuimus; auxit; mōvistī. 3. Mōvistis; prīvāvit; educāvērunt. 4. Rēx Albānōrum filiōs habuit. 5. Equitēs iūssit; militēs frūmentō prīvāvit. 6. Sacerdōtēs templum flōribus ōrnāvērunt. 7. Perīculō oppidum liberāvit. 8. Virgō flōrēs in capite habuit. 9. Videt; vidēbat; vidēbit; vīdit. 10. Vocat; vocābat; vocābit; vocāvit. 11. Lūcem stellārum vīdit. 12. Rōmulus frātre liberāvit. 13. Dux āgmen in oppidum mōvit. 14. Novī peditēs in prōvinciam properāvērunt.

1. We praise; we were praising; we shall praise; we have praised. 2. They have; they were having; they will have; they have had. 3. Many eagles flew out of the woods. 4. Good men praised the laws of the state. 5. The people loved the good judge. 6. He moved the new legions into the province. 7. The shepherds increased their flocks. 8. The leader freed the people from the dangers of war. 9. We saw the bodies of the soldiers in the field. 10. The priest called the multitude into the high temple. 11. Italy has many (and) deep rivers.



LESSON XV

Perfect Tense of the Third and Fourth Conjugations

73. Inflection of the Perfect of *regō* and *audiō*:—

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <i>rēxī</i> , <i>I ruled or have ruled.</i>	<i>rēximus</i>
2. <i>rēxistī</i>	<i>rēxistis</i>
3. <i>rēxit</i>	<i>rēxērunt or -ēre</i>

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <i>audīvi</i> , <i>I heard or have heard.</i>	<i>audīvimus</i>
2. <i>audivistī</i>	<i>audivistis</i>
3. <i>audivit</i>	<i>audivērunt or -ēre</i>

74. The perfect stem in the Third Conjugation is formed, in most cases, by adding *s* to the verb stem. Changes in the final letters of the stem then often follow for the sake of euphony; as, *reg-*, *reg* + *s* = *rēx*; *ger-*, *ger* + *s* = *gess-*.

The perfect stem of verbs of the Third Conjugation is formed in several other ways, which may best be learned by observation. The following may be mentioned here:—

(a) By reduplication, *i.e.* prefixing the initial consonant with a vowel; as, *curr-*, *oucurr-*; *pell-*, *pepul-*.

(b) By lengthening the root vowel, sometimes with change of that vowel; as, *em-*, *ēm-* (*buy*); *fac-*, *fēc-* (*do*).

(c) By retaining the verb stem unchanged; as, *vertō*, stem *vert-*, perf. *vert-* (*turn*); *dēfendō*, stem *dēfend-*, perf. *dēfend-*.

75. The perfect stem in the Fourth Conjugation is usually formed by adding *v* to the present stem. Cf. the formation of the perfect stem of the First Conjugation; as, *amā-*, *amā* + *v*; *audī-*, *audī* + *v*.

Like **rēxī** inflect the following:—

dūxī (dūcō)	reliquī (relinquō)
miſī (mittō)	geſſī (gerō)
cucurrī (currō)	vīcī (vincō)

76. Learn also the following perfects:—

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Perf.</i>
mūniō	mūnīvī	veniō	vēnī
finiō	finīvī	vinciō	vinxī
pūniō	pūnīvī	canō	cecīnī

EXERCISE

77. 1. Dūcit; dūcēbat; dūcet; dūxit. 2. Venit; veniēbat; veniet; vēnit. 3. Oppidum reliquērunt; venīmus; vēnimus. 4. Albānōs dux vīcit; gerit; geret. 5. Servōs vinculis vinxērunt; pūnīvistī. 6. Ad patrem puerī cucurrērunt. 7. Soror prīncipis iūcunda carmina cecinit. 8. Vēnī, vīdī, vīcī. 9. Pāstor gregem in agrōs dūxit. 10. Nova lēgātiō vēnit. 11. Legiōnēs Albānōrum vincunt; vincient; vīcērunt. 12. Oppidum stellārum lūce vīdērunt.

1. We are singing; we were singing; we shall sing; we have been singing. 2. I am binding; I was binding; I shall bind; I have been binding. 3. I saw the horses in the deep river. 4. He led the army into the kingdom of the Albans. 5. Why did they send the horsemen into the province? 6. Because the chief of the province was waging war. 7. The girls and boys have come into the garden. 8. He left the new road. 9. They have finished the wars. We have fortified the towns. 10. We are coming; we have come; he comes; he has come.

LESSON XVI

The Irregular Verb *Sum*, *I am*78. *Present**Imperfect*

SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <i>sum</i> , <i>I am</i> .	<i>súmus</i> , <i>we are</i> .	1. <i>eram</i> , <i>I was</i> .	<i>erāmus</i> , <i>we were</i> .
2. <i>es</i> , <i>you are</i> .	<i>éstis</i> , <i>you are</i> .	2. <i>erās</i> , <i>you were</i> .	<i>erātis</i> , <i>you were</i> .
3. <i>est</i> , <i>he is</i> .	<i>sunt</i> , <i>they are</i> .	3. <i>erat</i> , <i>he was</i> .	<i>erant</i> , <i>they were</i> .

79. Observe that the personal endings are the same as in the regular verb. The verb **sum** has for its stem **es-**. **Sum** is for **esum**, **sunt** for **esunt**, etc., the initial **e** of the stem being dropped in some of the forms. The **s** becomes **r** between two vowels, as in some noun forms (cf. 64); thus, **eram** is for **esam**, **erāmus** for **esāmus**, etc.

THE PLUPERFECT TENSE OF REGULAR VERBS

80. The Pluperfect Tense is formed from the perfect stem. The tense sign of the Pluperfect Tense is **era**, which, with the personal endings **-m**, **-s**, **-t**, **-mus**, **-tis**, **-nt**, takes the form—

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. -eram	-erāmus
2. -erās	-erātis
3. -erat	-erant

It will be seen that these terminations are the same as the Imperfect of the verb **sum**.

The Pluperfect Tense of all verbs of all conjugations has the same tense sign, **era**, and the same personal endings, and is formed from the perfect stem in the same way.

Pluperfect of Amō

SINGULAR

PLURAL

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. amāveram, <i>I had loved.</i> | amāverāmus, <i>we had loved.</i> |
| 2. amāverās, <i>you had loved.</i> | amāverātis, <i>you had loved.</i> |
| 3. amāverat, <i>he had loved.</i> | amāverant, <i>they had loved.</i> |

Inflect the Pluperfect of *moneō*, *regō*, and *audiō* in the same way, —

SINGULAR

PLURAL

- | | | | |
|------------------------------|----------------------|---|---------------------------|
| monu-
rēx-
audiv-
} | -eram, -erās, -erat. | } | -erāmus, -erātis, -erant. |
|------------------------------|----------------------|---|---------------------------|

Inflect in like manner the Pluperfect of other verbs that have been given.

EXERCISE

81. 1. Vocō; vocāvī; vocāveram. 2. Tenet; tenēbat; tenēbit; tenuit; tenuerat. 3. Dūcimus; dūcēbāmus; dūcēmus; dūximus; dūxerāmus. 4. Mōverat; vīderātis; habuerant; vīcerat. 5. Via erat longa. 6. Liberī erant in hortō. 7. Comitēs et amīcī multitudinis erāmus. 8. Sumus civitātis milītēs. 9. Estis rēgis bonī amīcī. 10. Erant multī mercātōrēs in oppidō. 11. Erāmus; iūsserāmus; erat; habuerat. 12. Erās; laudāverās; erātis; vinxerātis.

1. I was; I had punished; they were; they had sent. 2. He sends; he was sending; he will send; he has sent; he had sent. 3. They had come to the deep river. 4. The priest had come into the high temple. 5. The girls had been singing new songs. 6. The people had seen the foot-soldiers and the horsemen. 7. You are; you were; you

have had; you had had. 8. The new legions had fortified the town. 9. He had called; he had led; he had moved; he had finished. 10. Many men were in the town.



LESSON XVII

Future Tense of *Sum***82.**

SINGULAR

PLURAL

1. *érō, I shall be.**érimus, we shall be.*2. *éris, you will be.**éritis, you will be.*3. *erit, he will be.**erunt, they will be.*

THE FUTURE PERFECT TENSE OF REGULAR VERBS

83. The Future Perfect Tense, like the Pluperfect, is formed from the perfect stem. The tense sign of the Future Perfect is *erī*, which, with the personal endings, takes the form —

SINGULAR

PLURAL

-erō**-erimus****-eris****-eritis****-erit****-erint**

These terminations, it will be noticed, are the same as the Future of the verb *sum*, except in the 3d plu.

The Future Perfect Tense of all verbs of all conjugations has the same tense sign, *erī*, and the same personal endings, and is formed from the perfect stem in the same way.

Future Perfect of Amō

SINGULAR

PLURAL

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. amāverō, <i>I shall have loved.</i> | amāverimus, <i>we shall have loved.</i> |
| 2. amāveris, <i>you will have loved.</i> | amāveritis, <i>you will have loved.</i> |
| 3. amāverit, <i>he will have loved.</i> | amāverint, <i>they will have loved.</i> |

Inflect the Future Perfect of **moneō**, **regō**, and **audiō** in the same way, —

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
monu-	-erō, -eris, -erit.	-erimus, -eritis, -erint.
rēx-		
audiv-		

Inflect in like manner the Future Perfect of other verbs that have been given.

84. The synopsis of a verb in any mode consists in giving any required person and number of the verb in each tense of that mode. For example, the synopsis of **amō** in the Indicative mode, 3d pers. sing., is given as follows: —

Pres. **amat**, Impf. **amābat**, Fut. **amābit**, Perf. **amāvit**, Plupf. **amāverat**, Fut. Perf. **amāverit**.

EXERCISE

85. 1. Est; erat; erit; sumus; erāmus; erimus. 2. Gerit; gerēbat; geret; gessit; gesserat; gesserit. 3. Erant; mīserant; erunt; mīserint. 4. Erimus; tenuerimus; erāmus; tenuerāmus. 5. Vēnit; vēnerat; vēnerit. 6. Ubi mīlitēs erunt? 7. Puellae carmina iūcunda ad populōs cecinerint. 8. Fīniverint novum templum. 9. Legiōnēs in prōvinciam vēnerant. 10. Prīnceps populōs frūmentō prīvāverit.

1. You are; you were; you will be; you had punished; you will have punished. 2. He will be; he will have had; he was; he had had. 3. The soldiers of the king will have conquered the legions of the Albans. 4. The chief had led the army to the river. 5. They have sent an embassy to the king. 6. He will have taught; he will have fortified; he will have called. 7. We had praised; we had conquered; we had bound. 8. We shall be; we shall have finished; we were; we had sent. 9. The rivers will be deep. 10. The people of the town will have been freed from much danger.

Give the synopsis of *moveō* in the 3d sing. of the Indicative mode; of *ducō* in the 3d plu.; of *mūnīō* in the 1st plu.; of *rēgnō* in the 1st sing.



LESSON XVIII

Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Tenses of *Sum*

86. These tenses of *sum* are formed from the stem *fu-*, just the same as the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Tenses of regular verbs are formed from the perfect stem.

Fui, *I have been.*

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. fui	fúimus
2. fúistī	fúistis
3. fúit	fuērunt (-re)

Fueram, *I had been.*

SINGULAR	PLURAL
fúeram	fuērāmus
fúerās	fuērātis
fúerat	fúerant

Fuerō, I shall have been.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. fuerō	fuerimus
2. fueris	fueritis
3. fuerit	fuerint

EXERCISE

87. 1. I have been; I had been; I shall have been.
 2. He has been; he had been; he will have been. 3. The boys had been in the river. 4. Soldiers, you have not been friends of the people. 5. (There) had been many foot-soldiers in the provinces. 6. The shepherd's herds have been in the farmer's fields. 7. The legions of the king had been in the kingdom of the Albans.

Give the synopsis of **sum** in the 3d sing., Indicative mode; in the 1st plu.; in the 2d sing.; in the 3d plu.; in the 1st sing.

88. In the following lessons, let the learner be directed first to look through the Latin passage assigned, and see whether it contains any new words. The meaning of such words may be learned from the accompanying vocabulary. Then let him read the passage through in the Latin, and follow the meaning word by word in the order given. Finally, let him turn the passage into idiomatic English.

This work cannot be insisted upon too strongly by the teacher; for it is only by such a process that the student can be led to an intelligent appreciation of the Latin sentence, and, through this, to facility in translation.

It should, however, be borne in mind that one of the chief objects of these early lessons is to give an easy familiarity with the *forms*

of Latin words. To this end, nothing can take the place of persistent repetition. The declension of nouns and adjectives, and the inflection and synopsis of verbs, both orally and by writing, should be continued until they can be given rapidly and correctly.



LESSON XIX

The Beginnings of Rome

89. Proca, rēx Albānōrum, Numitōrem et Amūlium filiōs habuit. Numitōrī, quī nātū māior erat, rēgnum reliquit.

Proca, -ae, m., *Proca*, a proper name.

quī, rel. pron., *who*.

nātū māior (literally, *greater by*

Numitor, -ōris, m., *Numitor*, a proper name.

birth) = *elder*.

NOTES

90. **Proca**, a legendary king of Alba,—a town about twenty miles southeast of Rome, commonly known as *Alba Longa*.

Albānī, the inhabitants of Alba.

Numitōrem, declined like **pāstor** (63); but names of persons are commonly used in the singular only.

filiōs: p. 29, n. 1.

Numitōrī, Dat. after **reliquit**. Compare in English, *He gave the book to him*. **rēgnum** is the direct, and **Numitōrī** the indirect object of **reliquit**. What, then, is the case of the direct, and what the case of the indirect object?

quī is a rel. pron., Nom. sing. masc., the subject of **erat**. Its antecedent is **Numitōrī**. Observe that **quī** has the same gender and number as its antecedent. Observe also that **Numitōrem** and **Amūlium** mean the same as **filiōs**, and are in the same case.

91. Translate at sight:—

1. Rēx Albānōrum Numitōrem filium habuit. 2. Amūlius Procae filius erat. 3. Numitor Amūlium frātre habuit. 4. Filiō rēgnū relinquet. 5. Proca Amūliō rēgnū nōn reliquerat. 6. Amūli filius rēx fuit. 7. Numitor erit rēx Albānōrum. 8. Numitor, quī nātū māior erat, rēgnū habēbit.

1. The king of the Albans had a son. 2. Numitor was son of Proca. 3. Proca had a son, Amulius. 4. Numitor and Amulius were sons of the king. 5. They had had sons, Numitor and Amulius. 6. Numitor, son of Proca, had been king of the Albans. 7. Proca, the king, will leave the kingdom to Numitor. 8. He left the kingdom to (his) son Amulius. 9. Numitor was the brother of Amulius.¹ 10. Proca will have left the kingdom to (his) son Numitor, who was the elder. 11. The sons, Numitor and Amulius, left the kingdom to (their) brother. 12. The son who was the elder had the kingdom.

¹ Cf. p. 29, n. 1.



LESSON XX

92. Proca, rēx Albānōrum, Numitōrem et Amūlium filiōs habuit. Numitōrī, quī nātū māior erat, rēgnum reliquit; sed Amūlius, pulsō frātre, rēgnāvit et, ut eum subole prīvāret, Rheam Silviam, eius filiam, Vestae sacerdotem fēcit.

sed, conj., *but*.

pulsō, Perf. Pass. Part., *having been driven away, banished*.

ut, conj., *in order that, in order to, that*.

eum, pron., *him*.

subole, *offspring*.

prīvāret, *he might deprive*.

eius, pron., *his, of him*.

Rheam Silviam, *Rhea Silvia*.

Vestae, *of Vesta*.

fēcit, *he made*.

NOTES

93. **pulsō** is the Perf. Pass. Part. of **pellō**, in the Abl. sing. masc., to agree with **frātre**. It is inflected like **bonus** (41), —

Nom.	pulsus	pulsa	pulsum
Gen.	pulsī	pulsae	pulsī , etc.

pulsō frātre, literally, *the brother having been driven away*; better translated, *having driven away his brother*.

eum, Acc. sing. masc. of the demons. pron. **is**, *this*, and the direct object of **prīvāret**. The demons. pron. **is** is often used, as it is here, for the pers. pron. of the 3d pers., *he, she, it*. Notice the ending **-m**, corresponding to the ending of the Acc. sing. of nouns.

subole, Abl. sing. of **subolēs**, limiting **prīvāret**. Rule XX.¹ *In order that he might deprive him of offspring*.

(a)	N. V.	súbolēs	(The plu. is rarely found.)
	Gen.	súbolis	
	Dat.	súbolī	
	Acc.	súbolem	
	Abl.	súbole	

¹ See Rules on pp. 277-279.

ŕius, Gen. sing. of the demons. pron. **is**.

filiam: decline, p. 21, n. 3.

Vesta, the goddess of the hearth and hearth fire; daughter of Saturn and Rhea, and sister of Jupiter.

sacerdōtem: decline like **custōs**, 55 (b), — Nom. **sacerdōs**, Gen. **sacerdōtis**, etc.

fēcit, Perf. Ind. 3d sing., from **faciō**, *to make, do*, a verb of the 3d Conjugation. The perf. stem is **fēc-**. It is inflected regularly, like **rēxi**. Inflect the Perf., Plupf., and Fut. Perf. tenses.

With the Latin, **filiam sacerdōtem fēcit**, compare the English expressions, *they made Romulus king; they called the man dictator*.

94. Translate at sight:—

1. Amūlius frātre^m pellet. 2. Amūlius frātre^m pepule^rat (74 (a)). 3. Numitōris frāter rēgnābat. 4. Numitōrem subole privāverat. 5. Frātre^m rēgnō privāvit. 6. Populus eum rēgem fēcit. 7. Rheam Silviam sacerdōtem fēceraⁿt. 8. Filiōs Procae sacerdōtēs fēcēruⁿt.

1. I made; I had made; I shall have made. 2. He deprived him of offspring. 3. Amulius deprived (his) brother of offspring. 4. They had deprived the sons of Numitor of the kingdom. 5. He banished his brother. 6. He made (his) brother king of the Albans. 7. Amulius will deprive Numitor of the kingdom. 8. They made (their) sister priestess of Vesta. 9. The priestess of Vesta was daughter of Numitor. 10. Numitor had a daughter, Rhea Silvia.



LESSON XXI

95. Rheam Silviam, eius filiam, Vestae sacerdotem fēcit, quae tamen Rōmulum et Remum geminōs ēdidit.

quae, rel. pron., *who*.

tamen, adv., *nevertheless*.

Rōmulum, *Romulus*.

Remum, *Remus*.

ēdidit, *gave birth to*.

NOTES

96. **quae**, Nom. sing. fem., subject of **ēdidit**. Its antecedent is **filiam**. Observe that it has the same gender and number as its antecedent. Cf. **quī** (90). It will be noticed that, in both of these instances, the relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in *gender* and *number*, but that the case of the relative is not the same as that of the antecedent in either instance; its case depending upon the construction of its clause. This is always true of the relative, and of other pronouns used as substantives; hence the following rule:—

Rule. — *A pronoun agrees with its antecedent in Gender and Number, but its case depends upon the construction of the clause in which it stands.*

(a) INFLECTION OF **Quī**, *who*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cūius ¹	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cūī ²	cūī	cūī	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Voc.	—	—	—	—	—	—
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

¹ Pronounced *cod-yoos*.

² Pronounced *kwee*.

Observe and point out resemblances between these forms and forms of the 1st, 2d, and 3d Declensions.

Rōmulum and **Remum**: compare the expressions, **Rōmulum et Remum geminōs ēdidit**, and **Rheam Silviam, eius filiam Vestae sacerdotem fecit**, and **Numitōrem et Amūlium filiōs habuit**. Observe that **Rōmulum** and **Remum** stand in the same relation to **geminōs** as **Rheam Silviam** stands to **filiam**, and as **Numitōrem** and **Amūlium** stand to **filiōs**. Observe also that, in each of these groups, the first named words are in the same case as the second named, and that they refer to the same person or persons. Nouns standing in such relation to other nouns are said to be in apposition.

Rule.—*A noun joined to another noun denoting the same person or thing is in the same case by APPPOSITION.*

geminōs, used as a noun in the plu. only. The termination **-ōs** shows what declension? what case? what gender?

ēdidit, Perf. Ind. Act. 3d sing., from **ēdō**. Inflect the Perf., Plupf., and Fut. Perf. tenses.

97. Translate at sight:—

1. Quī; quod; cuius; cui; quibus. 2. Quōs; quae; quōrum; quās. 3. Amīcus, quem in hortō vīdī, filius agricolae fuit. 4. Ducēs quī Albānōs vicērunt ex prōvinciā vēnerant. 5. Rōmulus et Remus geminī fuērunt. 6. Rhea Silvia, quae Vestae sacerdos erat, filia erat Numitōris. 7. Filiō, quī nātū māior erat, rēgnum reliquit.

1. *Give in the sing.:* of whom; whose; to whom; which; of which. 2. *Give in the plu.:* whose; to which; whom; which; of which. 3. Rhea Silvia was the daughter of Numitor. 4. King Proca left the kingdom to his son Numitor. 5. Romulus, the son of Rhea Silvia, banished (his) brother Remus. 6. Romulus, who was the brother of Remus, made

his father king. 7. Numitor, to whom he left the kingdom, was brother of Amulius. 8. The brothers to whom Proca left the kingdom, carried on long wars.



LESSON XXII

98. Eā rē cōgnitā Amūlius ipsam in vincula coniēcit, parvulōs alveō impositōs abiēcit in Tiberim.

eā, *this.*

rē, *thing, fact, circumstance.*

cōgnitā, *having been learned, found out.*

ipsam, *her, herself.*

coniēcit, *threw, cast.*

in vincula, *into bonds, i.e. into prison.*

parvulōs, *the little ones, the children.*

alveō, *a skiff.*

impositōs, *having been placed in, put on board.*

abiēcit, *he cast off.*

Tiberim, *the Tiber, the river that flows past Rome.*

NOTES

99. Eā, Abl. sing. fem. of the demons. pron. **is**. It agrees with **rē**. **Is** is sometimes used as a substantive, and sometimes as an adjective. In the latter case, it is called an adjective pronoun. Cf. **eum** and **ēius** in Lesson XX.

rē is in the Abl. sing. fem., from **rēs**, a noun of the 5th Declension. Nouns of the 5th Declension are formed from stems ending in **-ē**. The stem of **rēs** is **rē-**. **Rēs** is thus declined:—

(a)	SINGULAR	PLURAL
N. V.	rēs	rēs
Gen.	rēī	rērum
Dat.	rēī	rēbus
Acc.	rem	rēs
Abl.	rē	rēbus

The stem vowel is shortened in the Acc. sing., and also in the Gen. and Dat. sing., when a consonant precedes. This declension contains but two nouns that are declined throughout; viz. **rēs** and **diēs**, *a day*. All nouns of the 5th Declension are feminine except **diēs**, which is sometimes masculine and sometimes feminine, and **meridiēs**, *midday*, which is always masculine.

Write out the endings of this declension, as seen in **rēs** above, and decline **diēs**.

cōgnitā, a Perf. Pass. Part. from **cōgnōscō**, in the Abl. sing. fem., to agree with **rē**; literally, *this fact having been learned*; better translated, *having learned this fact*, or *when he learned this fact*, or *upon learning this fact*. Cf. **pulsō frātre** (93). Inflect **cōgnitā** like **bonus** (41): **cōgnitus**, **cōgnita**, **cōgnitum**.

ipsam is the Acc. sing. fem. of the demons. pron. **ipse**, used here for an emphatic pers. pron., in contrast with **parvulōs**. It is usually intensive, meaning *self*; as, **rēx ipse**, *the king himself*; **filia ipsa**, *the daughter herself*.

coniēcit is the Perf. Ind. Act. 3d sing., from **cōnīciō** (= **con** + **iaciō**). The perfect stem is **coniēc-**; cf. **fēcit** (93). Inflect **coniēc-** in the Perf., Plupf., and Fut. Perf. Tenses. What is its subject? its object?

parvulōs: decline like **servus**. Why is it in the Acc. case?

alveō: Dat. sing. from **alveus**. What other case has the same ending? It depends upon **impositōs**.

impositōs, Perf. Pass. Part. from **impōnō** (= **in** + **pōnō**), *to place in, to put on board*. It agrees with **parvulōs**. Cf. **pulsō** and **cōgnitā** with respect to form. The Latin, literally translated, reads thus: *he cast off into the Tiber, the children having been put on board a skiff*. We should rather say in English, *he put the children on board a skiff, and cast them off into the Tiber*. The Latin often has a verb and a participle, where in English we should use two verbs.

abiēcit: cf. **coniēcit**, above. What is its subject? its object?

Tiberim, from **Tiberis**, a noun of the 3d Declension, with stem in **-i**. It is thus declined:—

(b)	N. V. Tīberis	Acc. Tīberim
	Gen. Tīberis	Abl. Tīberī
	Dat. Tīberī	

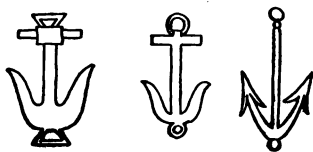
Observe especially the Acc. and Abl. in **-im** and **-ī**. A few nouns of the 3d Declension are declined like **Tiberis**. What is the gender of **Tiberis** (34 (a) 2)?

100. *Translate at sight:—*

1. Parvulōs alveō imposuit.¹ 2. Amūlius fīliam in vin-
cula coniēcīt. 3. Geminōs in Tiberim abiēcīt. 4. Lībe-
rōs in flūmen abiēcērat. 5. Amūlius eam rem cōgnōscīt.
6. Fīliam ipsam alveō imposuerant. 7. Alveus in rīpā
Tiberis erat.

1. The children had been in a skiff. 2. They had cast
the child off into the Tiber. 3. Amulius had thrown (his)
brother into prison. 4. When they had learned this fact
[this fact having been learned], they threw the twins into
prison. 5. The king himself was reigning. 6. Having
learned this fact, he made (his) daughter priestess of
Vesta. 7. The brother, whom I saw in the skiff, they
made leader. 8. Where are the foot-soldiers who were
hastening into the province? 9. The boys have been in
the river Tiber.

¹ The perfect stem. of **impōnō** is **imposu-**.



LESSON XXIII

101. Parvulōs alveō impositōs abiēcit in Tiberim, qui tunc forte super ripās erat effūsus; sed relābente flūmine eōs aqua in siccō reliquit.

tunc, then, at that time.

forte, by chance, as it happened.

super, beyond, above.

erat effūsus, had been poured out.

relābente, flowing back, receding.

eōs, them.

siccō, dry land.

NOTES

102. **qui**: decline (96 (a)). What is its gender and number, and why?

super, a preposition governing the Acc., except when it means *about, concerning*; it then governs the Abl.

ripās: in what declension? gender? case? construction?

erat effūsus, Plupf. Ind. Pass., from **effundō**, = **ex** + **fundō**; **fundō**, to pour, and the prep. **ex**, out. Hence **effundō** = to pour out. **erat effūsus**, had been poured out. **super ripās erat effūsus**, had been poured out beyond the banks = had overflowed its banks.

relābente, Pres. Act. Part., Abl. sing., agreeing with **flūmine**, just like an adj. Cf. Rule IV. for the adjective. Translate, the river receding.

eōs, demons. pron., Acc. plu. masc., from **is**. Cf. **eum** and **sius**, Lesson XX., and **eā**, Lesson XXII. **is** is thus declined:—

	(a) SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	is	ea	id	īi (ēī)	ēae	ēa
Gen.	sius	sius	sius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	ēī	ēī	ēī	īis, ēīs	īis, ēīs	īis, ēīs
Acc.	ēum	ēam	id	ēōs	ēās	ēa
Abl.	ēō	ēā	ēō	īis, ēīs	īis, ēīs	īis, ēīs

Observe and point out the resemblances between these endings and those of the 1st and 2d Declensions.

is is a weak demonstrative, meaning *this* or *that*. It is often used for the pers. pron. of the 3d pers., as we have already seen.

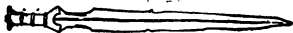
aqua: what case? How does the Abl. sing. of the 1st Declension differ from the Nom. sing.?

siccō, from **siccum**. Decline like **bellum**. What is the difference between **in** with the Abl. and **in** with the Acc.?

103. *Translate at sight*:—

1. Proca iīs rēgnum reliquit. 2. Eōs in oppidum mīsit.
3. Frātrēs eōrum in prōvinciā fuerant. 4. In eam prōvinciam māgnū āgmen vēnerat. 5. Id quod dīxī ad populum est iūcundum. 6. Puellae quās in hortō vidī ex oppidō vēnerunt. 7. Is fluuius; ea rēs; id flūmen; eae mātres; eōrum puerōrum; eārum filiārum. 8. Eae rēs ad rēgis amīcōs erunt iūcundae. 9. Bonī sunt iī quī populum māgnō periculo liberant.

1. Amulius had left them in the Tiber. 2. They had left the twins on dry land. 3. He will have left; you had left. 4. The son of the king had made (his) daughter priestess. 5. The water will leave them on dry land. 6. They will have cast off the children into the Tiber. 7. I shall have had; we shall have reigned. 8. The water receding, we left the banks of the river. 9. He; she; him; her; it; them; their; his; her; they. 10. This thing; of this thing; of these things; of these children.



LESSON XXIV

Review

104. *Read and translate:—*

Proca, rēx Albānōrum, Numitōrem et Amūlium filiōs habuit. Numitōrī, quī nātū māior erat, rēgnūm reliquit; sed Amūlius, pulsō frātre, rēgnāvit et, ut eum subole prīvāret, Rheam Silviam, eius filiam, Vestae sacerdotem fēcit, quae tamen Rōmulum et Remum geminōs ēdidit. Eā rē cōgnitā Amūlius ipsam in vincula coniēcit, parvulōs alveō impositōs abiēcit in Tiberim, quī tunc forte super ripas erat effūsus; sed relābente flūmine eōs aqua in siccō reliquit.

NOTES

105. Write the Acc. sing. of **rēx**, **filius**, **filia**, **rēs**. In what respects are their endings alike? Write the Acc. plu. of the same. How do the endings of these compare? Compare also the endings of the Gen. plu. of the same.

Write the Gen. and Voc. sing. of **filius** and **Amūlius**. Give the rule for their formation.

Compare the endings of the Gen. sing. of **is** and of **quī**; the Gen. plu.

What is the direct object of **habuit**? of **reliquit** (both occurrences)? of **prīvāret**? of **fēcit**? of **ēdidit**? of **coniēcit**? of **abiēcit**?

Construction of **Numitōrem** and **Amūlium**? of **Rōmulum** and **Remum**? of **Rheam Silviam**? Give the rule.

What determines the number and gender of **quī** (both occurrences)? of **quae**? Give the rule.

Why is **subole** in the Abl.?

To whom do **eum**, **eius**, **ipsam**, **eōs**, refer?

Why are **vincula** and **Tiberim** Acc., and **siccō** Abl.?

Give the Latin for: —

he has	he leaves	he reigns
he was having	he was leaving	he was reigning
he will have	he will leave	he will reign
he has had	he has left	he has reigned
he had had	he had left	he had reigned
he will have had	he will have left	he will have reigned
he is	they are	we leave
he was	they were	we were leaving
he will be	they will be	we shall leave
he has been	they have been	we have left
he had been	they had been	we had left
he will have been	they will have been	we shall have left

Decline **frāter**, **subolēs**, **sacerdōtem**, **flūmine**, **is**, and **quī**.

Make a list of the masc. nouns of the 3d Declension in the above passage. By what rule are they masculine? What one is neuter? Rule. What one is feminine? Rule. What one is sometimes masculine and sometimes feminine?

Decline **rē**. What is the gender of nouns of the 5th Declension?

Give English derivatives from the following: **rēx**, **filius**, **relinquō**, **frāter**, **privō**, **impositōs**, **aqua**.

Decline together **ea rēs**; **id flūmen**; **is frāter**.

Give the synopsis of **relinquō** in the 3d plu.; of **habeō** in the 1st plu.; of **sum** in the 1st sing.



LESSON XXV

106. *Västae* tum in iis locis sölitüdinēs erant. *Lupa*, ut fāmā trāditum est, ad vāgitum accurrit.

västus, -a, -um, adj., *vast, desolate*. Cf. Eng. *waste*.

tum, adv., *then*. Cf. *tunc*, Lesson XXIII.

locus, -i, m., *place*.

sölitüdō, -inis, f., *wilderness*.

lupa, -ae, f., *a she-wolf*.

ut, adv., *as*.

fāma, -ae, f., *report, tradition*.

trāditum est, *it is handed down*.

vāgitum, *crying*.

accurrit, *ran to*.

NOTES

107. *Västae*: decline like **bonus**. In what different places¹ may *västae* be found? With what word in this sentence must it agree? Why may it not be taken with *locis*?

iis: decline in the plural.

locis is from **locus**, -i, masculine in the sing., and usually neuter in the plural. Decline.

fāmā, Abl. of means, limiting **trāditum est**. Rule XIX.

trāditum est, Perf. Ind. Pass. 3d sing., from **trādō**. *ut fāmā trāditum est*, literally, *as it has been handed down by tradition*, = *as the tradition is*.

vāgitum, Acc. sing. of the 4th Decl.; thus declined:—

(a) **Vāgitus** (st. **vāgitu-**), m., *a crying*.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
N. V.	vāgitus	vāgitūs
Gen.	vāgitūs	vāgituum
Dat.	vāgituī	vāgitibus
Acc.	vāgitum	vāgitūs
Abl.	vāgitū	vāgitibus

¹ Case, number, gender.

In the same way decline **saltus**, a woodland; **vultus**, the countenance; **exercitus**, an army; **manus**, the hand.

The stem of nouns of the 4th Declension ends in **-u**, which becomes **-i** before **-bus** in the Dat. and Abl. plu. A few nouns retain the **u** in these cases also. The Nom. ends in **-us** or **-ū**. Those in **-us** are generally masculine, except a few like **manus**, which are feminine. Those in **-ū** are neuter, and are indeclinable in the sing., except that they sometimes have **-ūs** in the Gen. The other cases of the sing. are the same as the stem with final **u** lengthened. In the plu. the Nom., Acc., and Voc. are formed by adding **a** to the stem. The other cases are formed like those of the masculines. As there are but four neuters, and they are but seldom used, they may be learned as they occur.

accurrit, Perf. Ind. Act. 3d sing., from **accurrō**.

Notice that the prep. **ad** is repeated with **vāgītum**, although **accurrit** is itself compounded of **ad** and **currō**. Cf. English *adhere to an opinion*; *adjacent to the town*.

108. Translate at sight:—

1. Pāstor vāgītum parvulōrum audīvit. 2. Proca, rēx, exercitum Albānōrum dūxit. 3. Frātrēs saltūs peragrābant. 4. Virgō vidit id quod Amūlius in manū habuit. 5. Puerī multōs flōrēs in manibus gerēbant. 6. Iūcundum amīcī vul-tum vidēbat. 7. Erat lupa in iīs locīs. 8. Parvulī ad lupam accurrērunt.

1. The she-wolf had heard the crying of the children. 2. She ran to them. 3. They were in a desolate wilderness.¹ 4. Amulius, son of the king, had left them in that place. 5. The water had left them on dry land. 6. The Tiber, as the tradition is, had at-that-time overflowed its

¹ Use the plural.

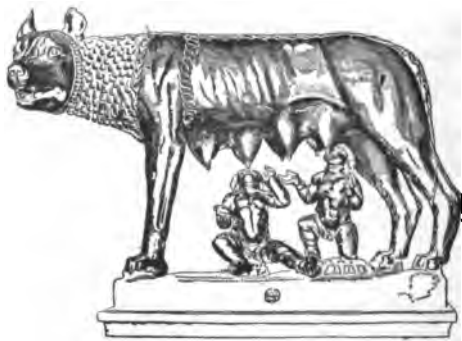
banks. 7. The army of the king moved into the province.
 8. The slave had a chain in his hands. 9. Romulus and Remus wandered-over the woodlands. 10. The countenance of the king's daughter was pleasant.

Decline together *longa manus* ; *māgnus exercitus*.



LESSON XXVI

109. Lupa, ut fāmā trāditum est, ad vāgītum accurrit, infantēs linguā lambit, ūbera eōrum ōrī admōvit mātremque sē gessit.



BRONZE WOLF (Rome)

infantēs, infants, babes.

lingua, -ae, f., tongue.

lambit, she licked.

ūber, -eris, n., udder, breast.

ōs, *ōris*, n., the mouth, face.

admoveō, to move to or towards.

-que, conj., and.

sē, herself.

NOTES

110. Infantēs is from **infāns**, an adjective used here as a noun. As an adjective it means *not speaking, speechless*; and as very young children have not the power of speech, **infāns** came to mean an *infant* or *babe*. **Infantēs**, used as a noun, is either masculine or feminine. As an adjective of the 3d Declension it is thus declined:—

(a)	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. V.	infāns	infāns	infāntēs	infāntia
Gen.	infāntis	infāntis	infāntium (-um)	infāntium (-um)
Dat.	infāntī	infāntī	infāntibus	infāntibus
Acc.	infāntem	infāns	infāntēs (-īs)	infāntia
Abl.	infānte (-ī)	infānte (-ī)	infāntibus	infāntibus

In the same way decline **relābente**, Pres. Part. from **relābēns**, Lesson XXIII. All Pres. Act. Participles are declined in this way. They belong to the **i** stems of the 3d Declension (53). The stem ends in **-ntī**, but the **i** of the stem disappears in some of the forms. All of these have **-e** or **-ī** in the Abl. sing.; **-ium** in the Gen. plu.; **-ēs** or **-īs** in the Acc. plu. masc. and fem.; and **-ia** in the Nom., Acc., and Voc. plu. of the neuter.

Decline

amāns ,	Pres. Part. of	amō ;
regēns ,	" "	regō ;
audiēns ,	" "	audiō .

linguā: Rule XIX.

lambit, Perf. of **lambō**. The perfect stem is the same as the verb stem (74 (c)).

ūber, **-eria**, a liquid noun of the 3d Declension. Plu. is **ūbera**, **ūberum**, etc. Decline in full.

eōrum limits **ōrī**. To whom does **eōrum** refer? Decline it in full.

ōrī, a neut. noun of the 3d Declension. Declined **ōs**, **ōris**, **ōrī**, etc. The Gen. plu. is wanting. It depends upon the prep. **ad** in **admōvit**. Cf. **alveō impositōs**, Lesson XXII. **ūbera** . . . **admōvit**, *moved her udders to their mouth*.

Rule. — *Many verbs compounded with ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super, and de are followed by the Dative.*

admōvit = **ad** + **moveō**. Give the synopsis in the 3d sing.

mātrem: decline like **pater** (63). In apposition with **sē**.
Rule VI.

-que is an enclitic; i.e. a word attached to another word, as **-que** is here attached to **mātre**m. An enclitic always precedes in meaning the word to which it is attached, and draws the accent forward to the syllable immediately before it, — **mā-trēm-que**.

sē is a reflexive pronoun of the 3d person. It regularly refers to the subject; here to **lupa**. It is declined as follows, the forms being the same for both numbers and all genders:—

(b)	N. V.	—
	Gen.	sūi
	Dat.	sibi
	Acc. Abl.	sē or sēsē

gessit: give the synopsis in the 3d plu.

sē gessit, bore herself as a mother = conducted herself as a mother.

(c) **Infāns**, a child considered as one unable to speak.

parvulus, literally, a little one; from **parvus**, small.

111. Translate at sight:—

1. **Lupa** infantem linguā lambit. 2. **Lupa** ad infantēs accurrit. 3. **Infantēs** ad lupam accurrerunt. 4. **Amicus** patrem sē gessit. 5. **Albānī** amicōs sē gesserunt. 6. **Parvulī** ōrī aquam admōverunt. 7. **Vir** aquam eōrum ōrī admōvit.

1. The she-wolf licks the infants with (her) tongue.
2. The she-wolf had run to the crying of the infants.
3. The daughter conducts herself as a mother.
4. The

brother of the king had conducted himself as a father. 5. Amulius conducted himself as a friend. 6. They will have conducted themselves as good soldiers. 7. The shepherd had moved the water to their mouth. 8. They ran up to the infants. 9. He ran up to them.

LESSON XXVII

112. Cum lupa saepius ad parvulōs velutī ad catulōs reverterētur, Faustus, pāstor rēgius, rē animadversā eōs tulit in casam.

cum, conj., *when*.

saepius, adv., *oftener, more frequently*.

velutī, adv., *just as, as if*.

catulus, -i, m., *a whelp*.

reverterētur, *returned*.

regius, -a, -um, adj., *of the king royal*.

animadversā, *having been observed, noticed*.

tulit, *bore, carried*.

NOTES

113. **saepius**, the comparative of the adv. **saepe**. It may be translated here, *repeatedly*.

reverterētur is from **revertor**, a verb that has a passive form and an active meaning. Such verbs are called *Deponent*, because they have laid aside the active form and the passive meaning.

pāstor rēgius, *a shepherd of the king*. An adjective is sometimes used with the meaning of the Gen. of the noun from which it is derived. **rēgius** is derived from **rēx**, and is here equivalent to **rēgis**. Decline **pāstor rēgius** together. Cf. Rule VI.

rē animadversā, *having noticed the circumstance*. What would be the literal meaning? Cf. **eā rē cōgnitā** and **pulsō frātre**, above.

To whom does *eōs* refer? What declension has this ending for the Acc. plu. masc.?

tulit is the Perf. 3d sing. of the irregular verb *ferō*. Inflect the Perf., Plupf., and Fut. Perf.

114. *Translate at sight:—*

1. Lupa saepius ad parvulōs veniēbat. 2. Pāstor rēgius eōs in Faustulī casam tulit. 3. Eā rē animadversā, ad parvulōs accurrit. 4. Exercitus rēgius in prōvinciā bellum gerēbat. 5. Infantēs in aquam tulerant. 6. Cum lupa reverterētur, pāstor eōs in casam tulerat. 7. Faustulus, pāstor bonus, parvulōs in cōniugis casam tulit.

1. Faustulus, the shepherd of the king, saw them in the river. 2. Having noticed this circumstance, he bore them into the hut. 3. He ran to them as if to (his) children. 4. Faustulus was a shepherd of the king. 5. He was on the bank of the Tiber. 6. He saw the twins in a skiff. 7. The river receding, the water had left them on dry land. 8. The she-wolf ran up to them. 9. When the she-wolf returned repeatedly to the children, the shepherd bore them into the hut.



LESSON XXVIII

115. Faustus, pāstor rēgius, rē animadversā eōs tulit in casam et Accae Lārentiae cōniugī dedit ēducandōs. Adultī deinde hī inter pāstōrēs prīmō lūdicrīs certāminibus vīrēs auxēre.

Acca Lārentia, name of the wife of Faustus.

dedit, gave.

ēducandōs, to be brought up.

adultus, -a, -um, adj., grown up, matured. Cf. Eng. adult.

deinde, adv., then, next.

hī, these, they.

inter, prep., among, between.

prīmō, adv., at first, in the first place.

lūdicrīs, adj., playful, sportive.

certāmen, -inis, n., a contest.

vīrēs, strength, force.

NOTES

116. **Accae Lārentiae**, Dat. of Indirect Object, after **dedit**. Cf. **Numitōrī** (90).

Rule. — *The INDIRECT OBJECT of an action is in the Dative case; as, —*

Numitōrī rēgnūm reliquit, he left the kingdom to Numitor.

Accae Lārentiae eōs dedit, he gave them to Acca Larentia.

dedit, Perf. Ind. Act. of **dō**, to give. Perf. formed by reduplication. Cf. **74** (a). The direct object of **dedit** is **eōs**. Inflect **dedit** in the Perf., Plupf., and Fut. Perf.

ēducandōs, a verbal adj. from **ēducō**, denoting purpose, to be brought up. Usually called a *Gerundive*. It agrees with **eōs**, and is declined like **bonus**.

Adultī, an adj. agreeing with **hī**, the subject of **auxēre**. Decline like **bonus**.

hī is a demons. pron., Nom. plu. masc., from **hic**. It is thus declined: —

(a)	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	hic	haec	hōc	hī	hae	haec
Gen.	hūius	hūius	hūius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	huic ¹	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hōc	hōs	hās	haec
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

hic is used of that which is thought of as near the speaker; hence it is called the demonstrative pronoun of the 1st person. **hī** refers here to the two children who are the subject of the discourse. Compare the endings of **is**, **qui**, and **hic**, noticing especially those of the Gen. sing. Point out resemblances between the endings of these pronouns and of nouns of the 1st, 2d, and 3d Declensions.

inter is a prep. used only with the Acc.

lūdicrīs is an adj. in the Abl. plu., to agree with **certāminibus**.

certāminibus, Abl. plu., from **certāmen**; declined like **flūmen**

(63). It limits **auxēre**. Rule XIX.

vīrēs, a fem. noun of the Third Declension, from **vīs**. It belongs to the *i* stems, and is declined irregularly; thus, —

(b)	SINGULAR	PLURAL
N. V.	vīs	vīrēs
Gen.	vīs ²	vīrium
Dat.	vī	vīribus
Acc.	vim	vīrēs
Abl.	vī	vīribus

It is the direct object of **auxēre**.

auxēre, Perf. Ind. Act. 3d plu., from **augeō** (71).

117. *Translate at sight*:—

1. **Hī** inter **pāstōrēs** **rēgiōs** erant. 2. **Geminī**, **Rōmulus** et **Remus**, **vīrēs** **auxērunt**. 3. **Deinde** **vīrēs** **lūdicrīs** **certāminibus** **augēbant**. 4. **Parvulōs** **huic** **dedērunt** **educandōs**.

¹ Pronounced *hweek*.

² The Gen. and Dat. sing. are rare.

5. Infāntēs in casam hōrum tulerant. 6. Hīs rēgnū relīque-
rant. 7. Nōn vīribus corporum māgnū bellum gessērunt.
8. In hōc templō est sacerdōs. 9. Eōrum; hōrum; quōrum.

1. At first these were increasing (their) strength by sport-
ive contests. 2. He gave the infants to the shepherds of
the king. 3. The friends of these had been among the
Albans. 4. The shepherd of the king conducted himself
as a father. 5. Faustulus gave the infant to (his) wife.
6. The child whom Amulius left in the skiff was the son
of Rhea Silvia. 7. Great is the strength of the state.
8. The boy who came among the shepherds was Romulus,
brother of Remus. 9. This boy whom the shepherds
brought up conducted himself as a king. 10. Of these;
to or for these; of whom (*sing. and plu.*). 11. They gave
him water.



LESSON XXIX

118. Adultī deinde hī inter pāstōrēs prīmō lūdiciīs cer-
tāminibus vīrēs auxēre, deinde vēnandō saltūs peragrāre et
latrōnēs ā rapīnā pecorum arcēre coepērunt.

vēnandō, in hunting.

saltus, -ūs, m., woodland, forest.

latrō, -nis, m., a robber.

ā, prep., from, by.

rapīna, -ae, f., plundering, robbery.

pecus, -oris, n., cattle, herd.

arcēre, to keep away, prevent

coepērunt, they began.

NOTES

119. **deinde** introduces a second thought, following that intro-
duced by **prīmō**. In the first place they increased their strength,
then they began, etc.

vēnandō, a verbal noun, usually called a *Gerund*, corresponding to the English verbal noun in *-ing*. The Gerund is in the neuter gender, and is used only in the oblique cases of the singular. **vēnandō** is in the Abl., modifying **peragrāre**. Inflect it.

saltūs is a noun of the Fourth Declension, and is declined like **vāgītus** (107 (a)). It is in the Acc. plu., the direct object of **peragrāre**.

peragrāre is in the Pres. Inf. Act., depending on **coepērunt**.

(a) The Pres. Inf. Act. of regular verbs is formed by adding **-re** to the pres. stem; thus, **amā**, **amāre**; **monē**, **monēre**; **rege**-, **regere**; **audi**-, **audire**. The Pres. Inf. shows to what conjugation any verb belongs; the endings being as follows:—

For the First Conjugation, **-āre**.

“ Second “ **-ēre**.

“ Third “ **-ere**.

“ Fourth “ **-ire**.

latrōnēs, Acc. plu., declined like **legiō** (63).

ā is always followed by the Ablative. It takes the form **ab** before words beginning with a vowel or **h**, and is written **ā** usually before consonants.

pecorum: cf. **corpus** (63).

arcēre, same construction as **peragrāre**. In what conjugation does this form of the Infinitive show **arcēre** to be?

coepērunt is in the Perf. Ind. Act. 3d plu., from **coepī**. It is a *defective verb*, the forms from the pres. stem not being used. The forms from the perf. stem are regular, — **coepī**, **coeperam**, **coeperō**.

120. Translate at sight:—

1. Pueri vēnandō saltūs peragrābant — péragrāverant.
2. Hi adulti ā rapinā latrōnēs arcēnt.
3. Lūdieris certāminibus vīrēs augēre coepērunt.
4. Silvam peragrāre coeperat.
5. Parvulōs educāre coeperāmus.
6. Pāstōrēs latrōnem ā pecoribus arcēbant.
7. Princeps ā prōvinciā equitēs arcēbat.

1. In hunting, Romulus will wander through the woodlands. 2. They had begun to increase (their) strength by hunting. 3. He began to keep away the shepherds from the hut. 4. At first they were wandering through the woods, then they were keeping the robbers away from plundering the herds. 5. The brother who was the elder began to reign. 6. The she-wolf began to run to the crying of the infants. 7. I saw these children. 8. These girls will sing.



LESSON XXX

Review

121. *Read and translate:—*

Vāstae tum in iīs locīs sōlitūdinēs erant. Lupa, ut fāmā trāditum est, ad vāgītum accurrit, infantēs linguā lambit, ūbera eōrum ōrī admōvit mātremque sē gessit. Cum lupa saepius ad parvulōs velutī ad catulōs reverterētur, Faustus, pāstor rēgius, rē animadversā eōs tulit in casam et Accae Lārentiae cōniugī dedit ēducandōs. Adultī deinde hī inter pāstōrēs primō lūdiciīs certāminibus vīrēs auxēre, deinde vēnandō saltūs peragrāre et latrōnēs ā rapinā pecorum arcēre coepērunt.

NOTES

122. What three words have we had meaning *then*? Make lists of nouns, in the above passage, of the Third Declension, classify them according to gender, and give the rule for the gender of each.

What two nouns of the Fourth Declension? Rule for gender in the Fourth Declension?

Give the Gen. and Dat. sing. and plu. of **is** and **hic**.

What word has the same forms in the singular and plural?

How can you tell whether **sē** in **sē gessit** is singular or plural?

The endings of **parvulōs**, **catulōs**, **eōs**, **ēducandōs**, show what declension, case, number, gender? What part of speech is **rēgius**? What is it equivalent to in the expression, **pāstor rēgius**?

Give the Ablative plural of **rē animadversā**.

Give the synopsis in the Ind. 3d sing. of **erant**, **admōvit**, **gessit**, **auxēre**.

Give the Accusative and Ablative singular of **vīrēs**.

To whom does each of the following refer: **eōrum**, **sē**, **eōs**, **hī**? Give the gender and number of each, and the rule.

What case follows **admōvit**, and why? What case follows **dedit**, and why?

Observe the English derivatives:—

impose

aquarium

tradition

effusive

local

lingual

aquatic

solitude

revert

EXERCISE

123. Romulus and Remus were twins. Their mother was Rhea Silvia, whom Amulius made priestess of Vesta. Amulius cast the children into the Tiber. As it happened, the river at that time had overflowed its banks. A she-wolf ran to them, and acted like a mother. Faustulus, a shepherd of the king, bore the little ones to (his) wife. She brought them up in (her) hut. At first they increased (their) strength by playful contests, and next they wandered through the woodlands in hunting. They began to drive away the robbers from the herds.

LESSON XXXI

Passive Voice

124. The Pres. Ind. Pass. of **amō** is thus inflected:—

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. ámor , ¹ <i>I am loved.</i>	amámur , <i>we are loved.</i>
2. amáris or -re , <i>you are loved.</i>	amámini , <i>you are loved.</i>
3. amátur , <i>he, she, or it is loved.</i>	amántur , <i>they are loved.</i>

It will be seen that these forms are made up of the stem **amā-**, together with certain endings joined to it.

These endings used in the inflection of the verb in the Passive voice are as follows:—

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. -r or -or	-mur
2. -ris or -re	-mini
3. -tur	-ntur

Compare these endings with the personal endings of the Active voice (**12**). The letter **r** is so commonly found in these endings that it may properly be called the Passive Sign.

By substituting these endings for the endings of the Active voice in the Present, Imperfect, and Future Tenses, we have the Passive forms for those tenses.

Present Tense

SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. móneor	monémur	1. régor	régimur
2. monéris (-re)	monémini	2. régeris	regimini
3. monétur	monéntur	3. régitur	regúntur

¹ For **amaor**.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. audior	audīmur
2. audīris (-re)	audīminī
3. audītur	audiūntur

EXERCISE

125. 1. Laudantur; laudātur; laudāmur; laudāmus.
 2. Movēris; movēminī; movētur; moventur. 3. Dūcitur;
 dūcuntur; mitteris; mittor. 4. Finītur; finīuntur; pūnī-
 ris; pūnīmur. 5. Rēgnum Numitōrī relinquitur. 6. Nu-
 mitor subole prīvātur. 7. In siccō frātrēs relinquuntur.
 8. Perīculō bellī liberāmur.

1. He sees; he is seen; he hears; he is heard. 2. We
 call; we are called; we lead; we are led. 3. You send;
 you are sent; you teach; you are taught. 4. The twins are
 left in the skiff. 5. The strength of the boys is increased.
 6. The army is led into the province. 7. Amulius is sent
 into the town. 8. We are left in the hut of the shepherd.



LESSON XXXII

Passive Voice — Continued

126. (a) *Imperfect Tense*

SINGULAR

PLURAL

- | | |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| 1. amābar, <i>I was loved.</i> | amābāmur, <i>we are loved.</i> |
| 2. amābāris (-re), <i>you were loved.</i> | amābāmini, <i>you are loved.</i> |
| 3. amābātur, <i>he, etc., was loved.</i> | amābāntur, <i>they are loved.</i> |

Inflect, in the same way, the Imperfect of **moneō**, **regō**, and **audiō**,—

SINGULAR

PLURAL

monēbā- regēbā- audiēbā- }	-r, -ris (-re), -tur.	}	-mur, -mini, -ntur.
-------------------------------------	-----------------------	---	---------------------

The **a** in the tense sign **ba** is short in the 1st sing. and the 3d plu., as in **amābar** and **amābantur**. Observe that these forms are made up of the present stem, the tense sign, and the personal endings of the Passive Voice; as **monē** + **bā** + **tur**.

(b) *Future Tense*

SINGULAR

PLURAL

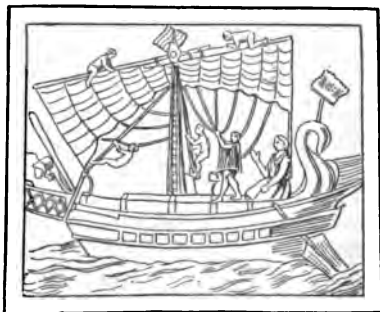
amāb- monēb- }	-or, -eris (-re), -itur.	}	-imur, -imini, -untur.
reg- audi- }	-ar, -ēris (-re), -ētur.	}	-ēmur, -ēmini, -entur.

Write out these forms in full, and compare them with the corresponding forms of the Active voice. For the tense sign of the Future, cf. 19.

EXERCISE

127. 1. Subole privātur — privābātur — privābitur. 2. Tenentur; tenēbātur; tenēbitur. 3. Vocantur; amābantur; vidēbantur. 4. In siccō relinquuntur. 5. Liberābimur; movētur; movēbitur. 6. Monēbit; monēbitur; monēbat; monēbātur. 7. Bellum gerēbātur. 8. Rēgnum Numitōrī relinquēbātur. 9. Pūniunt; pūniuntur; pūniēbant; pūniēbantur. 10. Mittō; mittor; mittēbam; mittēbar; mittam; mittar. 11. Laudāris; movēris; dūceris; vincēris.

1. You will be left in the water. 2. The twins were left in a skiff. 3. He is seen; it is pointed out; they are moved. 4. They will be moved; they will be sent; they will be called. 5. They hear; they are heard; they lead; they are lead. 6. We were ordering; we were ordered; he is heard; it is finished. 7. The brother will be banished. 8. He saw; he was seen; he will send; he will be sent.



LESSON XXXIII

Participles

128. The Latin verb has *four* participles, — the Present and Future of the Active voice, and the Perfect and Gerundive, or Future, of the Passive voice. For example: —

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Pres. <i>amāns</i> , <i>loving</i> .	Perf. <i>amātus</i> , <i>loved</i> or <i>having been loved</i> .
Fut. <i>amātūrus</i> , <i>being about to love</i> .	Fut. (Gerundive) <i>amandus</i> , <i>to be loved</i> .
Pres. <i>monēns</i>	Perf. <i>monitus</i>
Fut. <i>monitūrus</i>	Fut. (Gerundive) <i>monendus</i>
Pres. <i>regēns</i>	Perf. <i>rēctus</i>
Fut. <i>rēctūrus</i>	Fut. (Gerundive) <i>regendus</i>
Pres. <i>audiēns</i>	Perf. <i>auditus</i>
Fut. <i>auditūrus</i>	Fut. (Gerundive) <i>audiendus</i>

Give the Participles of *vocō*, *mittō*, and *pūnīō*.

It will be seen that the Present Participle is formed from the present stem by adding *-ns*; in the Fourth Conjugation, *-ēns*.

The Gerundive is also formed from the present stem by adding *-ndus*; in the Fourth Conjugation, *-endus*.

The Future Active and the Perfect Passive Participles are formed from the supine stem. This stem is formed by adding *t* (sometimes *s*) to the verb stem. It will be noticed that, in the Second Conjugation, the final *e* of the verb stem is changed to *i* before *t* in the supine stem; also that consonant changes sometimes take place in forming the supine

stem of the Third Conjugation, as in *rēct-*, where *g* becomes *c* before *t*; and *gest-*, where *r* becomes *s* before *t*. These changes may best be learned from observation.¹

The Present Participle is declined like *infāns* (110 (a)). The Future Active, Perfect Passive, and Gerundive are declined like *bonus*.

The supine stem is so called because the Supine—a part of the verb but little used—is formed from it. The Supine corresponds in form to the neut. sing. of the Perfect Passive Participle. Thus, *amātum*, *monitum*, *rēctum*, *audītum* are the Supines of *amō*, *moneō*, *regō*, and *audiō* respectively.

129. The Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, Perfect Indicative, and the Supine are called the *Principal Parts* of the verb, because they show the three stems of the verb and also the conjugation to which the verb belongs.

			<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>	<i>Supine</i>
The prin. parts of	<i>amō</i>	are	<i>ámō</i>	<i>amāre</i>	<i>amāvī</i>	<i>amātum</i>
" " "	<i>moneō</i>	"	<i>móneō</i>	<i>monēre</i>	<i>mónui</i>	<i>mónitum</i>
" " "	<i>regō</i>	"	<i>régō</i>	<i>régere</i>	<i>rēxi</i>	<i>rēctum</i>
" " "	<i>audiō</i>	"	<i>audiō</i>	<i>audīre</i>	<i>audīvi</i>	<i>audītum</i>

The conjugation to which the verb belongs may conveniently be known by observing the vowel before *-re* of the Infinitive.

130. *Read and translate:—*

Quā rē cum iīs insidiātī essent latrōnēs, Remus captus est, Rōmulus vī sē dēfendit.

¹ The final *t* of the supine stem is changed to *s* after *t*, *d*, *lg*, *rg*, *ll*, *rr*, and in a few other cases, the preceding letter being then assimilated or omitted.

quā rē (sometimes written as one word, quārē), <i>on account of which thing, wherefore.</i>	captus est , <i>was taken captive, was captured.</i>
insidiātī essent , <i>had lain in ambush, had plotted against.</i>	dēfendō, -ere, -ī, dēfēnsūm , <i>to defend.</i>

NOTES

131. Quā rē, Abl. of cause, or reason, modifying **dēfendit**.

cum: cf. **cum** in Lesson XXVII.

iīs, Dat., depending upon **insidiātī essent**. Rule X. Decline **iīs** in the plu.

insidiātī essent, Plupf. Subj., from **insidior**, a deponent verb. Cf. **reverteretur**, Lesson XXVII. Compounded with the preposition **in**.

captus est, Perf. Ind. Pass. 3d sing., from **capiō**.

vī: decline. Abl., modifying **dēfendit**: *defended himself with force*. Rule XIX.

The conjunction **et** may be supplied before **Rōmulus**.

sē: decline (110 (b)). To whom does **sē** refer?

dēfendit, Perf. Ind. Act. 3d sing., from **dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēnsūm**. Write the participles of **dēfendō**. Give the synopsis in the 3d sing. of the Ind. Act. and the Ind. Pass. as far as it has been learned.

132. Translate at sight:—

1. Rōmulus vī Remum dēfendit. 2. Rōmulus sē dēfendere coepit. 3. Frātrēs sē dēfendērunt. 4. Cum eī insidiātī essent latrōnēs, ad casam Faustulī cucurrit. 5. Frātrēs, quī sē dēfendēbant, in oppidum properāvērunt. 6. Hī sē vī dēfenderant.

1. Wherefore Remus was taken captive. 2. Romulus will be defended. 3. Remus defended Romulus by force. 4. The shepherds began to defend themselves. 5. These will de-

fend themselves. 6. When the robbers had lain in wait for Remus, Romulus defended himself. 7. We began to defend the sons of the priestess. 8. Amulius, to whom the kingdom was left, threw Rhea Silvia into prison. 9. Having; leading; having been led; having been ordered; being about to lead; being about to punish.



LESSON XXXIV

133. Tum Faustulus, necessitate compulsus, indicavit Rōmulō quis esset eōrum avus, quae māter. Rōmulus statim, armātis pāstōribus, Albam properāvit.

necessitās, -tātis, f., necessity.

avus, -i, m., grandfather.

compellō, -ere, -puli, -pulsum,
to compel, force.

statim, adv., forthwith, straight-
way.

quis, who?

armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to arm.

esset, was.

NOTES

134. necessitate: decline like *aetās* (55 (b)). For construction, cf. Rule XIX.

compulsus, Perf. Pass. Part., from *compellō*, agreeing with *Faustulus*. Compounded of *con* and *pellō*. Note that the reduplication of the Perfect of the simple verb is omitted in the compound (74 (a)).

Rōmulō: Rule IX.

quis is an interrogative pronoun. It is declined like the relative *qui*, except that when used as a substantive it has **quis** in the Nom. masc. sing., and **quid** in the Nom. and Acc. neut. sing. Write out the declension of **quis** in full.

esset, Impf. Subj. 3d sing. of **sum**.

quae is the Nom. fem. sing. of **quis**. **Quis** and **quae** agree in number and gender respectively with **avus** and **māter**. If the predicate noun were neut. plu., for example, the interrogative would be neut. plu. Supply **esset** after **quae**.

avus and **māter** are predicate nouns after **esset**. Their case follows the

Rule. — *A predicate noun after a neuter or passive verb takes the same case as the subject; for example, —*

Rēx est populī amīcus, the king is a friend of the people.

Incolae appellantur Gallī, the inhabitants are called Gauls.

armātis, a Perf. Pass. Part. in the Ablative Absolute with **pāstōribus**. Literally, *the shepherds having been armed*; better, *having armed the shepherds*. This construction is called the *Ablative Absolute*. It corresponds to the independent construction in English; as, *the war being finished, the general returned home*. But the Ablative Absolute construction is much more common in Latin than the independent construction in English; and in translating the Ablative Absolute into English, the independent construction should generally be avoided. Cf. **pulsō frātre**, Lesson XX.; **eā rē cōgnitā**, Lesson XXII.; **relābente flūmine**, Lesson XXIII.; **rē animadversā**, Lesson XXVII.

Study also the following examples of the same construction:—

Cicerōne cōnsule, **Catīlīna cōnspīrātiōnem fēcīt**, in the consulship of Cicero, Catiline formed a conspiracy. (Cicero being consul.)

Vivīs nōbīs, **ex urbe ēgressus est**, he went out of the city, and left us alive. (We living.)

Rule. — *A noun and a participle, or a noun and an adjective, or two nouns, may be put in the Ablative to denote the TIME, CAUSE, or other ATTENDANT CIRCUMSTANCE of an action.*

The Ablative Absolute may generally be best translated into English by a clause with *when*, *while*, *if*, *although*, *after*, etc., or by

the Perf. Act. Part. with an object, or by a verb and an object. Thus, in the example in this lesson, **armātis pāstōribus**, *having armed the shepherds, or he armed the shepherds and hastened, etc.*

Albam, Acc. of *place to which*, after **properāvit**.

Rule.—*After verbs of motion, PLACE TO WHICH is expressed by the Accusative, PLACE FROM WHICH by the Ablative; names of towns, small islands, domus (home), and rūs (the country) without a preposition; other nouns take ad or in with the Accusative, and ab, dē, or ex with the Ablative; for example, —*

Rōmam properāvit, *he hastened to Rome.*

Rōmā properāvit, *he hastened from Rome.*

Ad urbem properāvit, *he hastened to the city.*

Ab urbe properāvit, *he hastened from the city.*

Domum properāvit, *he hastened home.*

135. Translate at sight:—

1. Faustulus necessitāte compellitur. 2. Necessitās Faustulum compellit. 3. Indicābat Rōmulō quis esset eius pater. 4. Numitor erat Rōmuli avus. 5. Quae est geminōrum māter? 6. Quis est Amūli pater? 7. Indicat Rōmulō quis sit¹ eius avus. 8. Indicābimus Remō quae sit eius māter. 9. Rōmulus, armātis pāstōribus, domum properāvit. 10. Frātrēs statim Albā properābant. 11. Eā rē cōgnitā, ad urbem properāvit.

1. Forced by necessity, Romulus and Remus defended themselves. 2. He sees who his father is. 3. He saw who his mother was. 4. They ran home; they ran to the town; they ran to Alba. 5. Having armed (his) brother, he began

¹ Pres. Subjunc. 3d sing. of **sum** = *is*. Notice that **sit** and **esset** are used when the interrogative part of the sentence is dependent.

to hasten to the king. 6. Wherefore he began to inform Remus who his father was. 7. Having armed the shepherds, they began to drive the robbers away from the plundering of the herds. 8. Who was the father of the twins? 9. He informed them who their father was (cf. 135. 3).



LESSON XXXV

136. Intereā Remum latrōnēs ad Amūlium rēgem perdūxērunt, eum accūsantēs, quasi Numitōris agrōs infēstāre solitus esset; itaque Remus ā rēge Numitōrī ad supplicium trāditus est.

intereā, adv., *meanwhile, in the meantime.*

perdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *to conduct.*

accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to accuse.*

quasi,¹ adv., *as if, on the pretext that.*

infēstō, -āre, —, —, *to trouble, disturb.*

solitus esset, *had been accustomed.*

itaque, conj., *and so, therefore.*
supplicium, -ī, n., *punishment.*

trādō, -ere, trādidī, trāditum, *to give up, hand over.*

NOTES

137. **perdūxērunt** (**per**, *through*, and **dūcō**, *to lead*). Give the synopsis of the Ind. mode, Act. voice, and the first three tenses of the Pass. What is the subject? what the object?

¹ **Quasi** and **ubi** (57) are the only words, thus far given, having final **i** short.

accūsantēs, Pres. Act. Part., from **accūsō**. Give the participles, both voices. Decline like **infāns** (110 (a)). With what does it agree?

ā rēge, *by the king*. *Means*, as we have seen, is expressed in Latin by the Abl. without a prep.; but a person is not regarded as a *means*, but as an *agent*, and the *agent* is expressed in Latin by the Abl. with **ā** or **ab**. Thus, in Lesson XXV., "**fāmā trāditum est**," *it has been handed down by tradition*, **fāmā** is the Abl. of means; but in "**ā rēge trāditus est**," *he was handed over by the king*, **rēge** is the agent, and the prep. **ā** is expressed.

Rule. — *The voluntary agent of a verb in the Passive voice is in the Ablative with ā or ab.*

trāditus est: cf. **trāditum est**, Lesson XXV. Give all the participles of **trādō**. **trāditus est** is in the Perfect Indicative Passive 3d sing.

138. The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Passive are compound tenses formed by combining the Perfect Passive participle with the first three tenses of **sum**.

The Perfect Passive Participle with the Present tense of **sum** forms the Perfect Tense, Passive Voice; with the Imperfect Tense of **sum**, the Pluperfect Passive; and with the Future Tense of **sum**, the Future Perfect Passive.

Thus, **amātus sum**, *I have been loved* or *I was loved*.

amātus eram, *I had been loved*.

amātus erō, *I shall have been loved*.

As the participle, like the adjective, agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case, it will take the masculine, feminine, or neuter form, according as the subject is masculine, feminine, or neuter. Thus we have, —

amātus, -a, -um **est**, *he was loved, she was loved, it was loved*.

amāti, -ae, -a **sunt**, *they were loved; they being either masculine feminine, or neuter*.

(a) *Perfect Passive*

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
amātus, -a, -um	} sum, es, est.	amātī, -ae, -a	} sumus, estis, sunt.
monitus, -a, -um		monitī, -ae, -a	
rēctus, -a, -um		rēctī, -ae, -a	
audītus, -a, -um		audītī, -ae, -a	

(b) *Pluperfect Passive*

amātus, -a, -um	} eram, erās, erat.	amātī, -ae, -a	} erāmus, erātis, erant.
monitus, -a, -um		monitī, -ae, -a	
rēctus, -a, -um		rēctī, -ae, -a	
audītus, -a, -um		audītī, -ae, -a	

(c) *Future Perfect Passive*

amātus, -a, -um	} erō, eris, erit.	amātī, -ae, -a	} erimus, eritis, erunt.
monitus, -a, -um		monitī, -ae, -a	
rēctus, -a, -um		rēctī, -ae, -a	
audītus, -a, -um		audītī, -ae, -a	

139. *Translate at sight:—*

1. Intereā Remus ad rēgem properāverat. 2. Remus ā latrōnibus ad Amūlium perductus erat. 3. Latrōnēs eōs accūsāvērunt. 4. Frātrēs, Rōmulus et Remus, ā rēge Amūliō accūsātī sunt. 5. Is rēgis agrōs infestāre solitus erat. 6. Remus, quī ad Amūlium perductus est, ā latrōnibus rēgī trāditus erat. 7. Agrī pāstōrum ā frātribus peragrātī erant. 8. Puerī agrōs eōrum infestāre solitī sunt. 9. Virī ad eōs properābant. 10. Frātrēs domum properāverint.

1. Remus had been accused by the robbers. 2. The king had handed over Remus to Numitor for punishment. 3. And so the robbers ran to Amulius. 4. He was accustomed to

accuse the shepherds who were troubling (his) fields. 5. They accused the men who had been handed over to Numitor for punishment. 6. Straightway the shepherds of the king hastened to them. 7. Having learned this fact,¹ the robbers conducted him to Alba. 8. They will have been accused by the king.



LESSON XXXVI

140. At cum Numitor, adulēscētis vultum cōnsīderāns, aetātem minimēque servīlem indolem comparāret, haud procul erat quā nepōtem agnōsceret.

At, conj., *but*. Cf. **sed** in **92** and **101**.

adulēscēns, -entis, adj. used as a noun, *a youth*.

vultus, -ūs, m., *countenance, looks*.

cōnsīderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to consider*.

minimē, adv., *least of all, not at all*.

servīlem, adj., *slavish, servile*.

indolēs, -lis, f., *character, disposition*.

comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to compare*.

haud, adv., *not, by no means*.

procul, adv., *far, far off*.

quā, conj., *but that*.

agnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum, *to recognize*.

NOTES

141. **adulēscēns**, used as a noun, is declined like the masc. and fem. of **Infāns** (**110** (a)), — **adulēscēns**, **adulēscētis**, **adulēscētī**, etc. It has **e** alone, and not **e** or **i**, in the Abl. sing. Nouns in **-ns** and **-rs** of the 3d Declension are declined like **adulēscēns**.

¹ Cf. **98**, **99**.

vultum, a noun of the 5th Declension, declined like **vāgītus** (107 (a)).

cōnsiderāns, Pres. Act. Part., from **cōnsiderō**. Decline like **infāns**. Give all the participles of **cōnsiderō**.

minimē, superlative of the adv. **parum**, *little*. **minimē servīlem**, *not at all slavish*.

que: cf. 110, n. on **que**.

servīlem, an adj. in the Acc. sing., from **servīlis**, agreeing with **indolem**.

indolem, noun in the Acc. sing., from **indolēs**. Decline like **subolēs** (93 (a)). Not used in the plu.

comparāret, Impf. Subj. Act. 3d sing. Cf. **privāret** in Lesson XX., **revertētur** in Lesson XXVII., **agnōsceret** in this Lesson. It will be observed that each of these forms has the syllable **re** immediately following the stem vowel. This syllable is always found in the Impf. Subj., and may be called the sign of that tense. For example:—

(a) $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{amā-re} \\ \text{monē-re} \\ \text{rege-re} \\ \text{audi-re} \end{array} \right\} \text{are the bases upon which the Impf. Subj. is formed in these verbs.}$

It will be observed also that these *bases* correspond exactly with the Pres. Inf. Act. of these verbs. The Pres. Inf. Act. and the *base* of the Impf. Subj. are always the same. By adding the personal endings to this base, we have the inflection of the Impf. Subj.:—

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. amārem	amārēmus	1. amārēr	amārēmur
2. amārēs	amārētis	2. amārēris (-re)	amārēmini
3. amāret	amārent	3. amārētur	amārentur

ACTIVE

$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{monē-} \\ \text{rege-} \\ \text{audi-} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \text{-rem, -rēs, -ret.} \\ \text{-rēmus, -rētis, -rent.} \end{array}$

PASSIVE

monē-	} -rer, -rēris, -rētur. }	} -rēmur, -rēmini, -rentur.
rege-		
audi-		

Inflect in the same way **privāret**, **comparāret**, and **agnōsceret**. **haud** is a negative adv. used chiefly with adjectives and other adverbs.

quīn is a conjunction regularly followed by the Subjunctive, as in this instance by **agnōsceret**.

nepōtem : cf. 57.

haud procul erat quīn nepōtem agnōsceret, literally, *he was by no means far but that he recognized his grandson*. Better thus : *he was not far from recognizing, or, he almost recognized, etc.*

Give the synopsis of **erat**.

142. *Translate at sight :—*

1. Cum Numitor adulēscēntis vultum cōnsiderāret, nepōtem agnōscēbat. 2. Rheae Silviae fīlius minimē servīlem indolem habēbat. 3. Remus haud procul erat quīn vī sē dēfenderet. 4. Vultum adulēscēntis agnōvit. 5. Vultus adulēscēntis haud servīlis erat. 6. Cum Amūlius nepōtem agnōsceret, Remum Numitōrī ad supplicium trādīdit. 7. Ā pāstōribus regī trādītus est. 8. Ad avum eum perdūxērunt.

1. When Numitor recognized (his) grandson, he conducted him to the king. 2. Having noticed¹ this circumstance, he began to recognize the countenance of the youth. 3. He began to compare the age of the youth, and his disposition by no means slavish. 4. He was on the point² of handing him over to the king for punishment. 5. The youth who had been captured by the robbers was the grandson of Numi-

¹ Lesson XXVII.

² Haud procul, etc.

tor. 6. The youth, whose countenance he was considering, was conducted to Alba. 7. The king was on the point of recognizing Remus.

Give the synopsis of **trādō** and of **comparō** in the Ind. Pass. 3d sing.

LESSON XXXVII

143. Nam Remus ōris lineāmentis erat māt̄rī simillimus aetāsque expositiōnis temporibus congruēbat. Ea rēs dum Numitōris animum anxium tenet, repente Rōmulus supervenit, frātrē liberat, interēptō Amūliō avum Numitōrē in rēgnū restituit.

nam, adv., *for*.

ōs, ōris, n., *face, features*.

lineāmentum, -ī, n., *lineament, outline*.

simillimus, -a, -um, adj., *most like, very like*.

expositiō, -ōnis, f., *exposure*.

congruō, -ēre, -uī, — (con + gruō), *to agree, coincide*.

dum, conj., *while*.

anxius, -a, -um, adj., *anxious, troubled*.

repente, adv., *suddenly*.

superveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *to come up, arrive*.

interimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēptum, *to kill, slay*.

restituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *to replace, restore*.

NOTES

144. **ōris**: cf. Lesson XXVI., **ōrī**.

lineāmentis, Abl. plu., limiting **simillimus**. *Very like his mother in the outlines of his face*. It denotes in what respect he was like his mother. Cf. **nātū**, in **nātū māior**, Lesson XIX.: *greater in respect to birth*. These constructions follow the

Rule. — *The ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION is used with nouns, adjectives, and verbs to denote IN WHAT RESPECT anything is true.*

mātrī, Dat., limiting **simillimus**. Adjectives of likeness are followed by the Dat. in Latin. Cf. the English, *similar to his mother*.

simillimus, an adj. from **similis**, *like*, in the superlative degree, declined like **māgnus**.

temporibus, Dat., by Rule X. *Coincided with the time*, etc.

Ea res: give Gen. and Dat. sing. and plu.

anxius is predicative: *keeps the mind of Numitor anxious*, i.e. *in doubt or in perplexity*.

(a) The verbs of this sentence, — **tenet**, **supervenit**, **liberat**, and **restituit**, are called *Historical Presents*; so called because they describe past events as if they were taking place in the present. The same usage is not uncommon in English, in vivid description; as, “Ulysses *wakes*, not knowing where he is.”

supervenit = **super** + **veniō**. How does the 3d sing. of the Pres. Act. differ from the 3d sing. of the Perf. Act. of this verb? Which is this?

Give the principal parts and the synopsis of the Ind. Act. of the four verbs in this sentence.

interēptō Amūliō: Rule XXVIII. How may this be best translated? Cf. Lesson XXXIV., n. on **armātis**.

145. *Translate at sight:*—

1. Remus ōris lineāmentis similis erat mātrī. 2. Filius erat mātrī simillimus. 3. Numitoris animus eā rē anxius tenēbātur. 4. Amūlius ā Rōmulō interēptus est. 5. Rōmulus Remum frātrem liberāverat. 6. Repente Rōmulus supervēnit et Amūlium interēmit. 7. Eā rē audītā Remum liberāvit et avum in rēgnum restituit.

1. Romulus was not very like Remus. 2. Hearing the cry of the little ones [the crying of the little ones being

heard], the brother suddenly came up. 3. The robbers will slay the youth whom the brother has liberated. 4. Romulus having armed the shepherds straightway restored Numitor to the throne. 5. Romulus was very like (his) father in the outlines of his face. 6. This circumstance kept the mind of his grandfather anxious. 7. Then he informed Romulus who his grandfather was. 8. When Numitor recognized (his) grandson, he freed Remus and slew Amulius.



LESSON XXXVIII

Review

146. *Read and translate:—*

Quā rē cum iis insidiātī essent latrōnēs, Remus captus est, Rōmulus vī sē dēfendit. Tum Faustulus, necessitatē compulsus, indicāvit Rōmulō quis esset eōrum avus, quae māter. Rōmulus statim armātis pāstōribus Albam properāvit. Inter eā Remum latrōnēs ad Amūlium rēgem perdūxērunt, eum accūsantēs, quasi Numitōris agrōs infestāre solitus esset; itaque Remus ā rēge Numitōrī ad supplicium trāditus est; at cum Numitor, adulēscentis vultum cōnsiderāns, aetātem minimēque servilem indolem comparāret, haud procul erat quīn nepōtem agnōsceret. Nam Remus ōris lineāmentis erat mātři simillimus aetāsque expositiōnis temporibus congruēbat. Ea rēs dum Numitōris animum anxium tenet, repente Rōmulus supervenit, frātrem liberat, interēptō Amūliō avum Numitōrem in rēgnum restituit.

NOTES

147. What mode and tenses have we had in clauses introduced by **cum**?

How does the declension of **quis** differ from that of **qui**, the relative?

To whom does **eōrum** refer? What gender and number is **eōrum**, and why? What words are declined like **māter**? How are *place to which* and *place from which* expressed in Latin? How is the agent expressed in Latin? the indirect object? the means?

What two words have we had meaning *not*?

Give the Impf. Subj. of **indicāvit**, **properāvit**, **perdūxērunt**, **congruēbat**. Give all the participles, Act. and Pass., of **dēfendit**, **cōnsiderāns**, **tenet**, **restituit**. Give the principal parts of the eight verbs just mentioned. Give the synopsis, Act. and Pass. 3d sing., of **indicāvit**, **trādītus est**, and **tenet**. Give the synopsis of **sum** in the Ind. 3d plu.

Decline **vī** and **sē**. How may the Ablative Absolute be best translated?

What is the rule for the case of **māter** in **quae māter**?

Observe the English derivatives: *insidious*, *capture*, *defense*, *compel*, *infest*, *servile*, *similar*, *expose*, *incongruous*, *restitution*.

EXERCISE

148. The robbers lay in wait for the twins. Faustus told Romulus who his mother was. Romulus immediately armed the shepherds. He then hastened to the town. They were led to Amulius by the robbers who accused them. They gave up Remus to Numitor for punishment. Remus was very like (his) mother in countenance. The brother had been set free by Romulus. Amulius was killed. The grandfather Numitor was restored to the kingdom, and immediately hastened to Alba.

LESSON XXXIX

149. Deinde Rōmulus et Remus urbem in *isdem* locis, ubi expositi ubique educati erant, condiderunt; sed ortā inter eos contentiōne, uter nōmen novae urbī daret eamque imperiō regeret, auspicia dēcrēvērunt adhibere.

deinde: cf. Lesson XXIX.

isdem, *same*.

expōnō, -ere, -posui, -positum,
to expose.

ubique, *and where.*

condō, -ere, -didi, -ditum, *to*
found, build.

ortā, *having arisen.*

contentiō, -ōnis, f., *contest, strife.*

uter, utra, utrum, *which of the*
two.

nōmen, -inis, n., *a name.*

urbs, -bis, f., *a city.*

dō, dare, dedi, datum, *to give.*

daret, *should give.*

imperium, -i, n., *power, authority,*
supreme power, empire.

auspiciū, -i, n., *divination, aus-*
pices.

dēcernō, -ere, dēcrēvi, dēcrē-
tum, *to decide, determine, de-*
cree.

adhibeō, -ere, -ui, -itum, *to*
employ, make use of, have re-
course to.

NOTES

150. *urbem*, a noun of the 3d Declension with **-ium** in the Gen. plu. and **-es** or **-is** in the Acc. plu. It belongs to the **i** stems. Cf. 53.

isdem is a demons. pron. from **idem**, compounded of **is** and the affix **-dem**. It is declined like **is** (102 (a)), the syllable **-dem** remaining unchanged throughout. The only changes from the declension of **is** are the following: **isdem** in the Nom. sing. masc. becomes **idem**; **iddem** in the neut., **idem**; **m** is changed to **n** in the Acc. sing. and the Gen. plu. before **d**; and **iisdem** becomes **isdem** in the Dat. and Abl. plu. Write out the declension in full.

locis: cf. 107, n. on **locis**.

erant is to be taken with **expositi** as well as with **educati**. Give the synopsis of these verbs in the Ind. Pass.

ubique = **ubi** + **que**. Cf. 110, n. on **-que**.

condidērunt: inflect the tense, and give all the participles.

ortā is a Perf. Part. from **orior**, a deponent verb. Cf. 113, n. on **reverterētur**.

inter: cf. **inter pāstōrēs**, Lesson XXVIII.

eōs refers to whom?

ortā contentiōne, Ablative Absolute. Give rule for gender of **contentiō**.

nōmen: cf. **flūmen**, (63).

urbī: Rule IX.

daret: observe the short **a** in the stem. **dō** is the only verb of the 1st Conjugation with the characteristic vowel **a** short. Imperfect Subjunctive. Inflect the tense.

eam refers to **urbī**; hence **fem**.

imperio: Rule XIX. Decline in the sing.

regeret = *should rule*. Imperfect Subjunctive. Inflect the tense. Connected to **daret** by **-que**.

auspicia is derived from two Latin words meaning *to observe birds*. The early Romans sought to learn the will of their gods by observing the flight of birds. The meaning of **auspicium**, in process of time, was widened, and came to be applied to various means for learning of future events. It is here used in its original meaning. Before entering upon any important undertaking, whether public or private, the Romans were accustomed to take the auspices. **auspicia** is the object of **adhibere**.

151. Translate at sight:—

1. Rōmulus urbem condidit. 2. Rōmulus et Remus in isdem locīs educātī sunt ubi urbem condidērunt. 3. Cum urbem conderent, inter eōs contentiō orta est. 4. Deinde nōmen novae urbī dedērunt. 5. Nōmen novae urbī ab iīs datum est. 6. Hanc urbem imperio regēbant. 7. Novam urbem condere dēcrēverant. 8. Urbe conditā, Rōmulus eam imperio regere dēcrēvit. 9. Urbs quam condidērunt

luit Rōma. 10. Ortā inter frātrēs contentiōne Remus vi sē dēfendēbat.

1. A city was founded by Romulus. 2. Having given a name to the new city, they ruled it by (their) power. 3. They consulted (*adhībeō*) the auspices (as to) which of the two should found¹ the city. 4. Romulus gave the name to the new city. 5. They decide to found a city in the same places where they had been exposed. 6. Romulus informed (his) grandfather who was ruling the city. 7. They gave to this city which they founded the name Rome.



LESSON XL

152. Remus prior sex vulturēs, Rōmulus posteā duodecim vidit. Sic Rōmulus, victor auguriō, urbem Rōmam vocāvit. Ad novae urbis tūtēlam sufficere vāllum vidēbātur.

prior, adj., comparative degree,
former, first.

sex, numeral adj., *six.*

vultur, -uris, m., *a vulture.*

posteā, adv., *afterwards.*

duodecim, numeral adj., *twelve.*

sic, adv., *thus.*

augurium, -i, n., *augury, sign.*

tūtēla, -ae, f., *protection, defense.*

sufficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *to be sufficient, suffice.*

vāllum, -i, n., *rampart.*

vidēbātur, *seemed.*

NOTES

153. **prior**, an adj. in the comparative; the positive is wanting. Used here instead of a superlative, because but two (Romulus and Remus) are spoken of. It is declined as follows:—

¹ Cf. *uter daret*, above.

(a)	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. V.	prior	prīus	priōrēs	priōra
Gen.		priōris		priōrum
Dat.		priōrī		priōribus
Acc.	priōrem	prīus	priōrēs	priōra
Abl.		priōre or priōrī		priōribus

All comparatives are declined like **prior**. They are classed with adjectives of the 3d Declension. Cf. **pāstor** (63). Observe that they have **-e** or **-ī** in the Abl. sing., and **-um** in the Gen. plu.

Decline, in the same way, **māior**, *greater*, and **melior**, *better*.

sex, a numeral adj. : indeclinable.

duodecim : indeclinable. **duo**, *two*, + **decem**, *ten*.

victor : many verbal nouns in **-tor** are used as adjectives. **victor auguriō** = *victorious through augury*; i.e. shown to be victorious by the omens.

auguriō : Rule XIX. *Through augury, i.e. through observance of omens*; in this instance, by observing the flight of birds.

urbem Rōmam vocāvit, *called the city Rome*. Cf. Lesson XXI., **sius filiam, Vestae sacerdotem fecit**, *made his daughter priestess of Vesta*. These two accusatives after the verb are explained by the following rule :—

Rule. — *Verbs meaning to MAKE, CHOOSE, NAME, CALL, and the like, take two Accusatives of the same person or thing.*

Ad tūtēlam : cf. **ad supplicium**, Lesson XXXV.

videbātur : Impf. Ind. Pass. 3d sing. of **videō**, *to see*; but **videō** in the Pass. form is often used as a deponent with the meaning, *to seem*. This is its use here. What is a deponent verb? Cf. 113. Synopsis of the Ind. Pass.

154. *Translate at sight* :—

1. Rōmulus erat victor auguriō. 2. Remus duodecim vulturēs viderat. 3. Remus postea Rōmulum victōrem

vocāvit. 4. Rōmulus auspicia adhibēre solitus est. 5. Vā-lum ad urbis tūtēlam sufficiet. 6. Urbem quam condidērunt Rōmam vocāvērunt. 7. Rōmulus victor auguriō esse¹ vidēbātur. 8. Remus prior sex vulturēs, Rōmulus deinde duo-decim vidit.

1. A contest having arisen between the brothers, they determined to consult the auspices. 2. They called the shepherds robbers. 3. Six vultures were seen by Remus, afterwards twelve by Romulus. 4. Thus Romulus was called the victor.² 5. Remus first saw the vultures. 6. The new city was called Rome by Romulus. 7. Romulus called the new city Rome. 8. They had determined to consult the auspices (as to) which-of-the-two should rule the new city.



LESSON XLI

155. Quod inrīdēns cum Remus saltū trāīēcisset, eum irātus Rōmulus interfēcit, hīs increpāns verbīs: “Sic deinde, quicumque alius trānsiliet moenia mea.” Ita sōlus potītus est imperiō Rōmulus.

inrīdeō, -ēre, -rīsī, -rīsum, to <i>laugh at, ridicule.</i>	irātus, -a, -um, adj., angry, en- <i>raged.</i>
saltū, with a leap or bound.	interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum,
trāīciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, to <i>pass over, go over. (trāns,</i>	<i>to kill, slay.</i>
<i>across + iaciō, to throw.)</i>	increpō, -āre, -uī, -itum, to up- <i>braid, chide.</i>

¹ To be.

² Cf. Rule III.

verbum, -i, n., a word.

quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, whoever, whatever.

alius, alia, aliud, adj., other, another.

trānsiliō, -ire, -ui, —, to leap over or across.

moenia, -ium, n., ramparts, walls.

Only in the plu.

meus, -a, -um, poss. adj. pron., my.

ita, adv., so, thus.

sōlus, -a, -um, adj., alone, only.

potior, -iri, -itus sum, to become master of, gain possession of.

NOTES

156. quod, neut. sing. Acc. of the rel. pron., with vāllum, in the preceding lesson, for its antecedent. It is the object of inrīdēns. The rel. pron. is often used at the beginning of a sentence in Latin where in English a demons. or a pers. pron. would be used. Quod is here equivalent to id. Laughing at this or it.

inrīdēns, agrees with Remus. The English order would be cum Remus inrīdēns quod, etc. Give all of the participles, both voices, of inrīdēns.

saltū, a noun of the 4th Declension, with only the Acc. and Abl. sing. and plu. in use. Rule XIX.

trāiēcisset, Plupf. Subj. 3d sing., had gone over.

eum, object of interfēcit.

interfēcit, Perf. Ind. Act. 3d sing. Inflect the tense. Give the Plupf. and Fut. Perf.

With what do irātus and increpāns agree?

verbis: for construction, cf. saltū above.

sic, thus (shall be killed).

deinde, after this, hereafter.

quicumque alius = whatever other one.

quicumque is a general or indefinite rel. pron., declined like quī, quae, quod (96 (a)), with the affix -cumque added to all of the forms; as, —

Nom. quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque

Gen. cūiuscumque

Dat. cūicumque, etc.

alius is declined as follows:—

(a)	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. V.	álius	ália	áliud	áliī	áliae	ália
Gen.	álfus	álfus	álfus	áliōrum	áliārum	áliōrum
Dat.	áliī	áliī	áliī	áliīs	áliīs	áliīs
Acc.	álium	áliam	áliud	áliōs	áliās	ália
Abl.	áliō	áliā	áliō	áliīs	áliīs	áliīs

Eight other adjectives, making nine in all, have the Gen. sing. in **-ius**, and the Dat. sing. in **-ī**. These adjectives are —

nūllus , -a, -um, <i>no one</i> .	ūllus , -a, -um, <i>any</i> .
sōlus , -a, -um, <i>alone</i> .	ūnus , -a, -um, <i>one</i> .
tōtus , -a, -um, <i>whole</i> .	alter , -tera, -terum, <i>the other</i>
uter , -tra, -trum, <i>which (of two)</i> .	<i>(of two)</i> .
	neuter , -tra, -trum, <i>neither</i> .

It will be noticed that **alius** has **-d** in the Nom. and Acc. neut. sing. **nūllus**, **sōlus**, **tōtus**, **ūllus**, and **ūnus** are declined like **bonus**, except in the Gen. and Dat. sing. The declension of **alter**, **uter**, and **neuter** will be given later.

trānsiliēt = **trāns**, *across*, + **salīō**, *to leap*. Give the synopsis of **trānsiliēt** in the Ind. Act.

imperiō is in the Abl., after **potītus est**, according to the —

Rule. — *The deponent verbs ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, and vescor are followed by the Ablative.*

(**ūtor**, *to make use of*; **fruor**, *to enjoy*; **fungor**, *to perform*; **potior**, *to gain possession of*; **vescor**, *to feed upon, to eat*.)

Observe especially the perf. stems of **inrīdeō**, **increpō**, and **trānsiliō**.

157. *Translate at sight:—*

1. Remus saltū vāllum trāiēcit. 2. Remus vāllum inrīsit. 3. Rōmulus cum eum increpūisset, interfēcit. 4. His verbīs Remum increpābat. 5. Quicumque alius hōc vāllum

saltū trāiēcerit, interficiam. 6. Remus mea moenia nōn trānsiliet. 7. Sōlus Remus vāllum trānsiluit. 8. Alius imperiō potītus est. 9. Aliī rēgnō potītī sunt. 10. Alius moenia saltū trāiciet. 11. Quicumque moenia trānsilit, multīs verbīs increpat.

1. Remus was leaping over the rampart. 2. Romulus, being angry, killed him. 3. Romulus gained possession of the kingdom. 4. Remus went over the rampart with a leap. 5. Then another laughed at the rampart. 6. Romulus, who had built the city in this place, upbraided him with these words. 7. "Thus will I slay whatever other one shall laugh at my rampart." 8. He alone gained possession of the chief-power. 9. They alone will leap over my walls.



LESSON XLII

Review

158. *Read and translate:—*

Deinde Rōmulus et Remus urbem in isdem locīs ubi expositī ubique educātī erant, condidērunt; sed ortā inter eōs contentiōne, uter nōmen novae urbi daret eamque imperiō regeret, auspicia dēcrēvērunt adhibēre. Remus prior sex vulturēs, Rōmulus duodecim vīdit. Sic Rōmulus, victor auguriō, urbem Rōmam vocāvit. Ad novae urbis tūtēlam sufficere vāllum vidēbātur. Quod inrīdēns cum Remus saltū trāiēcisset, eum irātus Rōmulus interfēcit hīs increpāns verbīs: "Sic deinde, quicumque alius trānsiliet moenia mea." Ita sōlus potītus est imperiō Rōmulus.

NOTES

159. Make a list of the verbs in the above passage, arranging them according to the conjugations to which they belong.

Give the principal parts of **condidērunt, daret, inrīdēs, increpāns, and trānsiliēt.** What is the peculiarity of the verb **dō**?

Remembering that the Impf. Subj. may be formed from the Pres. Inf. Act. by adding the personal endings, write the inflection of the Imp. Subj. Act. and Pass. of **condidērunt, dēscrēvērunt, adhibēre, sufficere, interfēcit, and trānsiliēt.**

Give all the participles, active and passive, of **daret, vīdit, dēscrēvērunt, and trānsiliēt.**

Decline **alius** and **sōlus** in the singular.

How may the relative at the beginning of a Latin sentence often be translated?

Decline together **novae urbis** in both numbers.

What construction follows verbs of *naming, calling, etc.*?

What construction follows **potior**? Give the other verbs that take the same construction.

Give the Dat. and Acc. sing. and plu. of **prior.**

Write the Gen. and Acc. plu. of **urbem.**

What case or cases may follow **in? inter? ad?**

Notice that **saltū trāicere** and **trānsillīre** are equivalent expressions.

Give rule for gender of **urbem, nōmen, auguriō, verbis.**

Observe the following English derivatives: *expose, educate, contention, nomenclature, imperial, priority, duodecimals, sufficient, irate, sole.*

EXERCISE

160. 1. Romulus founded the city Rome. 2. A strife arising between the brothers (as to) which-of-the-two should rule the new city, they straightway consulted the auspices. 3. Romulus gave to the city the name Rome. 4. Romulus saw twelve vultures, but Remus six. 5. Thus Romulus was

the victor. 6. Remus laughed at the walls of the new city, and Romulus killed him. 7. Romulus alone was called king. 8. Romulus, who had determined to call the city Rome, upbraided his brother Remus with these words.



LESSON XLIII

Nouns of the Third Declension—i-stems

161. Hostis (st. *hosti-*), m.
and f., *an enemy*.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
N. V.	<i>hóstis</i>	<i>hóstēs</i>
Gen.	<i>hóstis</i>	<i>hóstium</i>
Dat.	<i>hóstī</i>	<i>hóstibus</i>
Acc.	<i>hóstem</i>	<i>hóstēs, -is</i>
Abl.	<i>hóste</i>	<i>hóstibus</i>

Mare (st. *mar-*), n.,
the sea.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
N. V.	<i>máre</i>	<i>mária</i>
Gen.	<i>máris</i>	<i>márium</i>
Dat.	<i>máří</i>	<i>máribus</i>
Acc.	<i>máre</i>	<i>mária</i>
Abl.	<i>máří</i>	<i>máribus</i>

Urbs (st. *urbi-*), f.,
a city.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
N. V.	<i>úrbs</i>	<i>úrbēs</i>
Gen.	<i>úrbis</i>	<i>úrbium</i>
Dat.	<i>úrbī</i>	<i>úrbibus</i>
Acc.	<i>úrbem</i>	<i>úrbēs, -is</i>
Abl.	<i>úrbe</i>	<i>úrbibus</i>

Clīens (st. *clīenti-*), m.
and f., *a client*.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
N. V.	<i>clēns</i>	<i>clīentēs</i>
Gen.	<i>clīentis</i>	<i>clīentium</i>
Dat.	<i>clīentī</i>	<i>clīentibus</i>
Acc.	<i>clīentem</i>	<i>clīentēs, -is</i>
Abl.	<i>clīente</i>	<i>clīentibus</i>

The four nouns given above represent the four classes of *i* nouns. Any nouns hereafter met with in these lessons that belong to these classes and vary in any of their forms from the ones here given, will be specially noticed; and their variation from these forms will be pointed out.

(a) Nouns formed from **i** stems may be divided into the following classes:—

1. Nouns in **-ēs** and **-is** not increasing in the Genitive singular, *i.e.* having no more syllables in the Genitive than in the Nominative.

2. Neuters in **-e**, **-al**, and **-ar**.

3. Monosyllables in **s** and **x** preceded by a consonant.

4. Most nouns in **-ns** and **-rs**.¹

An examination of the forms of **i** nouns of the 3d Declension will show the following statements to be true:—

(b) *In the Singular*

1st Class.—Some nouns of this class are declined in the sing. like consonant stems, and some retain **i** in the Accusative or Ablative, or in both. These will be noticed as they occur.

2d Class.—These nouns have **i** in the Ablative sing.

3d and 4th Classes.—These are declined in the sing. like consonant stems.

(c) *In the Plural*

In nouns of all the four classes the **i** is retained in the Genitive plural, which has **-ium** instead of **-um**; in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative plural neuter, which have **-ia**; and in the Accusative plural masculine and feminine, which has **-is** as well as **-ēs**.

Of the nouns already given, study and classify: **subolēs**, **Tiberim**, **infantēs**, **adolēscētis**, **indolem**, **urbem**.

¹ In the declension of these four classes of nouns, the **i** of the stem often disappears or is changed to **e**.

LESSON XLIV

Romulus, the First King of the Romans

162. Rōmulus imāginem urbis magis quam urbem fēcerat; incolae deerant. Erat in proximō lūcus; hunc asyllum fēcit. Et statim eō mīra vīs latrōnum pāstōrumque cōnfūgit.

imāgō, -inis, f., image, likeness.

Cf. **multitūdō (63).**

magis quam, rather than.

faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum, to make, do.

deerant, were wanting.

in proximō, near by.

lūcus, -ī, m., a grove.

asyllum, -ī, n., a place of refuge, an asylum.

eō, thither, to that place.

mīrus, -a, -um, adj., wonderful, extraordinary.

cōnfugiō, -ere, confūgī, —, to flee, take refuge.

NOTES

163. fēcerat: what tense? Cf. **rōxerat.**

deerant, Impf. 3d plu. of **dēsum = dē + sum.** It is inflected like **sum** with the syllable **dē** prefixed.

hunc asyllum: Rule XVII. **hunc** refers to **lūcus.** Romulus made his new city a place of refuge for criminals and outlaws and runaway slaves from the region round about; therefore it came to consist chiefly of men without wives and families. The neighbors very naturally looked upon the settlement on the Tiber as a nest of thieves and robbers, and refused to allow their daughters to intermarry with them.

vīs latrōnum, force of robbers = number of robbers. Decline together **mīra vīs.**

cōnfūgit, Perf. Ind. Act. 3d singular. How does this form differ from the Present?

Verbs in **-iō** of the Third Conjugation, like **fugiō, faciō, iaciō,** are inflected as follows:—

(a) **Capiō** (pres. stems¹ **cape-** and **capi-**), *to take*.

Present Tense

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. capiō	cāpimus	1. cāpior	cāpimur
2. cāpis	cāpitis	2. cāperis or -re	cāpimīnī
3. cāpit	cāpiunt	3. cāpitur	cāpiūntur

The Impf. **capiēbam** and the Fut. **capiam** are inflected like verbs of the Fourth Conjugation. Cf. **audiēbam** (35) and **audiam** (51).

Like **capiō** inflect **iaciō**.

164. *Translate at sight:—*

1. Rōmulō rēge, Rōma imāgō urbis erat magis quam urbs.
 2. Rōmulus imāginem urbis faciet. 3. Erat in proximō asyllum.
 4. Rōmulus urbem asyllum faciēbat. 5. Statim eō latrōnēs pāstōrēsque cōnfūgērunt. 6. Frūmentum deerat.
 7. Mīra vīs latrōnum in urbe erat. 8. Lūcum asyllum fēcīt.
 9. Mīra vīs hostium in urbem properāvit. 10. Hostēs in mare cōnfūgērunt.

1. Romulus made the likeness of a city in this place.
 2. The city which he founded on the Tiber² he called Rome.
 3. He made an asylum, rather than a city. 4. Straightway there came thither a wonderful number of men. 5. When Romulus was king,³ a city was founded on the Tiber. 6. The robbers and shepherds fled to the asylum. 7. He called the robbers enemies.

¹ A part of the forms are to be referred to one of these stems, and a part to the other.

² **ad Tiberim**.

³ Ablative Absolute.

LESSON XLV

165. Cum vērō uxōrēs ipse populusque nōn habērent, lēgātōs circā vicīnās gentēs mīsit, quī societātem cōnūbiumque novō populō peterent. Nūsq̄am benignē audīta lēgātiō est.

cum, *since.*

vērō, *adv., in truth, however.*

Never first in a sentence.

uxor, -ōris, *f., a wife.*

ipse, -a, -um, *he himself, i.e.*

Romulus.

lēgātus, -ī, *m., an ambassador, envoy.*

circā, *prep., around, round about.*

Always with the Acc.

vicīnus, -a, -um, *adj., of the neighborhood, neighboring.*

gēns, **gentis**, *f., tribe, people.*

societās, -tātis, *f., alliance.*

cōnūbium, -ī, *n., the right of intermarriage, marriage.*

petō, -ere, -īvī, -itum, *to seek.*

nūsq̄am, *adv., nowhere.*

benignē, *adv., in a friendly manner, kindly.*

lēgātiō, -ōnis, *f., embassy.*

NOTES

166. **uxōrēs**, object of **habērent**.

mīsit: the subject is a pronoun understood, referring to Romulus.

The clause, **quī . . . peterent**, expresses purpose, — *who should seek*. Better expressed in English by the Infin. *to seek*, etc.

populō is the Dat. modifying **peterent**. *For the new people.*

ipse is thus declined: —

	(a) SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. V.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
Gen.	ipsus	ipsus	ipsus	ipsōrum	ipsarum	ipsōrum
Dat.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

Give the Participles, both voices, of **mīsit** and **peterent**.

167. *Translate at sight:—*

1. Rōmulus ipse uxōrem nōn habuit. 2. Populus vērō Rōmulum in rēgnum restituit. 3. Lēgatiōnem circā vicinās gentēs mīserunt. 4. Gentēs ad quās lēgātī missī sunt societātem petēbant. 5. Prīncipēs, quī uxōrēs nōn habēbant, cōnūbium sibi petiērunt. 6. Lēgātī, quī ā Rōmulō circā vicinās gentēs missī sunt, nūsqum benignē audītī sunt. 7. Incolae asyllum sibi petunt. 8. Rōmulus lēgātōs circā vicinās gentēs mīserat, quī societātem novō populō peterent.

1. Romulus sought for the right-of-intermarriage for the new people. 2. The envoys, whom he sent around the neighboring tribes, were not heard kindly. 3. Romulus himself and the people did not have wives. 4. Wives are wanting—were wanting—will be wanting. 5. The neighboring tribes did not send envoys. 6. They sought intermarriage, rather than an alliance. 7. The embassy which was sent by Romulus was not heard kindly by the neighboring tribes.



LESSON XLVI

168. Nūsqam benignē audita lēgatiō est: lūdibrium etiam additum: "Cūr nōn fēminīs quoque asyllum aperuistis? Id enim compār foret cōnūbium." Rōmulus, aegritūdinem animī dissimulāns, lūdōs parat; indicī deinde finitimīs spectāculum iubet.

lūdibrium, -ī, n., *mockery, derision.*

etiam, adv., *even, and also.*

addō, -ere, **addidī**, **additum**,
to add.

cūr, adv., *why.*

quoque, conj., *also.*

aperiō, -ire, -ui, -ertum, *to open.*

enim, conj., *for.* Never first in a sentence.

compār, adj., *equal, suitable.*

foret, *would be.*

aegritūdō, -inis, f., *anxiety, vexation.*

dissimulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to hide, conceal.*

lūdus, -ī, m., *a play, game.* In the plu., *games, spectacles.*

parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to prepare.*

indico, -ere, -dixī, -dictum, *to proclaim, announce.*

finimus, -a, -um, adj., *neighboring.* As a noun in the plu., *neighbors.*

spectāculum, -ī, n., *a show, spectacle.*

NOTES

169. **additum**, the neuter of the Perf. Pass. Part., to agree with **lūdibrium**. Supply **est**. *Derision even was added.* This derision is shown by the following speech. They had opened an asylum for worthless men: why didn't they open a similar asylum, or refuge, for women also? Then they would have women suitable for such men.

quoque always emphasizes the word immediately preceding — here **fēminīs**. *For women also*, as well as for men.

compār, -paris, has **e** or **i** in the Ablative. It agrees with **cōnūbium**.

foret is an old form for **esset**.

aegritūdinem animī, vexation of spirit.

indīcī is the Pres. Pass. Inf. of **indīcō**. The subject is **spectāculum**. *He orders a spectacle to be announced to the neighbors.*

(a) The Pres. Pass. Inf. of the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations is formed by adding **-rī** to the verb stem; of the Third Conjugation, by adding **-ī** to the verb stem. For example, —

amō ,	stem	amā- ,	Pres. Pass. Inf.	amārī , to be loved.
laudō ,	"	laudā- ,	" "	laudārī , to be praised.
moneō ,	"	monē- ,	" "	monērī , to be warned.
habēō ,	"	habē- ,	" "	habērī , to be had.
dūcō ,	"	dūc- ,	" "	dūcī , to be led.
mittō ,	"	mitt- ,	" "	mittī , to be sent.
faciō ,	"	fac- ,	" "	facī , to be done.
audiō ,	"	audī- ,	" "	audīrī , to be heard.
vinciō ,	"	vincī- ,	" "	vincīrī , to be bound.

It will be noticed that the only difference between the Pres. Act. Inf. and the Pres. Pass. Inf., in the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations, is that in the Act. voice the ending is **e** and in the Pass. voice **ī**; as, **amāre**, **amarī**; **monēre**, **monērī**; **audire**, **audīrī**. Verbs in **-iō** of the Third Conjugation form the Pres. Pass. Inf. in **-ī**; as, **capīō**, **capī**; **iaciō**, **iacī**; **rapiō**, **rapi**.

170. Translate at sight: —

1. Fēminīs quoque asyllum aperiētur. 2. Asyllum quoque fēminīs aperiētur. 3. Asyllum aperiīrī iubet. 4. Lūdī ā Rōmulō parātī sunt. 5. Cūr fēminīs quoque asyllum aperiīrī iūssit? 6. Spectāculum finitimīs indictum est. 7. Rōmulus deinde aegritūdinem animī dissimulābat. 8. Lūdōs quoque parārī iūssit. 9. Cūr Rōmulus spectāculum indīcī iubēbat? 10. Quod vērō ipse populusque uxōrēs nōn habebant.

1. Wives were wanting. 2. So Romulus sent envoys round about the neighboring tribes. 3. They were nowhere heard kindly. 4. They upbraided Romulus with these words: "Why do you not order an asylum to be opened for women too? Why do you seek the right-of-intermarriage for the new people?" 5. Romulus concealed (his) vexation of spirit. 6. He ordered games to be prepared, and the show to be proclaimed to the neighbors. 7. Straightway a wonderful number of people came to the new city.



LESSON XLVII

171. Multi convēnere studiō etiam videndae novae urbis, m̄ximē Sabīnī cum līberīs et cōniugibus. Ubi spectāculi tempus vēnit eōque conversae mentēs cum oculis erant, tum signō datō iuvenēs Rōmānī discurrunt, virginēs rapiunt.

conveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum,

to come together, assemble.

studium, -ī, n., zeal, desire.

m̄ximē, adv., especially.

Sabīnī, -ōrum, m., the Sabines.

cum, prep., with.

convertō, -ere, -ī, -versum, to

turn, direct.

mēns, mentis, f., the mind.

signum, -ī, n., sign, signal.

iuvenis, -is, m. and f., a youth,
a young person.

Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj., Roman.

discurrō, -ere, -curriōr-cucurri,
-cursum, to run different ways,
to run to and fro.

rapiō, -ere, -ui, -tum, to carry off
by force, to hurry away, seize.

NOTES

172. Multi, the Nom. plu. masc. of the adj. **multus**, much, many, used substantively. Adjectives are often used as nouns,

especially in the plural; as, **bonī**, *good men*; **multī**, *many men*; **multa**, *many things*; **bona**, *goods*.

convēnēre, the second form of the Perf. Ind. 3d plural, — **convēnērunt** or **-ēre**. A compound of **cum**, *with*, and **veniō**, *to come*; but **cum** in compounds takes the form **com** or **con**, and has the force of *together*.

studiō: cf. Rule XIX.

etiam may here be translated *besides*. They came not only to see the **spectāculum**, but to see, besides that, the new city.

videndae is the Gerundive, — a word having the construction of an adjective or participle, — and agrees with **urbis**. Cf. 116, n. on **ēducandōs**, and Lesson XXXIII. The English idiom here differs entirely from the Latin idiom. We should express the same thought in English by translating **videndae** as a verbal noun, with **novae urbis** for its object, — thus, *of seeing the new city*; or better still, in this instance, by the use of an Infinitive, — *from a desire to see the new city*.

Sabīnī: the Sabines were a people of central Italy, dwelling between the Apennines, the river Anio, and the Tiber, northeast of Rome. They were curious to see what their new neighbors were doing.

cum, a preposition that takes the Abl. only. Not to be confounded with **cum** meaning *when* or *since*.

eō, *thither*, i.e. towards the show. Cf. **eō**, Lesson XLIV.

mentēs belongs to the *i* stems, Third Declension. Cf. Lesson XLIII. It is declined in the sing. like the consonant stems, and in the plu. has **-ium** in the Gen. and **-ēs** or **-is** in the Acc. Decline it in full.

conversae erant: what tense? Why **conversae** rather than **conversi**? Give synopsis of the Ind. Pass.

eōque conversae mentēs cum oculis erant, *their minds had been directed to it together with their eyes*, i.e. they were wholly absorbed in the spectacle before them; their thoughts and their eyes were directed towards it.

signō datō, *at a given signal*. Cf. Lesson XXXIV., note on **armātis**. Rule XXVIII.

discurrunt (**dis**, *apart*, + **currō**, *to run*): the Perf. of the simple verb **currō** is formed by reduplication; cf. 74 (a). This reduplication is sometimes retained and sometimes omitted in compounds.

Observe the tense of **discurrunt** and **rapiunt**. The Present is used to give vividness to the narrative. The Present tense thus used is called the Historical Present.

Inflect the Pres. Tense, Act. and Pass., of **rapiō**. Cf. **capiō**, Lesson XLIV., notes. Give the synopsis of the Ind. Act. and Pass. of **rapiō**.

173. Translate at sight:—

1. Multī convēnere studiō videndi spectāculi. 2. Rōmulus haud procul erat quā imāginem urbis faceret. 3. Sabīnī māximē convēnere studiō videndi novī populī. 4. Signum ā Rōmānīs datum est. 5. Līberōs et cōniugēs Sabīnōrum rapiēbant. 6. Rōmulus societātem novō populō petivit. 7. Sabīnī ā Rōmulō Rōmānīs ad supplicium trāditī sunt. 8. Līberī et cōniugēs Sabīnōrum ā iuvenibus Rōmānīs raptī sunt. 9. Multī ad spectāculum mentēs convertēbant. 10. Vicīnae gentēs convēnerunt etiam studiō videndōrum Rōmānōrum.

1. At a given signal, the Roman youth carry-off-by-force the wives and daughters of the Sabines. 2. When Romulus was king,¹ the Sabines especially came together from a desire to see the spectacle. 3. They came to the new city with (their) wives and children. 4. Their minds, together with their eyes, were turned towards the games. 5. He ordered the daughters of the Sabines to be carried-off-by-force. 6. The wives and children of the Sabines ran-to-and-

¹ Ablative Absolute.

fro. 7. After Remus was killed,¹ Romulus prepared games. 8. Thus Romulus and the new people had wives.

174.

adulēscēns, a person that is growing up; a person from fifteen to thirty years of age.

iuvēnis, a young man up to about forty-five years of age; older than **adulēscēns**, and younger than **senior** or **senex**, *an old man*.

finitimus, near in the sense of *bordering upon, adjoining*.

vicīnus, near in the sense of *neighboring, in the vicinity*.

mēns, the mind considered as the seat of *thought*, — *the intellect*.

animus, the mind considered as the seat of *feeling or desire*.



LESSON XLVIII

175. Haec fuit statim causa belli. Sabīnī enim ob virginēs raptās bellum adversus Rōmānōs sūmpsērunt, et cum Rōmae appropinquārent, Tarpēiam virginem nactī sunt, quae aquam forte extrā moenia petītum ierat. Hūius pater Rōmānae praeerat arcī.

causa, -ae, f., *cause*.

ob, prep. with the Acc., *on account of*.

adversus, prep. with the Acc., *against*.

sūmō, -ere, -psī, -ptum, *to take, undertake, begin*.

appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to come near to, approach*.

Tarpēia, -ae, *Tarpēia*.

nancīscor, **nancīscī**, **nactus sum**, *to meet with, fall in with*.

extrā, prep. with the Acc., *outside of, beyond*.

petītum, *to seek, ask for*.

eō, **īre**, **īvī** or **īī**, **itum**, *to go*.

praeerat, *was set over, had charge of, commanded*.

arx, -cis, f., *a citadel*.

¹ Cf. **interēemptō Amūliō**, Lesson XXXVII.

NOTES

176. ob virginēs raptās, literally, *on account of the maidens carried off*; = *on account of the seizing and carrying off of the maidens*. The Perf. Part. agreeing with a noun is often best translated by a verbal noun having the noun with which it agrees depending upon it.

sūmpsērunt: the letter *p* is inserted before the endings of the perfect and supine stems for euphony. Inflect the tense; give the synopsis of the Ind., both voices, and give the participles.

Rōmae, Dat. after **appropinquārent**.

nactī sunt, a deponent verb. Cf. 113, n. on **reverterētur**.

The *principal parts* of the Passive Voice consist of the Pres. Ind., the Pres. Inf., and the Perf. Ind.; for example, **amor**, **amārī**, **amātus sum**; **moneor**, **monērī**, **monitus sum**; **regor**, **regī**, **rēctus sum**; **audior**, **audīrī**, **audītus sum**.

What is the gender and number of **quae**, and why? Decline it. **aquam**: object of **petitum**.

petitum is the Supine of **petō**, **petere**, **petīvī**, **petitum**, depending upon **ierat**, and denoting the purpose of her going, viz. *to seek water*.

Rule. — *The Supine in -um is used with verbs of Motion to express PURPOSE.*

Besides the Supine in **-um**, a form in **-ū** is occasionally found. The Supine in **-um** is called the *former* Supine; that in **-ū**, the *latter*. The Supine is formed from the supine stem of the verb by adding **-um** and **-ū**.

ierat is for **Iverat**, the Plupf. Ind. Act. from the irregular verb **eō**. It is inflected as follows:—

(a)		Eō (st. I-), <i>to go</i> .	
		<i>Present</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>
SINGULAR	PLURAL		ibam, ibās, ibat , etc.
1. é-ō , <i>I go</i> .	ī-mus , <i>we go</i> .		
2. ī-s , <i>you go</i> .	ī-tis , <i>you go</i> .		<i>Future</i>
3. ī-t , <i>he etc. goes</i> .	é-unt , <i>they go</i> .		ībo, ībis, ībit , etc.

Perfect

f̄vī (ī), f̄vistī, f̄vit, etc.

Pluperfect

f̄veram (ieram), f̄verās, f̄verat, etc.

Future Perfect

f̄verō, f̄veris, f̄verit, etc.

Imperfect Subjunctive

f̄rem, f̄rēs, f̄ret, etc.

It will be observed that these forms resemble the forms of the Fourth Conjugation, but the *ī* of the stem becomes *e* before *a*, *o*, and *u*; the *ē* before the tense-sign *-ba* of the Impf. is wanting, and the Future is formed after the analogy of the First and Second Conjugations. Moreover, as will be seen hereafter, the *i* of the supine stem is short. In other respects, the verb is regular.

hūius refers to Tarpeia, and limits *pater*.

praeerat = *prae*, *before*, + *sum*, *I am*. It is inflected like *sum* with the prep. *prae* prefixed.

arcī is an *i* noun of the Third Declension, declined like *urbs*.

177. *Translate at sight:—*

1. Rōmānī statim virginēs Sabīnōrum rapuerunt. 2. Bellum adversus Rōmānōs ā Sabīnīs sūmptum est. 3. Cum Rōmānī iuvenēs virginēs raperent, Sabīnī bellum sūmpserunt. 4. Militēs quī urbī appropinquābant, Tarpēiam virginem nactī sunt. 5. Aquam forte extrā moenia petierat. 6. Tarpēia cum extrā moenia īret, Sabīnōs nacta est. 7. Rōmulus urbī praeerat. 8. Multī novam urbem vīsum īverunt.

1. He informed them what was the cause of the war.¹
2. The Sabines will begin war against the Romans.
3. Romulus ordered that the maidens be seized.
4. When they approached the city, the signal was given.
5. They

¹ Cf. *quis esset*, etc., Lesson XXXIV.

fell-in-with the wives and children of the Sabines. 6. She will go outside the city to seek water. 7. She went to the new city with her father. 8. Romulus will-be-set-over the city which he founded. 9. They came to the show to seek wives.



LESSON XLIX

Review

178. *Read and translate:—*

Rōmulus imāginem urbis magis quam urbem fēcerat; incolae deerant. Erat in proximō lūcus; hunc asȳlum fēcit. Et statim eō mīra vīs latrōnum pāstōrumque cōnfūgit. Cum vērō uxōrēs ipse populusque nōn habērent, lēgātōs circā vicīnās gentēs mīsīt, quī societātem cōnūbiūmque novō populō peterent. Nūquam benīgnē audīta lēgātiō est; lūdibrium etiam additum: “Cūr nōn fēminīs quoque asȳlum aperuistis? Id enim compār foret cōnūbium.” Rōmulus, aegritūdinem animī dissimulāns, lūdōs parat; indicī deinde finitimīs spectāculum iubet. Multī convēnere studiō etiam videndae novae urbis, māximē Sabīnī cum liberīs et cōniugibus. Ubi spectāculī tempus vēnit eōque conversae mentēs cum oculīs erant, tum, sīgnō datō, iuvenēs Rōmānī discurrunt, virginēs rapiunt. Haec fuit statim causa bellī. Sabīnī enim ob virginēs raptās bellum adversus Rōmānōs sūmpsērunt, et cum Rōmae appropinquārent, Tarpēiam virginem nactī sunt, quae aquam forte extrā moenia petītum ierat. Hūius pater Rōmānae praeerat arcī.

NOTES

179. Tell where each of the following verbs is found, and give the principal parts:—

<i>1st Conj.</i>	<i>3d Conj.</i>	<i>3d Conj.</i>	<i>Irregular Verbs</i>
dissimulāns	conversae erant	peterent	deerant
parat	discurrunt	additum	erat
appropinquārent	rapiunt	indīcī	fuit
datō	sūmpserunt		ierat
	nactī sunt	<i>4th Conj.</i>	praecerat
<i>2d Conj.</i>	petītum	audīta est	
habērent	fēcerat	aperuistis	
iubeō	cōnfūgit	convēnēre	
videndae	mīsit	vēnit	

For what word is **foret** used?

How is the Pres. Pass. Inf. formed?

Inflect the Pres. Act. and Pass. of **rapiō**; the Impf.; the Future.

Give the meanings of **cum**.

What case or cases are used with the following prepositions?—

in	ā or ab	ob
ad	circā	adversus
inter	cum	extrā

Write the Gen. sing. of **is**, **hic**, **ipse**, **idem**, **quī**, **quis**, **ūnus**, **alius**, **sōlus**. Write the Dat. sing. of the same words.

Write the Gen. plu. of **urbs**, **vis**, **gentēs**, **mentēs**, **arcti**.

Give the classes of **i** nouns. What ones are declined like consonant nouns in the sing.? In what case is the **i** of the stem always found?

Give the synopsis of **eō** in the Ind. Act.

The Pres. Inf. Act. being given, how may the Impf. Subj. be formed?

Give the synopsis of the Indic. of **dēsum** and **praesum**.

Write the former and latter Supines of **parō**, **habeō**, **mīsit**, **audiō**.

EXERCISE

180. When Romulus founded¹ a city on the Tiber, inhabitants were wanting. So he made a grove, which was near by, an asylum. Many robbers and shepherds came thither. Then they had inhabitants, but wives were wanting. The envoys, whom he sent round about the neighboring tribes, were nowhere heard kindly. So Romulus prepared games, and ordered them to be proclaimed to the neighbors. Many Sabines came to the new city with (their) wives and children. At a given signal the Roman youth seized the maidens.



LESSON L

181. Titus Tatius, Sabīnōrum dux, Tarpēiae optiōnem mūneris dedit, sī exercitum suum in Capitōlium perdūxisset. Illa petiit, quod Sabīnī in sinistrīs manibus gererent, vidēlicet et aureōs ānulōs et armillās.

Titus Tatius, a proper name.
optiō, -ōnis, f., a choice.
mūnus, mūneris, n., a present, gift.
sī, conj., if.
exercitus, -ūs, m., an army.
suus, -a, -um, his, hers, its, theirs.
 Here it means *his*.
Capitōlium, -ī, n., the Capitol.

perdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead, conduct.
illa, she.
sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., left.
manus, -ūs, f., a hand.
vidēlicet, adv., to wit, namely.
ānulus, -ī, m., a ring.
armilla, -ae, f., a bracelet.
aureus, -a, -um, adj., golden.

¹ Impf. Subj.

NOTES

182. *Tarpēiae* is the indirect object of *dedit*; *optiōnem*, the direct object.

dedit: give the principal parts and the synopsis.

exercitum: decline like *vāgītus* (107 (a)).

suum is a poss. pron., from *suus*, -a, -um, declined like *bonus*.

Suus and the reflexive *suī* generally refer to the subject of the clause in which they stand; sometimes, when in a subordinate clause, they refer to the subject of the principal clause. Here *suum* refers to *Titus Tatius*, the subject of the principal clause. *exercitum suum* may mean *his army* or *her army* or *their army*, according as the subject referred to is masculine or feminine, singular or plural. Thus,—

Rex exercitum suum perdūxit, the king conducted HIS army.

Regina exercitum suum perdūxit, the queen conducted HER army.

Ducēs exercitum suum perdūxērunt, the leaders conducted THEIR army.

Capitōlium, the temple of Jupiter on the Capitoline Hill.

perdūxisset, Plupf. Subj. Its subject is a pronoun referring to *Tarpeia*. *If she would lead*, etc. Cf. *perdūxērunt*, Lesson XXXV.

Ille is a demons. pron., from *ille*. It is thus declined:—

(a) SINGULAR

PLURAL

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N. V.	ille	illa	illud	illi	illae	illa
Gen.	illius	illius	illius	illorum	illarum	illorum
Dat.	illi	illi	illi	illis	illis	illis
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	illos	illas	illa
Abl.	illo	illa	illo	illis	illis	illis

As *hic* refers to that which is nearer the speaker, and hence is called the demonstrative of the first person, so *ille* refers to that which is more remote from the speaker, and hence is called the demonstrative of the third person.

petiit, a shortened form for **petiuit**. Inflect **petiit**. **Id** may be supplied as the object of **petiit** and the antecedent of **quod**.

sinistris is an adjective of the First and Second Declensions. It is declined in the masculine like **ager** (44), in the feminine like a noun of the First Declension, and in the neuter like **bellum** (38).

(b)

	SINGULAR		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. V.	sinister	sinistra	sinistrum
Gen.	sinistrī	sinistrae	sinistrī
Dat.	sinistrō	sinistrae	sinistrō
Acc.	sinistrum	sinistram	sinistrum
Abl.	sinistrō	sinistrā	sinistrō
PLURAL			
N. V.	sinistrī	sinistrae	sinistra
Gen.	sinistrōrum	sinistrarum	sinistrōrum
Dat.	sinistris	sinistris	sinistris
Acc.	sinistrōs	sinistrās	sinistra
Abl.	sinistris	sinistris	sinistris

Most adjectives in **-er** of the First and Second Declensions are declined like **sinister**. A few retain the **e** throughout, like **puer** (44); as, **miser**, **misera**, **miserum**, *wretched*.

manibus, Abl. plu., from **manus**. Decline like **vāgītus** (107 (a)).

et . . . et, *both . . . and*.

183. Translate at sight:—

1. Titus Tatiū exercitum suum in Capitōlium perduxit. 2. Optiō mūneris Tarpēiae ā Sabīnōrum duce est data. 3. Rōmānī exercitum suum in urbem perduxērunt. 4. Tarpēia ānulōs, quōs Sabīnī in sinistris manibus gererent, petiit. 5. Dux Sabīnōrum ānulōs in sinistrā manū gerēbat. 6. Armillās, quās in sinistris manibus gerēbant, Tarpēiae dedērunt. 7. Dux ānulōs Tarpēiae darī iussit.

1. Titus Tatius commanded the army of the Sabines. 2. He gave the choice of a present to the maiden who was going outside of the city to seek water. 3. He will lead his army into the Capitolium. 4. Titus Tatius began to conduct his army to the city. 5. They gave many gifts to the maiden who had gone to seek water. 6. The father of the maiden Tarpeia, whom the Sabines fell-in-with when they approached the city, was-in-charge-of the Roman citadel.

LESSON LI



DEATH OF TARPEIA

184. Quibus dolōsē prōmissīs, Tarpēia Sabīnōs in arcem perdūxit, ubi Tatius scūtis eam obruī iussit; nam et ea in laevis habuerant. Sic impia prōditiō celerī poenā vindicāta est. Deinde Rōmulus ad certāmen prōcēssit, et in eō locō, ubi nunc Forum Rōmānum est, pūgnam cōnseruit.

dolōsē, adv., *craftily, deceitfully*.

prōmittō, -ere, -mīsi, -missum, to promise.

scūtum, -i, n., a shield.

obruō, -ere, -ruī, -rutum, to overwhelm, bury.

laeva, -ae, f., the left hand.

impius, -a, -um, adj., wicked, impious.

prōditiō, -ōnis, f., betrayal, treachery.

celerī, *swift, speedy*.

poena, -ae, f., *punishment*.

vindicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to avenge, punish.

certāmen, -inis, n., a contest, a combat.

prōcēdō, -ere, -cēssi, —, to advance, go forth.

nunc, adv., now.

cōnserō, -ere, -ui, -tum, to join.

With **pūgnam**, to join battle.

NOTES

185. Quibus promissis, Ablative Absolute. For the force of a rel. pron. beginning a sentence, cf. **quod**, 156.

scitis: Rule XIX.

et is here emphatic, — *also*; **et ea** = *these also*.

celer is an adj. of the Third Declension, of three terminations.

(a) Adjectives of the Third Declension may be divided into three classes, —

1. Adjectives of three endings.
2. Adjectives of two endings.
3. Adjectives of one ending.

Those of the 1st class have a different form for each gender in the Nom. sing. Those of the 2d class have one form for the masculine and feminine, and one for the neuter. Those of the 3d class have but one form for all three genders.

Ācer, *keen, eager*, will illustrate the more common form of adjectives of the 1st class, i.e. those having three endings.

Ācer (st. **ācrī-**), *keen, eager*.

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. V.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Gen.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrum	ācrum	ācrum
Dat.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Acc.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrēs (-is)	ācrēs (-is)	ācria
Abl.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

celer is the only adjective of this class that keeps the **e** of the Nom. through all the forms; thus, —

N. V.	celer	celeris	celere
Gen.	celeris	celeris	celeris
	etc.	etc.	etc.

Prior (153 (a)) is an illustration of a class of adjectives of *two* endings; and **infāns** (110 (a)), of a class of adjectives of *one* ending.

186. *Translate at sight:—*

1. Haec dolosē prōmissa sunt. 2. Tarpēia Sabīnōs in arcem dēcrēvit perdūcere. 3. Tātius Sabīnōs in arcem perdūcī iūssit. 4. Tarpēia scūtīs, quae militēs in sinistrīs manibus gessērunt, obruta est. 5. Mūnera Tarpēiae prōmisērunt sī eōs in Capitōlium perdūxisset. 6. Et scūta in laevis habuērunt. 7. Forum Rōmānum est in locō ubi Rōmulus pūgnam cōseruit.

1. Having promised these things deceitfully, they overwhelmed Tarpeia with their shields. 2. He ordered this impious treachery to be avenged with a speedy punishment. 3. At a given signal, they overwhelmed her with their shields. 4. Romulus joined battle where the Roman Forum now is. 5. The Sabines did not give Tarpeia the rings and bracelets which she asked for.



LESSON LII

187. Prīmō impetū vir inter Rōmānōs Insignis, nōmine Hostīlius, fortissimē dīmicāns cecidit; cuius interitū cōsternāti Rōmānī fugere coepērunt. Iam Sabīnī clāmitābant: “Vicimus perfidōs hospitēs, imbellēs hostēs. Nunc sciunt, longē aliud esse virginēs rapere, aliud pūgnāre cum virīs.”

prīmus, -a, -um, adj., *first*.

impetus, -ūs, m., *attack, onset*.

Insignis, -e, adj., *distinguished, prominent*.

fortissimē, adv., *very bravely*.

dīmicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to *fight, contend*.

cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsum, to *fall*.

interitus , -ūs, m., <i>overthrow, downfall, death.</i>	perfidus , -a, -um, adj., <i>faithless, treacherous.</i>
cōnsternō , -āre, -āvī, -ātum, <i>to confound, dismay, terrify.</i>	hospes , -itis, m., <i>entertainer, host.</i>
fugīō , -ere, fugī, —, <i>to flee, take to flight.</i>	imbellis , -e, adj., <i>unwarlike.</i>
iam , adv., <i>now, already.</i>	sciō , -īre, -īvī, -ītum, <i>to know.</i>
clāmitō , -āre, -āvī, -ātum, <i>to cry aloud, bawl.</i>	longē , adv., <i>by far, greatly.</i>
vincō , -ere, vici, victum, <i>to conquer, subdue.</i>	esse , <i>to be.</i> Pres. Inf. of sum .
	pūgnō , -āre, -āvī, -ātum, <i>to fight.</i>

NOTES

188. **Primus** is the superlative of the comparative **prior** (153 (a)). It has no positive.

Insignis is an adj. of the Third Declension, belonging to the class having two endings (185 (a)). It is thus declined:—

(a)

Insignis (st. **Insigni**-).

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. V.	insignis	insigne	insignēs	insignia
Gen.	insignis	insignis	insignium	insignium
Dat.	insigni	insigni	insignibus	insignibus
Acc.	insignem	insigne	insignīs (-ēs)	insignia
Abl.	insigni	insigni	insignibus	insignibus

Notice that the Abl. sing. ends in **-ī**, the Gen. plu. in **-ium**, and the neut. plu. Nom. and Acc. in **-ia**.

In the same way decline **imbellis**; also **servilis**.

nōmine: Rule XXIV.

cūius interitū, at his downfall. Rule XIX.

clāmitō is a *frequentative* or *intensive* verb, derived from **clāmō**, to cry, to shout. These verbs end in **-tō** or **-itō**, and denote *repeated* or *intensive* action. They are usually formed from the supine stem, with some vowel changes, as of **ā** to **i**; as, **clāmō**, to cry, shout,

clāmitō, to cry aloud; **volō**, to fly, **volitō**, to flit. All verbs of this class are of the First Conjugation.

hostēs, in apposition with **hospitēs**.

longē aliud esse . . . aliud pūgnāre, that it is one thing . . . a far different thing, etc. Notice that the Latin places **longē** in the first clause, while in English the emphatic adverb *far* is placed in the second clause.

esse is an infinitive depending upon **sciunt**, with **rapere** for a subject.

pūgnāre is the subject of **esse** to be supplied.

Decline **impetū** and **interitū**.

Give the synopsis of **fugere** and **rapere** in the Ind. Act.

Give the Imperfect Subjunctive of **fugere**, **rapere**, **esse**, **pūgnāre** (141 (a)).

Decline **cōiūs**, **aliud**, and **virīs**.

THE INFINITIVE

The Infinitive may be used as an appositive, or as the subject, object, or complement of a verb.

Rule. — *After verbs of THINKING, SAYING, KNOWING, BELIEVING, PERCEIVING, and the like, the Infinitive is used with a Subject Accusative; as,—*

Dixit sē audire, he said that he heard.

Putat hostēs esse pūgnātūrōs, he thinks that the enemy will fight.

Audīvit Caesarem in Galliam vēnisse, he heard that Cæsar had come into Gaul.

In Latin, just as in English, the Infinitive is used, without any subject, after many verbs to complete their meaning; as,—

Rōmānī fugere coepērunt, the Romans began to flee.

Auspicia dēscrēvērunt adhibēre, they determined to consult the auspices.

The tenses of the Infinitive represent the time as *present*, *past*, or *future*, relatively to the time of the principal verb.

189. Translate at sight:—

1. Multi Rōmānī fortissimē dīmicantēs cecidērunt. 2. Vir inter Sabīnōs insīgnis, nōmine Tatius, Tarpēiam scūtīs obruī iūssit. 3. Prīmō impetū imbellēs hostēs fugere coepērunt. 4. Nunc sciunt Rōmānōs fortissimē pūgnāre. 5. Longē aliud est ad certāmen prōcēdere, aliud hostēs vincere. 6. Hostīlī interitū, in arcem fugērunt. 7. Fortissimē Sabīnī cum Rōmānīs pūgnābant.

1. Romulus joined battle with the Sabines. 2. Having armed the men, he cried out, "We will conquer the faithless Sabines." 3. At the first onset, a man renowned among the Romans defended himself by force. 4. Hostilius, who fell at the first onset, was a man renowned among the Romans. 5. The Romans, terrified at the downfall of their leader, began to flee into the place where the Roman Forum now is.



LESSON LIII

190. Tunc Rōmulus arma ad caelum tollēns, Iovī aedem vōvit et exercitus seu forte seu dīvinitus restitit. Itaque proelium redintegrātur; sed raptae mulierēs crīnibus passīs ausae sunt sē inter tēla volantia inferre et hinc patrēs, hinc virōs ōrantēs pācem conciliārunt.

arma, -ōrum, n., *arms, weapons.*

Sing. wanting.

caelum, -ī, n., *heaven.* Plu. wanting.

tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum,
to lift, raise.

Iuppiter, Iovis, m., *Jupiter, Jove.*

aedis or aedēs, -is, f., *a temple.*

voveō, -ēre, vōvī, vōtum,
to vow, promise solemnly.

seu . . . seu, *whether . . . or*.
divinitus, adv., *by divine influence, providentially*.
resistō, -ere, restitī, —, to
stand back, halt, stop.
proelium, -ī, n., battle.
redintegrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,
to restore, renew.
mulier, -eris, f., a woman.
crīnis, -is, m., the hair.
passus, -a, -um, adj., outspread,
disheveled.
audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, to ven-
ture, dare.
tēlum, -ī, n., a missile, javelin,
dart.
volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to fly.

inferō, Inferre, intulī, inlā-
tum, to bring in or against.
Sē inferre = to betake them-
selves, present themselves. Sē
means himself, herself, itself,
or themselves, according to
the number and person of
the subject.
hinc, adv., from this place, hence.
hinc . . . hinc, on this side . . .
on that side; on one side . . . on
the other.
orō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to plead,
entreat.
pāx, pācis, f., peace.
conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to
procure, bring about.

NOTES

191. (a) **Iuppiter** is declined as follows:—

N. V.	Iúppiter
Gen.	Ióvis
Dat.	Ióvī
Acc.	Ióvem
Abl.	Ióve

aedem is declined like **hostis** (161). In the sing., *temple*; in the plu., *house, palace*.

exercitus, subject of **restitit**. Decline in full.

raptæ: translate by a relative clause, — *the women who had been carried off*.

crīnibus passis, Ablative Absolute. **crīnis** is masc. by exception to 67. 2. Used mostly in the plural.

ausae sunt: cf. **solitus esset** (136). Such verbs as these that have the parts from the pres. stem regular, and have no perf.

stem, but appear as deponent verbs in the parts usually formed from the perfect stem, are called *semi-deponent* verbs.

Inferre is compounded of the prep. **in** and the irregular verb **ferō**, to bear. The principal parts of **ferō** are, —

Active. **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum.**

Passive. **feror, ferri, lātus sum.**

It is inflected in the Present as follows : —

(b) ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. fēr-ō	fēr-imus	1. fēr-or	fēr-imur
2. fer-s	fēr-tis	2. fēr-ris	fer-īmini
3. fer-t	fēr-unt	3. fēr-tur	fer-ūntur

It will be observed that the endings beginning with **t**, **s**, and **r** are added directly to the root **fer-**. **fers** is for **feris**; **fert** and **fertis** are for **ferit** and **feritis**; **ferris** and **fertur** are for **fereris** and **feritur**. The Inf. **ferre** is for **ferere**, and **ferri** for **feri**. The other parts of the Indicative are regular.

Impf. **ferēbam, -bās, -bat**, etc. **ferēbar, -bāris, -bātur**, etc.

Fut. **feram, -ēs, -et**, etc. **ferar, -ēris, -ētur**, etc.

Perf. **tulī, -isti, -it**, etc. **lātus, -a, -um, sum, es, est**, etc.

Plupf. **tuleram, -erās, -erat**, etc. **lātus, -a, -um, eram, erās, erat**, etc.

Fut. Perf. **tulerō, -eris, -erit**, etc. **lātus, -a, -um, erō, eris, erit**, etc.

The Impf. Subj. is **ferrem, ferrēs, ferret**, etc.

ōrantēs agrees with **mulierēs**, and has for its objects **patrēs** and **virōs**. **virōs** here means *husbands*.

pāx, like many other monosyllabic nouns of the Third Declension, has no Gen. plural.

conciliārunť, for **conciliāvērunt**. Cf. **ierat** (175). Perfects in **-āvī**, **-ēvī**, and **-ivī**, and the tenses derived from them, often omit **v**, and contract the two vowels into **ā**, **ē**, and **ī** respectively.

Give all the participles of **tollēns**. Synopsis of **vōvit**.

Synopsis of **restitit** in the Act. voice.

Decline **mulierēs**, **crīnibus**, and **virōs** in full.

192. *Translate at sight:—*

1. Tunc Rōmulus, proeliō redintegrātō, arma ad caelum sustulit. 2. Rōmulus Iovī aedem vovēre dēcrēvit. 3. Rōmānī proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. 4. Virginēs sē inter tēla volantia inferēbant. 5. Exercitus, quī seu forte seu dīvinitus restiterat, proelium redintegrābat. 6. Sē inter tēla volantia inferentēs, hinc patrēs, hinc virōs ōrāvērunt. 7. Mulierēs crīnibus passīs ausae sunt patrēs ōrāre. 8. Mulierēs, quae ā iuvenibus raptae erant, pācem conciliārunt.

1. When the Sabines were conquering¹ the Romans, Romulus vowed a temple to Jove. 2. The women, with dishevelled hair, betook themselves among the enemy. 3. The women who had been carried off entreated their fathers and husbands. 4. The women, whom the Roman youths had carried off, brought about peace. 5. When Romulus raised¹ his arms towards heaven, the army providentially halted.



LESSON LIV

Review

193. Read in review the Latin given in Lessons L.-LIII.

NOTES

To whom do **suus** and **sui** usually refer?—Difference between **hic** and **ille**?—Give the Dat. and Acc. sing. and plu. of **sinister**

¹ Cf. **cum . . . comparāret** (140) and **cum . . . appropinquārent** (175).

and **ille**.—Give the classes of adjectives in the 3d Decl.—Write the Gen. and Acc. sing. and plu. of **insignis**, **acer**, **celer**.—Decline **crinibus** in the sing.—Give the synopsis of **ferō** in the Ind. Act. and Pass. Inflect the Pres. Tense, Ind. Mode, and the Impf. Tense, Subj. Mode.

Principal parts of **dedit**, **gererent**, **obruī**, **prōcēssit**, **cōnseruit**, **occidit**, **fugere**, **vīcimus**, **rapere**, **tollēns**, **vōvit**, **restitit**, **ausae sunt**.—Give the Gen. and Voc. sing. of **Hostilius**.—Decline together **impia prōditiō**; **celerī poenā**.—What kind of a verb is **clāmitō**? In what conjugation are such verbs?—What kind of a verb is **ausae sunt**? What are the peculiarities of these verbs?—Write in Latin, in two ways, “*on the left hands*.”—Give two Latin words for *to fight*; two words for *temple*; two words for *army*.



LESSON LV

194. Rōmulus foedere cum Tatiō Ictō et Sabinōs in urbem recēpit et rēgnum cum Tatiō sociāvit. Vērūm nōn ita multō post occīsō Tatiō ad Rōmulum potentātus omnis reccidit. Centum deinde ex seniōribus ēlēgit, quōrum cōnsiliō omnia ageret, quōs senātōrēs nōmināvit propter senectūtem.

foedus, -eris, n., a league, treaty.

icō, -ere, **icī**, **ictum**, to strike.

With **foedus**, to enter into a league or treaty.

recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, to receive.

sociō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to hold in common, to share.

vērūm, adv., but.

post, adv., after, afterwards.

occidō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum, to kill, slay.

potentātus, -ūs, m., power, dominion.

omnis, adj., every, all.

recidō, -ere, -reccidī, -recāsum, to fall back, to return.

centum, numeral adj., one hundred.

ē or **ex**, prep., from, out of.

senior, -ōris, adj., *older, elder*.

ēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, to
choose, to elect, to select.

cōnsilium, -ī, n., *counsel, advice*.

agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum, to do, perform, conduct.

senātor, -ōris, m., *a senator*.

nōminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to
name.

propter, prep., *on account of*.
With the Acc. only.

senectūs, -ūtis, f., *age, old age*.

NOTES

195. What is the construction of **foedere lotō**?—**nōn ita multō post** = *not by so much afterwards, not very long afterwards*. Compare **aliquot ante annis**, *before by several years*, and **ūnō diē longior**, *longer by one day*. These expressions illustrate the following

Rule.—*The DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE is expressed by the Ablative.*

potentātus: decline like **vāgītus** (**107 (a)**).—**omnis**, an adj. of the 3d Decl., with two terminations. Decline like **insignis** (**188 (a)**),—

Nom.	omnis	ómne
Gen.	omnis	ómnis
	etc.	etc.

Centum is indeclinable, as are all numerals from *four* to *one hundred* inclusive. It is here used as a noun, the object of **ēlēgit**.—**seniōribus**, an adj. in the comparative degree, used as a noun, *the elders*.—The clause, **quōrum . . . ageret**, expresses purpose; *in order that he might do everything with their advice*. **quōrum** = *ut eōrum*.

(a) Examine the following clauses:—

Ut eum subole privāret. Lesson XX.

Haud procul erat quā nepōtem agnōsceret. Lesson XXXVI.

Timēbam nē hostis venīret, *I feared lest the enemy would come.*

Nōn recūsābam quōminus dīceret, *I did not object to his saying.*

Castella commūnivit, quō facilius eōs prohibēre posset, he
fortified the strongholds in order that he might the more easily
be able to prevent them.

Observe that the subjunctives in these sentences are in clauses denoting purpose or result. Hence the following

Rule. — *Clauses denoting PURPOSE or RESULT take the Subjunctive after ut, nō, quō, quīn, quōminus, or a Relative.*¹

quōs and senātōrēs are Accusatives, after nōmināvit. Cf. Rule XVII. — Give the Participles, both voices, of ictō and occisō. — Give the synopsis, in the Ind. Act. and Pass. Voices, of recēpit, sociāvit, ēlēgit, ageret, nōmināvit. — Decline foedere and senectūtem.

196. *Translate at sight:—*

1. Rōmulus Sabīnōs in urbem recēpit ut rēgnum cum Tatiō sociāret. 2. Nōn ita multō post omnēs Sabīnī in urbem receptī sunt. 3. Titus Tatius, rēx Sabīnōrum, ā Rōmānīs occisus est. 4. Cum Sabīnī rēgnum cum Rōmānīs sociārent, ad Rōmulum potentātus omnis reccidit. 5. Virōs, quōs ex seniōribus ēlēgit, senātōrēs nōmināvit. 6. Rōmulus virōs ēlēgit quī foedus cum Sabīnīs icerent. 7. Centum, quōs Rōmulus ēlēgerat, senātōrēs nōmināti sunt propter senectūtem.

1. Why did Romulus choose a hundred from the elders?
 2. He did everything with the advice of the men whom he had chosen from the elders. 3. After the league with the

¹ Clauses of Purpose and Result readily pass into substantive clauses, and may be used as subject or object of the sentences in which they are found, or may serve as appositives. These uses may best be learned by a study of them in the sentences as they occur in reading.

Sabines was entered into,¹ all the power returned to Romulus. 4. He chose a hundred senators, who were-to-do² everything with his (*suus*) advice. 5. Then he named those whom he had chosen senators. 6. The Sabines, having been received into the city, entered into a league with the Romans.



LESSON LVI

197. *Trēs equitum centuriās cōstituit, populum in trīgintā cūriās distribuit. His ita ōdinātis, cum ad exercitum lūstrandum cōntiōnem in campō ad Caprae palūdem habēret, subitō coorta est tempestās cum māgnō fragōre tonitribusque et Rōmulus ē cōnspectū ablātus est.*

trēs, tria, numeral adj., *three.*

centuria, -ae, f., *a division of a hundred, a century.*

cōstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *to form, establish, build.*

trīgintā, numeral adj., *thirty.*

cūria, -ae, f., *a curia.*

distribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *to distribute, apportion, divide.*

ōrdinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to set in order, arrange.*

lūstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to review.*

cōntiō, -ōnis, f., *a meeting, assembly.*

campus, -ī, m., *a plain, field.*

capra, -ae, f., *a she-goat. Caprae palūs*, the Goat's Pool.

palūs, -ūdis, f., *a swamp, marsh, pool.*

subitō, adv., *suddenly.*

coorior, -īrī, -ortus sum, *to come forth, arise, break forth.*

tempestās, -ātis, f., *a storm, tempest.*

fragor, -ōris, m., *a crashing, din, noise.*

tonitrus, -ūs, m., *thunder.* Sometimes neut. in the plu.

cōnspectus, -ūs, m., *sight, view.*

auferō, -erre, **abstulī**, **ablātum**, *to take away, carry off.*

¹ Ablative Absolute.

² Subjunctive.

NOTES

198. The following are the first twelve cardinal numbers:—

ūnus , -a, -um, <i>one.</i>	septem , <i>seven.</i>
duo , duae , duo , <i>two.</i>	octō , <i>eight.</i>
trēs , tria , <i>three.</i>	novem , <i>nine.</i>
quattuor , <i>four.</i>	decem , <i>ten.</i>
quinque , <i>five.</i>	ūndecim , <i>eleven.</i>
sex , <i>six.</i>	duodecim , <i>twelve.</i>

(a) The first three are declined. For the declension of **ūnus**, cf. 156 (a).—**duo** and **trēs** are thus declined:—

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. V.	dūo	dūae	dūo	trēs	trīa
Gen.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trīum	trīum
Dat.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
Acc.	dūōs (duo)	dūās	dūo	trēs (-īs)	trīa
Abl.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

Observe that **trēs** is declined like the plu. of **Insīgnis** (188 (a)).

centuriās: a century was a division of the Roman people, consisting originally of one hundred men selected from the wealthier class. They served in the army on horseback, and hence were called **equitēs**.—**cūriās**: each of the three tribes of the Roman people—Ramnes, Tities, and Luceres—was divided into ten **cūriae**, or divisions, making thirty in all.—**cōstituit** and **distribuit** are Perfects, although the forms would be the same were they Presents.—**ad exercitum lūstrandum**, for the purpose of reviewing the army. Cf. 172, n. on **videndae**. **lūstrandum** is a Gerundive, agreeing with **exercitum**.

campō, i.e. the *Campus Martius*, or field of Mars, a plain between the hills upon which Rome was built and the Tiber.—**coorta** = **con** or **cum** + **orior**. Cf. **ortā**, Lesson XXXIX. A deponent verb.—**ablātus est**: Perf. Pass. from **auferō** = **ab** + **ferō**. **Ab** becomes **au** before **f**, **abs** before **t**, and retains the form **ab** before **l**.—Decline **exercitum**, **palūdem**, **fragōre**, **tonitribus**, and **cōnspectū**.

199. *Translate at sight:—*

1. Trēs equitum centuriae ā Rōmulō cōstitūtae sunt.
 2. Cūr nōn in quattuor cūriās Rōmulus populum distri-
 buit? 3. Haec ita ōrdināta sunt et deinde cōtīōnem in
 campō ad Caprae palūdem habuit. 4. Quīnque Sabīnī ā
 septem Rōmānīs victī sunt. 5. Māgnus fragor tonitrusque
 sunt auditī. 6. Unus Rōmānus mīles cum tribus Sabīnīs
 pūgnābat. 7. Subitō omnēs ex cōnspectū sunt ablātī.
 8. Novem senātōrēs cūm liberīs occīsī sunt. 9. Populus
 fragōrem tonitrumque audīvit.

1. Romulus held an assembly in the plain to review the
 horsemen. 2. A great storm having arisen, suddenly Romu-
 lus was taken away out of sight. 3. He reviewed the army
 near the Goat's Pool. 4. He determined to establish eight
 centuries of horsemen. 5. We shall divide the people into
 eleven curiae. 6. Four Sabines will not fight with eight
 Romans. 7. The soldiers, whom he was reviewing in the
 plain, suddenly began to flee. 8. Why did he not divide
 the horsemen into two centuries? 9. The Goat's Pool was
 in the field of Mars.

200.

statim, on the spot, immediately, without first doing something else.

repente, suddenly, contrary to expectation.

subitō, suddenly, but having no element of surprise, as **repente** has.

contentiō, a contest or struggle, involving exertion.

certāmen, a contest, with special reference to the rivalry between the
 parties engaged in it.

pūgna (allied to **pūgnus**, a fist), a fight, whether with fists, or between
 two armies considered as two great bodies.

proelium, a battle, an engagement in a military sense.

LESSON LVII

201. Ad deōs trānsisse vulgō crēditus est; cui rei fidem fecit Iūlius Proculus, vir nōbilis. Ortā enim inter patrēs et plēbem sēditione, in cōtiōnem prōcēssit iūreiūrاندō adfirmāns vīsum ā sē Rōmulum augustiōre fōrmā.

deus, **dei**, m., a god.

trānseō (**trāns**, across, over, and
eō, to go), to pass over, cross
over.

vulgō, adv., commonly, generally.

crēdō, -ere, -crēdidī, -itum, to
believe.

fidēs, -ei, f., trust, faith, belief.

nōbilis, -e, adj., high-born, noble,
famous.

plēbēs, -ei, or plēbs, plēbis, f.,
the common people, plebeians.

sēditio, -ōnis, f., dissension,
strife, quarrel.

iūreiūrاندum, iūreiūrاندi, n.,
an oath.

adfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to
assert, declare.

augustior, -ōris, adj., more ma-
jestic, more noble.

fōrma, -ae, f., form, figure.

NOTES

202. trānsisse, for transivisse, is the Perf. Inf. of trānseō. The Perf. Inf. Act. is always formed by adding -isse to the perf. stem of the verb; thus, —

(a) { amāv-,	{ monu-,
{ amāvisse, to have loved.	{ monuisse, to have warned.
{ rēx-,	{ audīv-,
{ rēxisse, to have ruled.	{ audivisse, to have heard.
{ iv- (perf. stem of eō),	{ fu- (perf. stem of sum),
{ ivisse, to have gone.	{ fuisse, to have been.
	{ tul- (perf. stem of ferō),
	{ tulisse, to have borne.

The Plupf. Subj. Act. may be formed from the Perf. Inf. Act., just as the Impf. Subj. is formed from the Pres. Inf. Act. (cf.

141 (a). By adding the personal endings of the Act. Voice to the Perf. Inf. Act., we shall have the Plupf. Subj.; thus, —

(b)	1. amāvīssē	amāvīssēmus
	2. amāvīssēs	amāvīssētis
	3. amāvīssēt	amāvīssent
	monuīsse- rēxīsse- audīvisse-	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \\ \\ \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} -m, -s, -t. \\ -mus, -tis, -nt. \end{array}$

Give the Perf. Inf. and the Plupf. Subj. Act. of **dūcō**, **trānseō**, **faciō**, **pūgnō**, **habeō**, and **veniō**, **eō**, **sum**, and **ferō**.

crēditus est, *he was believed*; the personal construction, instead of the impersonal, which would be more natural in English, *it was believed that he*, etc. — **cui rei fidem fēcit**, *made belief for this thing = caused this to be believed*. **fidēs** has no plural. — **vir**: decline (44). — **nōbilis**: decline like **insignis** (188 (a)). — **plēbem** comes either from **plēbs**, of the 3d Decl., or from **plēbēs**, of the 5th Decl. It has no plural in either declension. — **iūreiūrāndō** is compounded of **iūs**, **iūris**, and **iūrāndum**, **-ī**, the former of the 3d Decl., and the latter of the 2d Decl. Both parts are inflected, and both parts are neuter. **iūraiūranda** is the only form found in the plural. — **vīsum**, sc. **esse**; **vīsum esse** is the Perf. Pass. Inf. of **videō**. **Rōmulum** is here the subject. For the use of the Inf., cf. Rule XXXI.

(c) The Perf. Pass. Inf. of verbs is regularly formed by joining **esse**, the Pres. Inf. of **sum**, to the Perf. Pass. Part.; as, —

amātus esse, *to have been loved*. **rēctus esse**, *to have been ruled*.
monitus esse, *to have been warned*. **audītus esse**, *to have been heard*.

The Participles in these forms must, of course, agree with the subject in gender, number, and case. Cf. Rule IV. Thus **vīsum**, in **vīsum esse**, agrees with the subject **Rōmulum**. We have seen (202 (b)) that the Plupf. Subj. Act. may be formed from the Perf. Inf. Act. by the addition of the personal endings. In a somewhat similar manner, the Plupf. Subj. Pass. may be formed from the Perf. Inf. Pass.: —

amātus, -a, -um	} <i>éssem, éssēs, ésset.</i>	amātī, -ae, -a	} <i>essēmus, essētis, éssent.</i>
mónitus, -a, -um		mónitī, -ae, -a	
rēctus, -a, -um		rēctī, -ae, -a	
audītus, -a, -um		audītī, -ae, -a	

sē: decline (110 (b)). To whom does **sē** refer? — **augustiōre**: decline like **prior** (153 (a)); m. and f., **augustior**, n. **augustius**. — **augustiōre fōrmā**, in more majestic form.

203. Translate at sight: —

1. Rōmulus ad deōs trānsiit. 2. Dī¹ omnia regunt. 3. Sēditō enim inter Sabīnōs et Rōmānōs orta est. 4. Proculus, vir nōbilis, quī Rōmulum vīderat, in cōntiōnem prōcēssit. 5. Iūreiūrandō adfirmāvit ā sē Rōmulum vīsum esse. 6. Rōmānī Rōmulum ad deōs trānsisse crēdidērunt. 7. Cum in cōntiōnem prōcēssisset, adfirmāvit sē vīdisse Rōmulum. 8. Rōmulus vīsus esse ā Proculō, virō nōbilī, crēditus est.

1. A strife arose between the husbands and their wives. 2. Romulus, in more majestic form, was seen by the fathers. 3. Proculus, a noble man, declared that he had seen Romulus. 4. When Romulus had passed to the gods, a strife arose among the common people. 5. They caused this to be believed.² 6. He declared with an oath that Romulus had been taken away out of sight.

¹ Nom. plu.

² Cf. cui rei, etc.



ROMULUS AS QVIRINUS

LESSON LVIII

204. In cōntiōnem prōcēssit iūreiūrāndō adfirmāns vīsum ā sē Rōmulum augustiōre fōrmā, eundemque praecepere ut sēditiōnibus abstinērent et rem mīlitārem colerent; futūrum ut omnium gentium dominī exsisterent. Aedēs in colle Quirīnālī Rōmulō cōstitūta, ipse prō deō cultus et Quirīnus est appellātus.

praecipio, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum,
to enjoin, direct, order.

ut, conj., that.

abstineo, -ēre, -ui -tentum, to
keep from, refrain from.

militāris, -e, adj., military, war-
like.

colo, -ere, -ui, cultum, to cher-
ish, cultivate, worship.

futūrum, sc. esse, to be about to
be, would be, would come to
pass.

exsisto, -ere, -stiti, -stitum, to
stand forth, become.

collis, -is, m., a hill.

Quirīnālis, -e, adj., Quirinal.

prō, prep. with Abl. only, for,
in the place of.

NOTES

205. eundem, Acc. sing. masc., from **idem**. Write out the declension in full (150). It refers to **Rōmulum**, and is the subject of the Inf. **praecipere**. And that the same directed, etc.

Rule. — *The subject of the Infinitive is in the Accusative.*

Write the Pres. and Perf. Inf., Act. and Pass., of **praecipere**. — **sēditiōnibus**: Rule XX. — Give the synopsis of the Ind. Act. and Pass. of **abstinērent**. Write the Plupf. Subj. Act., and the Perf. Inf. Act. — Rule for the mode of **abstinērent** and **colerent**? Rule XXXII. — Decline **rem mīlitārem** = *the art of war*. — Give the Perf. Inf. Act. and the Plupf. Subj. Act. of **colerent**. — **futūrum, sc. esse. futūrum esse** is the Fut. Inf. of **sum**. It is used impersonally, and depends upon **adfirmāns**. *Declaring that it would come to pass that, etc.* Instead of **futūrum esse**, **fore** is often used.

(a) The Fut. Inf. Act. is formed by joining **esse** to the Fut. Act. Part. Cf. 128. For example:—

amātūrus esse, to be about to love (would love).

monitūrus esse, to be about to warn, etc.

rēctūrus esse, to be about to rule, etc.

audītūrus esse, to be about to hear, etc.

The Fut. Inf. Pass. is formed by joining **irī**, the Pres. Inf. Pass. of **eō**, to the Supine in **-um**; thus,—

amātum irī, to be about to be loved (would be loved).

monitum irī, to be about to be warned, etc.

rēctum irī, to be about to be ruled, etc.

audītum irī, to be about to be heard, etc.

dominī, predicate Nom. after **exsisterent**, a neuter verb. Rule III.—The clause **ut . . . exsisterent** is the subject of **futūrum esse**.—**collis** is masc. by exception to 67. 2. It has rarely **i** in the Abl. sing.—Decline together **colle Quirinalī**. Rome was built on seven hills,—the Palatine, the Capitoline, the Aventine, the Coelian, the Esquiline, the Viminal, and the Quirinal. The Quirinal was in the northern part of the city.—**Rōmulō** is Dat., depending upon **cōstitutā**; *was built to Romulus*.—**cōstitutā**, sc. **est**; also sc. **et** before **ipse**.—Decline **ipse** (166 (a)).

prō deō = *as a god*. **deus** is declined as follows:—

(b)	SINGULAR	PLURAL
N. V.	dēus	(dēī) dīī or dī
Gen.	dēī	dēōrum or dēūm
Dat.	dēō	(dēīs) dīīs , dīs
Acc.	dēum	dēōs
Abl.	dēō	(dēīs) dīīs , dīs

Observe that the Voc. of **deus** is the same as the Nom. The forms **dīī**, **dī**, and **dīīs**, **dīs**, are preferable to **dēī** and **dēīs**.

cultus, sc. **est**, and *he himself was worshipped*, etc.—**Quirīnus**, predicate Nom.—Write all the Infinitives, Act. and Pass., of **colō**, **appellō**, and **cōstituō**.

(c) The regular verb has three Infinitives in the Active and three in the Passive Voice, viz. the Present, the Future, and the Perfect. We have now had all of these. The Infinitives of **amō**, **moneō**, **regō**, and **audiō** are as follows:—

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Pres.	amāre	amārī	regere	regī
Perf.	amāvisse	amātus esse	rēxisse	rēctus esse
Fut.	amātūrus esse	amātum iri	rēctūrus esse	rēctum iri
Pres.	monēre	monērī	audire	audīrī
Perf.	monuisse	mónitus esse	audivisse	auditus esse
Fut.	monitūrus esse	mónitum iri	auditūrus esse	auditum iri

Of **sum** the Infinitives are: Pres. **esse**, Perf. **fuisse**, Fut. **futūrum esse**.

206. *Translate at sight:—*

1. *Īdem praecēpit ut Rōmānī sēditionibus abstinērent.*
 2. *Adfirmāvit futūrum ut rem militārem colerent.* 3. *Omnium gentium dominī existent.* 4. *Aedem in colle Quirināli Rōmulō cōstituērunt.* 5. *Adfirmāvit Rōmulum prō deō cultum irī.* 6. *Incolae urbis, quam Rōmulus condiderat, rem militārem colent.* 7. *Plēbēs Rōmāna clāmitābat sē Rōmulum Quirīnum appellātūram esse.*

1. They built a temple to the gods in the city. 2. By the advice of Romulus, the people will keep from strife. 3. He declared with an oath that he would build a temple to Romulus. 4. He said that Romulus had been worshipped as a god.¹ 5. They said that they had built a temple to Romulus.² 6. To have called; to have been called; to be about to refrain from. 7. To be worshipped; to be about to be worshipped.

¹ Literally, *He said Romulus to have been worshipped*, etc.

² *They said themselves to have built*, etc.

LESSON LIX

207. Read in review the Latin given in Lessons LV.—LVIII.

NOTES

Give two Latin words meaning *not*; three meaning *to kill*.—What is the difference in meaning between **pūgna** and **proelium**?—Give the Latin for *not very long after*.—Give the cardinal numbers from one to twelve. What ones are declined? What word means *thirty*? what *one hundred*?—What two ways of expressing purpose can you give?—What was the **Campus Martius**, and where was it situated?—Difference between **statim** and **repente**?

Principal parts of **ablātus est**?—Give all the Participles and Infinitives, Act. and Pass., of **ageret**, **nōmināvit**, **distribuit**, **recēpit**.—Give the Pres. and Perf. Inf. Act., and the Impf. and Plupf. Subj., of **ferō**, **cōstituit**, **habeō**, **faciō**, **prōcēdō**, and **sum**.

What construction follows such words as **nōminō** and **appellō**?

What two words (conjunctions) have we had meaning *for*?

Decline **idem**.

Give the Infinitives, Act. Voice, of **eō** (Lesson XLVIII.), **ferō** (Lesson LIII.).



LESSON LX

Numa Pompilius, the Second King of the Romans

208. Succēssit Rōmulō Numa Pompilius, vir inclitā iūstiā et religiōne. Is Curibus, ex oppidō Sabīnōrum, accītus est. Quī cum Rōmam vēnisset, ut populum ferum religiōne mītigāret, sacra plūrima instituit. Āram Vestae cōsecrāvit, et Ignem in ārā perpetuō alendum virginibus dedit.

succēdō, -ere, -cēssī, -cēssum,
to follow, succeed.

inclitus, -a, -um, adj., celebrated,
renowned.

iūstitia, -ae, f., justice.

religiō, -ōnis, f., religion.

Curēs, -ium, m. and f., Cures,
the chief town of the Sabines.

acciō, -ire, -ivī, -itum, to call,
summon, invite.

ferus, -a, -um, adj., wild, rude,
barbarous.

mītigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to
make mild, soften, tame.

sacrum, -ī, n., a sacred rite.

plūrimus, -a, -um, adj., very
many.

instituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, to
found, establish.

āra, -ae, f., an altar.

cōnsecrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to
consecrate.

ignis, -is, m., fire.

perpetuō, adv., constantly, with-
out interruption.

alō, -ere, -uī, alitum,
to nourish, maintain.

NOTES

209. Rōmulō : Rule X.—**iūstitiā** and **religiōne** are Ablatives of Description or Characteristic, limiting **vir**: a man of renowned justice and piety. Cf. **augustiōre fōrmā**, Lesson LVII.—Examine also the following examples:—

Caesar trāditur fuisse excelsā statūrā, Caesar is said to have been
(a man) of lofty stature.

Ūrī sunt figūrā taurī, the uri are of the form of the bull = have the
form of the bull.

It will be seen that **iūstitiā**, **religiōne**, **fōrmā**, **statūrā**, and **figūrā** are all in the Abl., modifying respectively **vir**, **Rōmulum**, **Caesar**, and **ūrī**, and denoting some quality or characteristic of these nouns. **figūrā** is accompanied by a limiting Gen.; and the other Ablatives have adjectives agreeing with them.

Rule.—A noun with an adjective or a limiting Genitive is in the Ablative after the verb **sum** or another noun, to denote the CHARACTER or QUALITY of a person or thing.

This is called the Ablative of Description or Characteristic.

NOTE.—Instead of the Ablative, the Genitive is sometimes used.

Curibus, the Abl., according to Rule XXX.—**Quī cum** = *when* *he*; the relative at the beginning of a sentence often being equivalent to a personal or demonstrative.—Give the rule for the case of **Rōmam**.—**ut** introduces a purpose clause, hence the Subjunctive **mītigāret**. Rule XXXII.—**Ignem**, masc. by exception to 67. 2. Cf. **collis** (205, n. on **collis**). **Ignis** is declined like **hostis** (161), except that the Abl. sing. has usually **I**.—**alendum** is the Gerundive. *Gave the fire to the virgins to be maintained*, etc. Cf. **ēducandōs** (116). These Gerundives are used to express Purpose.

Rule.—*After verbs of GIVING, SENDING, UNDERTAKING, CONTRACTING, and the like, the Accusative of the Gerundive in agreement with the object is used to express Purpose.*¹

210. Translate at sight:—

1. Numā Pompiliō rēge, vir minimē servīlī indole Rōmam vēnit. 2. Vir inter Sabīnōs īnsīgnis, nōmine Numa, Curibus vēnit. 3. Multī inclitī studiō Rōmā, ex urbe Ītalīae, vērunt. 4. Populus Rōmam Numam Pompilium, virum inclitā religiōne, accēvit. Quī cum Rōmam vēnisset, Rōmulō succēssit. 5. Populus fērus religiōne mītigābātur. 6. Dēcrēvit aedem dīs cōsecrāre ut sacra plūrima institueret. 7. Cum āram Vestae cōsecrāvisset, ignem in ārā perpetuō alendum virginibus dedit.

1. Numa Pompilius came from Cures to Rome. 2. When Romulus had been taken away,² the people summoned a man of renowned justice from Cures. 3. They said³ that he had come to Rome in order that he might succeed Romulus. 4. Now they know that Numa has been summoned from a

¹ This rule must not be understood to exclude or contradict the rule on p. 142.

² Ablative Absolute.

³ Rule XXXI.

town of the Sabines. 5. He came to Rome in order to establish sacred rites. 6. The altar of Vesta having been consecrated, he gave the fire to the virgins to be constantly maintained upon the altar. 7. He said that he¹ had given the fire to the virgins.

Observe the following English derivatives:—

success

succeed

justice

religion

popular

populace

mitigate

institution

consecration

ailment



LESSON LXI



SELLA CURULIS

211. Flāminem Iovis sacerdotem creāvit eumque insignī veste et curūli sellā adōrnāvit. Dicitur quondam ipsum Iovem ē caelō ēlicuisse. Hic ingentibus fulminibus in urbem dēmissis dēscendit in nemus Aventinum, ubi Numam docuit quibus sacris fulmina essent prōcūranda, et praetereā imperi certa pignora populō Rōmānō datūrum sē esse prōmīsit.

flāmen, -inis, m., *a flamen*, — a name given to a priest of one particular deity.

creō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *to create, choose, make.*

insignis, -e, adj., *distinguished.*

vestis, -is, f., *clothing, garment, garb.*

curūlis, -e, adj., *curule.*

sella, -ae, f., *seat, chair.*

adōrnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *to furnish, adorn.*

dīcō, -ere, -xī, dictum, to say.
quondam, adv., once, formerly.
ēliciō, -ere, -uī, —, to draw forth, call down.
ingēns, -entis, adj., great.
fulmen, -inis, n., lightning, thunderbolt.
dēmīttō, -ere, -mīsi, -misum, to send down, let down.
dēscendō, -ere, -ī, -scēnsum, to come down, descend.

nemus, -oris, m., a grove.
Aventīnus, -a, -um, adj., of the Aventine.
doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctum, to teach.
prōcūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to take care of, avert.
praetereā, adv., moreover.
certus, -a, -um, adj., certain, definite.
pīgnus, -oris and **-eris**, n., pledge, guaranty.

NOTES

212. Iovis limits sacerdotem.—**Flāminem** and **sacerdōtem**: Rule XVII.—**īnīgnī veste** = with a distinguishing dress. Decline together. The characteristic garb of the flamen was a pointed cap called the *apex*, a woolen cloak called *laena*, and a laurel wreath.

sella curūlis = the curule chair,—the official chair of consuls, praetors, curule aediles, and some other officers, as well as of the flamen of Jupiter. It was ornamented with ivory, and sometimes overlaid with gold. Its form was very simple, closely resembling a common folding camp-stool with curved legs.—**fulminibus dēmissis**: Ablative Absolute.—**quibus sacris**, by what sacred rites. Abl. of means.

essent prōcūranda, were to be averted. **prōcūranda essent** is in the Pass. Periphrastic Conjugation, which is formed by joining the different parts of the verb **sum** to the Gerundive. It is used to denote necessity or propriety. The Active Periphrastic Conjugation is formed by joining the different parts of the verb **sum** to the Fut. Act. Participle. It is used to denote intention or simple futurity. The parts of **sum** are inflected just as they are in forming the Passive Voice of the verb, with the Perf. Pass. Participle. Cf. 138 (a).

ACTIVE VOICE

(a) *Indicative*

Pres.	amātūrus, -a, -um sum, I am about to love.
Impf.	amātūrus, -a, -um eram, I was about to love.
Fut.	amātūrus, -a, -um erō, I shall be about to love.
Perf.	amātūrus, -a, -um fui, I have been about to love.
Plupf.	amātūrus, -a, -um fueram, I had been about to love.
Fut. Perf.	amātūrus, -a, -um fuerō, I shall have been about to love.

(b) *Subjunctive*

Pres.	amātūrus, -a, -um sim, sis, sit; amātūrī, -ae, -a simus, sitis, sint.
Impf.	amātūrus, -a, -um essem.
Perf.	amātūrus, -a, -um fuerim, fueris, fuerit, etc.
Plupf.	amātūrus, -a, -um fuisset.

Observe, above, the inflection of **sim**, the Pres. Subj. of **sum**. Observe also that **fuerim**, the Perf. Subj. of **sum**, has the same forms as the Fut. Perf. Ind., except in the 1st sing., where it has **fuerim** instead of **fuerō**. Cf. 86.

214. PASSIVE VOICE

(a) *Indicative*

Pres.	amandus, -a, -um sum, I am to be loved.
Impf.	amandus, -a, -um eram, I was to be loved.
Fut.	amandus, -a, -um erō, I shall have to be loved.
Perf.	amandus, -a, -um fui, I have to be loved.
Plupf.	amandus, -a, -um fueram, I had to be loved.

(b) *Subjunctive*

Pres.	amandus, -a, -um sim.
Impf.	amandus, -a, -um essem.
Perf.	amandus, -a, -um fuerim.
Plupf.	amandus, -a, -um fuisset.

The Fut. Perf. Ind. of the Passive Periphrastic (**amandus fuerō**) is seldom used.

populō Rōmānō, indirect object of **datūrum esse**. Rule IX. **populus Rōmānus**, like **rēs pūblica** and some other expressions, became a fixed form, and is never found with the words in the reverse order. Give all the Infinitives of **dō**.

215. Translate at sight:—

1. *Populus Rōmānus Numam Pompilium rēgem creāvit.* 2. *Numa Iovis sacerdotem insigni veste adōrnāvit.* 3. *Iupiter ipse in nemus Aventinum dēscendit.* 4. *Dicitur ipsum Iovem in nemus Aventinum dēscēdisse.* 5. *Dicitur ipsum Iovem in nemus Aventinum dēscēsurum esse.* 6. *Fulmina hīs sacrīs sunt prōcūranda.* 7. *Dicitur eum docuisse Numam hīs sacrīs fulmina esse prōcūranda.* 8. *Prōmisit sē Numam doctūrum esse quibus sacrīs fulmina essent prōcūranda.* 9. *Dicitur ingentia fulmina in urbem esse dēmissa.* 10. *Prōmisit sē Iovis sacerdoti curūlem sellam esse datūrum.*

1. He promised to give¹ certain pledges of power to the Roman people. 2. He said that he would furnish the flamen of Jupiter with a distinguishing garb. 3. Once Jupiter descended into the grove of the Aventine with a loud noise.² 4. The Roman people chose Numa, a man of renowned justice, (as) king. 5. It is said that he promised to teach Numa certain sacred rites. 6. He said, "I will give to you certain pledges of power." 7. He once called down the god himself from heaven. 8. It is said that Numa himself had been taught by what sacred rites thunderbolts were to be averted.

¹ Literally, *he promised himself to be about to give.*

² Compare *cum māgnō fragōre* (197).

nemus is the common name for a grove or woodland.

lūcus, a sacred grove, a wood consecrated to a deity.

flāmen, a priest of some particular deity.

sacerdōs, the general name for a priest.



LESSON LXII

Subjunctive

216. Review the Subjunctive of **sum**. Appendix, 6.

The Subjunctive has four tenses, — Present, Imperfect, Perfect, and Pluperfect. The Imperfect and Pluperfect have already been given. Cf. **141** (a), **202** (b) and (c).

(a) In the *Present Subjunctive* of the 1st Conjugation the final **a** of the verb stem disappears, and the vowel **e** takes its place.

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
1. ámem	amēmus	1. ámer	amēmur
2. ámēs	amētis	2. amēris (-re)	amēmini
3. ámet	áment	3. amētur	améntur

In the *Present Subjunctive* of the 2d, 3d, and 4th Conjugations the vowel **a** is added to the *verb stem*. Hence **a** may be called the sign of the Present Subjunctive in these conjugations.

(b) *Present Subjunctive*

ACTIVE	
mone- reg- audi-	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \\ \\ \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \text{-am, -ās, -at.} \\ \text{-āmus, -ātis, -ant.} \end{array}$

PASSIVE

mone-	} -ar, -āris (-re), -ātur. }	} -āmur, -āmini, -antur.
reg-		
audi-		

Of **eō**: **eam, eās, eat**, etc. Of **ferō**: Act., **feram, ferās, ferat**, etc.; Pass., **ferar, ferāris (-re), ferātur**, etc.

The *Perfect Subjunctive Active* has the same form as the Future Perfect Indicative, except that the 1st pers. sing. ends in **-erim** instead of **-erō** (83 and 86).

The *Perfect Subjunctive Passive* is formed by joining the Present Subjunctive of **sum** to the Perfect Passive Participle of the verb.

(c) *Perfect Subjunctive*

ACTIVE

amāv-	} -erim, -eris, -erit. }	} -erimus, -eritis, -erint.
monu-		
rēx-		
audiv-		

Of **eō**: **iverim, iveris, iverit**, etc. Of **ferō**: **tulerim, tuleris, tulerit**, etc.

(d)

PASSIVE

amātus, -a, -um	} sim, sis, sit.	amātī, -ae, -a	} simus, sitis, sint.
monitus, -a, -um		monitī, -ae, -a	
rēctus, -a, -um		rēctī, -ae, -a	
auditus, -a, -um		audītī, -ae, -a	

Of **ferō**: **lātus, -a, -um sim, sis, sit; lātī, -ae, -a simus, sitis, sint**.

Give the synopsis of the Indicative and Subjunctive, Active and Passive, of **succēssit, instituit, abstinērent, recēpit, iūssit, aperuistī, pūgnāre, ferō**, in the 3d sing. and the 1st plu. Inflect **sum** and **eō** in the Pres. and Perf. Subj. Inflect each of the other verbs given above in the Fut. Perf. Ind. and the Perf. Subj. Act.; in the Fut. Ind. and the Pres. Subj. Pass.

LESSON LXIII

Sequence of Tenses

217. Study the following sentences:—

(a)

Rogat , <i>he asks</i>	}	quid faciant , <i>what they are doing,</i>
Rogābit , <i>he will ask</i>		or
Rogāvit , <i>he has asked</i>		quid fēcerint , <i>what they did or have</i>
Rogāverit , <i>he will have asked</i>		<i>done.</i>

(b)

Rogābat , <i>he was asking</i>	}	quid facerent , <i>what they were doing,</i>
Rogāvit , <i>he asked</i>		or
Rogāverat , <i>he had asked</i>		quid fēcissent , <i>what they had done.</i>

(c)

Ad urbem venit , <i>he comes to the city</i>	}	ut frūmentum emat , <i>in order to buy corn,</i>
Ad urbem veniet , <i>he will come to the city</i>		
Ad urbem vēnit , <i>he has come to the city</i>		
Ad urbem vēnerit , <i>he will have come to the city</i>		

(d)

Ad urbem veniēbat , <i>he was coming to the city</i>	}	ut frūmentum emeret , <i>in order to buy corn, to buy corn.</i>
Ad urbem vēnit , <i>he came to the city</i>		
Ad urbem vēnerat , <i>he had come to the city</i>		

(e) Notice that the Present and Perfect Subjunctive in the dependent clauses follow one group of tenses, and the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive follow another group of tenses. Observe also that the Perfect Indicative is used in two senses,—one with *have*, called the Pure Perfect or the Perfect Definite, and one without *have*, called the Historical Perfect or the Perfect Indefinite.

(*f*) The tenses of the first group in these examples (those in (*a*) and (*c*)) are called *Principal Tenses*, and the tenses of the second group (those in (*b*) and (*d*)) are called *Historical Tenses*.

PRINCIPAL TENSES

Present,
Future,
Perfect Definite,
Future Perfect.

HISTORICAL TENSES

Imperfect,
Perfect Indefinite,
Pluperfect.

Rule. — *A Principal Tense in the main clause of a complex sentence is followed by a Principal Tense in the dependent clause; and a Historical Tense in the main clause is followed by a Historical Tense in the dependent clause.*

The Present and Imperfect Tenses in the dependent clause are used for incomplete action; the Perfect and Pluperfect, for completed action.

It should, however, be noted that the Perfect Definite, though classed with the Principal Tenses, often takes the sequence of the Historical Tenses; i.e. is followed, in the dependent clause, by the Imperfect or Pluperfect.

Construction with Cum

218. Study the following sentences:—

1. *Lībrōs, cum est ōtium, legere solēō, when there is leisure, I am wont to read books.*
2. *Cum vēneris, cōgnōscēs, when you come (shall have come), you will find out.*
3. *Cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā, ad eum rūmōrēs adferēbantur, when Caesar was in hither Gaul, reports were brought to him.*
4. *Cum Hannibal in Āpūlliam pervēnisset, adversus eum profecti sunt duo cōsulēs, when Hannibal had advanced into Apulia, two consuls set out against him.*

5. **Cum ea ita sint, perge, this being the case** (these things being so), *proceed.*
 6. **Cum primī ordinēs hostium concidissent, tamen ācerrimē reliquī resistēbant, although the first ranks of the enemy had fallen, nevertheless the rest resisted most vigorously.**

Notice that, in the above sentences, some of the clauses introduced by **cum** are time clauses, — **cum** meaning *when*; and some are clauses denoting cause or concession, — **cum** meaning *since* or *although*. Notice also that, in some of these clauses, the Indicative is used; and in others, the Subjunctive.

Rule. — **Cum** Causal (*since*) or Concessive (*although*) takes the Subjunctive; **Cum** Temporal (*when*) generally takes the Subjunctive of the Imperfect and Pluperfect Tenses, and the Indicative of the other tenses.

(a) NOTE. — **Cum** may be followed by the Indicative of any tense when it is used to “denote the bare time when a thing occurred, without grammatically implying any sort of connection between the principal event and that which marks the date of its occurrence.” But the Imperfect and Pluperfect Tenses will be found much more frequently in the Subjunctive after **cum** than in the Indicative.

(b) Give the rule for the mode and tense of the verb in the subordinate clause of each of the following sentences:—

1. Ut eum subole privāret, Rheam Silviam, eius filiam, Vestae sacerdotem fecit. 2. Cum lupa saepius ad parvulōs reverteretur, Faustulus eōs tulit in casam. 3. Cum iīs insidiātī essent latrōnēs, Remus captus est. 4. Faustulus indicāvit Rōmulō quis esset eōrum avus. 5. Quod inrīdēs cum Remus saltū trāiēcisset, eum irātus Rōmulus interfecit. 6. Cum verō uxōrēs ipse populusque nōn habē-

rent, lēgātōs circā vicinās gentēs mīsit. 7. Cum Rōmae appropinquārent, Tarpēiam virginem nactī sunt. 8. Ut populum ferum religiōne mītigāret, sacra plūrima instituit. 9. Numam docuit, quibus sacrīs fulmina essent prōcūranda.



LESSON LXIV



SALII

219. Numa laetus rem populō nūntiāvit. Postrīdiē omnēs ad aedēs rēgiās convēnērunt silentēsque exspectābant, quid futūrum esset. Atque sōle ortō dēlābitur ē caelō scissō scūtum, quod ancile appellāvit Numa. Id nē fūrtō auferri posset, Māmurium fabrum undecim scūta eādē fōrmā fabricāre iūssit.

laetus, -a, -um, adj., *joyful, glad.*

nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to announce, report.

postrīdiē, adv., *on the day after, the next day.*

silēns, -entis, adj., *silent, still.*

exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to wait for, wait to see.

atque, conj., *and.*

sōl, sōlis, m., *the sun.*

dēlābor, -ī, -lāpsus sum, dep., to fall, descend, glide down.

auferō, -ferre, abstulī, ablātum, to take away, carry off.

scindō, -ere, scidī, scissum, to

split, rend. The part. **scissus**, -a, -um, is used as an adj., *rent, cleft.*

scūtum, -ī, n., *a shield.*

ancile, -is, n., *an oval shield.*

nē, conj., *lest, that not.*

fūrtum, -ī, n., *theft, stealth, stratum.*

possum, **posse**, **potuī**, to be able, can.

Māmurius, -ī, m., *Mamurius, a proper name.*

faber, -brī, m., *a workman, a maker.*

fabricō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to make, construct.

NOTES

220. *laetus*, an adj. used for an adv., *joyfully*. — *rem*, the matter, the news. It refers to what is said in the preceding sentence. — *aedēs*: 191 (a).

futūrum esset, what would happen. Cf. *amātūrus essem* (213 (b)). What is the rule for the tense? *futūrum esset* is in the Subj., because it is an indirect or dependent question. In the direct form it would be, *Quid futūrum erat?* what was going to happen? When this is made dependent upon *expectābant*, the mode of *futūrum erat* is changed to the Subj. Observe also the Subjunctives in indirect question in the clauses following the different forms of *rogō* (217). In direct questions, *faciant*, *fēcerint*, *facerent*, and *fēcissent* would all have been in the Indicative. Compare *quis esset eōrum avus*, Lesson XXXIV.; *uter nōmen novae urbi daret*, Lesson XXXIX.; *quibus sacris fulmina essent prōcūranda*, Lesson LXI.

Rule. — *The Indirect Question has its verb in the Subjunctive.*

sōle ortō, Ablative Absolute, *at sunrise*. Gen. plu. is wanting to *sōl*. — *ancile*, the name given to the small oval shield said to have fallen from heaven in the reign of Numa, and on the preservation of which the prosperity of Rome was declared to depend. — *quod* and *ancile*: Rule XVII. — *nē* introduces a negative purpose limiting *īussit*: *lest this might be carried off*, etc. Rule XXXII. — *aufferi*: cf. *ablātus est*, Lesson LVI. Notice that the Pres. Inf. Pass. of *ferō* is *ferri*. Give the principal parts, and all of the Infinitives. Inflect the Pres. Tense, Act. and Pass., and give the synopsis of the Ind., both voices.

(a) *posset* is the Impf. Subj. of *possum*, which is compounded of *pot* (for *potis* or *pote*, *able*) and *sum*. The *t* becomes *s* before *s*; the *f* at the beginning of the perf. stem *fu-* is lost; the Pres. Inf. *posse* is for *potesse*, and the Impf. Subj. *possem* is for *potessem*.

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
<i>Present</i>		<i>Present</i>	
1. póssum	póssumus	1. póssim	possimus
2. pótes	potéstis	2. póssis	possitis
3. pótest	póssunt	3. póssit	póssint
<i>Impf.</i>	póteram		pósssem
<i>Fut.</i>	póterō		—
<i>Perf.</i>	pótuī		potúerim
<i>Plupf.</i>	potúeram		potúíssem
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	potúerō		—
<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	pósse	<i>Perf. Inf.</i>	potúísse

For the full inflection of **possum**, see Appendix, 8.
eādem fōrmā, of the same form. Rule XXIII.

221. *Translate at sight:—*

1. Numa dixit sē populō rem esse nūntiātūrum. 2. Numa populō quid futūrum esset nūntiāvit. 3. Numa populō quid futūrum sit nūntiat. 4. Scūtum, quod ē caelō delāpsum est, ancile appellāvērunt. 5. Ancile fūrtō auferre potuērunt. 6. Numa iīs sacrīs ipsum Iovem ē caelō elicere potuit. 7. Māmurius faber undecim scūta eādem fōrmā fabricāre poterat. 8. Dicit scūtum fūrtō auferri posse. 9. Omnēs laetī sōle ortō expectābant quid Numa populō nūntiātūrus esset. 10. Nē Numa ē cōspectū auferretur, omnēs ad aedēs rēgiās convenīre iūssit.

1. The people joyfully¹ assembled at the palace of the king. 2. They wait in silence to see what is going to happen. 3. The next day all assembled who were able to defend themselves. 4. Mamurius was able to make eight shields of the same form. 5. Mamurius makes

¹ Cf. Numa laetus.

these, lest the shield which had fallen from the rent sky may be taken away by stealth. 6. At sunrise a shield will fall from the rent sky. 7. They called this shield *ancile*.

Decline *aedēs rēgiās* and *eādem fōrmā*.



LESSON LXV

222. Duodecim autem Saliōs Mārtis sacerdotēs lēgit, qui ancīlia, sēcrēta illa imperī pignora, custōdīrent et Kalendis Mārtiis per urbem canentēs et rīte saltantēs ferrent. Annum in duodecim mēnsēs ad cursum lūnae dēscripsit; nefāstōs fāstōsque diēs fēcīt; portās Iānō geminō aedificāvit, ut esset index pācis et bellī.

autem, conj., *but, however, more-over.*

Saliī, -ōrum, m., *the Salii*, a college of priests for the service of Mars.

Mārs, -tis, m., *Mars*, the god of war.

legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum, *to choose, select, appoint.*

sēcrētus, -a, -um, adj., *hidden, concealed, secret.*

custōdiō, -īre, -ivī, -itum, *to watch, keep, guard.*

Kalendae, -ārum, f., *the Calends*, the first day of the month.

Mārtius, -a, -um, adj., *of the month of March.*

canō, -ere, cecinī, cantum, *to sing.*

rīte, adv., *with proper ceremonies, solemnly.*

saltō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to dance.*

annus, -ī, m., *a year.*

mēnsis, -is, m., *a month.*

cursum, -ūs, m., *course.*

lūna, -ae, f., *the moon.*

dēscribō, -ere, -scripsī, -scriptum, *to describe, mark off, divide.*

nefāstus, -a, -um, adj., *unhallowed, unlucky.*

fāstus, -a, -um, adj., *hallowed, lucky.*

porta, -ae, f., a gate, door.

Iānus, -ī, m., Janus.

geminus, -a, -um, adj., double, twofold.

aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to build, construct.

index, -dīcis, m. and f., sign, mark, index.

NOTES

223. **autem** means either *but*, *however*, or *moreover*. If the sentence in which it stands is in contrast with what has gone before, or in opposition to it, **autem** then is best translated by *but* or *however*; but if the sentence is a continuation of the preceding thought, or an addition to it of another circumstance, then **autem** is best translated by *moreover*. Here it means *moreover*. It never stands first in the sentence; one, and sometimes two, words must precede it. So also **enim** and **vērō**. Cf. Lessons XLV. and XLVI.

Saliōs: derived from **saliō**, to leap, because they danced in procession through the city every March, carrying the *ancilia* in their left hands, or suspended from their shoulders. For construction of **Saliōs** and **sacerdōtēs**, cf. Rule XVII. — **qui . . . custōdīrent**, a relative clause of purpose, to guard the *ancilia*, or who were to guard, etc. For the mode of **custōdīrent** and **ferrent**, cf. Rule XXXII. Give the rule for the tense of these two verbs.

Kalendīs Mārtiīs: the name of the month is an adj., agreeing with **Kalendīs**. **Kalendīs** is in the Abl., denoting time.

Rule. — TIME WHEN or WITHIN WHICH is expressed by the Ablative.

ferrent: principal parts; synopsis of the Subj., both voices; inflection of the tense. Appendix, 10. — **in duodecim mēnsēs**: before the time of Numa, the Roman year had consisted of ten months, beginning with March. Numa added January and February, and made a year of 355 days. He corrected the deficiency by inserting a short month every second year. — **ad** = according to. — **diēs nefāstī** were the days on which the courts and public assemblies could not meet. **diēs fāstī** were the days

on which these bodies could meet and transact business.— The god *Janus* was represented as having two faces, on opposite sides of his head; hence **geminus**. His temple in the Roman Forum had two doors, opposite to each other, which were shut in time of peace, but open in time of war. They were generally open, because Rome was engaged in almost incessant war.— Why is **esset** in the Impf. Subj.? Decline **index**.

224. *Translate at sight:—*

1. Quattuor fabrōs lēgit quī portās Iānō geminō aedificārent. 2. Quīnque fabrōs legit quī portās Iānō geminō aedificent. 3. Saliī sēcrēta illa imperī pignora custōdīre poterunt. 4. Sacerdōtēs ad aedem Iānī convēnērunt ut ancilia per urbem canentēs ferrent. 5. Kalendīs Mārtiīs per urbem canunt et saltant. 6. Scūta per urbem rīte saltantēs ferent. 7. Annum in duodecim mēnsēs dēscribere potest. 8. Iānus erat index pācis et bellī. 9. Portās autem Iānō geminō aedificāre potuerat.

1. He could make lucky and unlucky days. 2. The twelve Salii, priests of Mars, were able to guard the shields. 3. Singing, they had borne them through the city. 4. On the Kalends of March he chose priests who were to divide the year into ten months, according to the course of the moon. 5. He builds doors to the two-faced Janus, in order that he may be an index of peace and war. 6. The priests had been able to guard these secret pledges of empire.



LESSON LXVI



TEMPLE OF JANUS

225. Portās Iānō geminō aedificāvit, ut esset index pācis et bellī; nam apertus, in armīs esse civitātem, clausus, pācātōs circā omnēs populōs significābat. Lēgēs quod plūrimās et ūtilēs tulit Numa. Ut vērō māiōrem institūtis suis auctōritātem conciliāret, simulāvit sibi cum deā Ēgeriā esse conloquia nocturna, eiusque monitū sē omnia, quae ageret, facere. Lūcus erat, quem medium fōns perennī rigābat aquā; eō saepe Numa sine arbitris sē inferēbat, velut ad congressum deae.

apertus, -a, -um, adj., *open*.

clausus, -a, -um, adj., *closed*,
shut.

pācātus, -a, -um, adj., *peaceful*.

circā, adv., *around*.

significō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to
show, indicate, signify.

ūtilis, -e, adj., *useful*.

māior, -us, adj., *greater*.

institūtum, -ī, n., *an institution*.

auctōritās, -tātis, f., *power*,
authority.

simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to
pretend.

conloquium, -ī, n., *a conversation*,
conference.

nocturnus, -a, -um, adj., *by*
night, nocturnal.

monitus, -ūs, m., *admonition*,
advice.

medius, -a, -um, adj., *middle*,
in the middle.

fōns, fontis, m., *a spring, fountain*.

perennis, -e, adj., *never-failing*,
perennial.

rigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to *wet*,
moisten, water.

saepe, adv., *often*.

sine, prep., *without*. Always
with the Abl.

arbiter, -trī, m., *a witness, spectator*.

velut, adv., *just as, just as if*.

congressus, -ūs, m., *a meeting*,
interview.

NOTES

226. *apertus* agrees with *Iānus* understood, which is used for the temple of Janus. Cf. *aperuistis* (168). — *esse* depends upon *significābat*. — Supply *esse* with *pācātōs*. *populōs* is the subject of *esse* understood. — *circā* was a prep. in Lesson XLV. Here it is an adverb. — *quoque*: cf. 169. — *plūrimās*: cf. *plūrima*, Lesson LX. It is the superlative of *multus*, and is compared irregularly. — Decline *ūtilēs* like *īnsignis* (188 (a)).

tulit: give the principal parts, and the synopsis of the Ind., both voices. In connection with *lēgēs* it means *passed*. — *māiōrem* is the comparative of *māgnus*. — *īnstitūtis* is a Dative. — *suīs*: cf. *suum* (182). To whom does *suīs* refer? — What does the clause *Ut . . . conciliāret* denote? Why is *conciliāret* in the Impf.? — *sibi* is in the Dative, to denote possession. *He pretended that conferences by night were to him with the goddess Egeria = that he had conferences by night with the goddess Egeria.*

(a) Study the following sentences: —

Mihi est pater, a father is to me = I have a father.

Puerō est liber, a book is to the boy = the boy has a book.

Mihi and *puerō* are Datives, like *sibi* above, and denote possession. The object possessed, in all of these instances, is the subject of the verb. The sentences are best translated by making the Dative the subject of *have*, and making the noun in the Nominative the object of the verb.

Rule. — After *sum* and similar verbs, the POSSESSOR is expressed by the Dative, the THING POSSESSED being the subject.

ēius refers to *Ēgeriā*. Compare *quōrum cōnsiliō omnia ageret* (195). — Why is *sē* used here rather than *eum* or *illum*? — *quem medium*, the middle of which. — *fōns* is masc. by exception to 67. 2. Four monosyllables ending in *s* preceded by a consonant are masc.; viz. *dēns*, a tooth, *fōns*, a fountain, *mōns*, a mountain, and *pōns*, a bridge. — Decline *perennī aquā*. — *sē inferēbat*: cf. *sē inferre* (190). — Decline *congressum*.

227. Translate at sight:—

1. Cum apertus esset, in armīs erat cīvitas. 2. Lēgēs quoque ūtilēs ā Numā lātae sunt. 3. Cum lēgēs plūrimās et ūtilēs tulisset, ē cōnspectū ablātus est. 4. Ut lēgēs ūtilēs ferret, sibi cum deā Ēgeriā erant conloquia nocturna. 5. Omnia, quae ēgit, monitū Ēgeriae fēcit. 6. Numa crēditus est saepe ad lūcum sē inferre ut māiōrem institūtis suis auctōritātem conciliāret. 7. Fōns lūcum medium perennī rigābat aquā. 8. Omnēs populī circā erant pācātī.

1. Numa pretended to betake himself often to the grove without witnesses. 2. Numa is said to have passed very many (and) useful laws. 3. Numa had very many interviews by night with the goddess Egeria. (In two ways.) 4. He did everything by the advice of the goddess Egeria. 5. The grove, which was near by,¹ was moistened by never-failing water. 6. They will be able to gain greater authority for their institutions.



LESSON LXVII

228. Ita omnium animōs eā pietāte imbuīt, ut fidēs āc iūsiūrandum nōn minus quam lēgum et poenārum metus cīvēs continēret. Bellum quidem nūllum gessit, sed nōn minus cīvitatē prōfuit quam Rōmulus. Morbō extinctus in Iāniculō monte sepultus est. Ita duo deinceps rēgēs, ille bellō, hīc pāce, cīvitatē auxērunt. Rōmulus septem et trīgintā rēgnāvit annōs, Numa trēs et quadrāgintā.

¹ Cf. Lesson XLIV.

pietās, -ātis, f., piety, loyalty.
imbuō, -ere, -ī, -itum, to fill,
imbue.
ac, conj., and. Same as **atque**,
 but used only before conso-
 nants.
minus, adv., less.
metus, -ūs, m., fear.
cīvis, -is, m. and f., a citizen.
contineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum, to
restrain, hold in check.

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, prō-
futūrus, to help, benefit.
morbū, -ī, m., disease.
exstinguō, -ere, -stinxi, -stinc-
tum, to deprive of life, destroy.
Iāniculum, -ī, n., the Janiculum.
sepeliō, -īre, -ivi, sepultum, to
bury.
deinceps, adv., one after another,
in succession.
quadrāgintā, num. adj., forty.

NOTES

229. The clause with **ut** expresses result. **Ita . . . ut, he so**
imbues their minds with, etc., that.—**fidēs, iūsiūrandum, and metus**
 are all subjects of **continēret**, but the verb agrees with the nearest,
metus.—Give the rule for the tense of **continēret** (**XXXIX.**).—
quidem never stands first in its clause (**223, n. on autem**). It
 immediately follows the emphatic word. *War, it is true, none did*
he carry on.—Decline **nūllum**.

prōfuit is the Perf. of **prōsum**. It is inflected like **sum** with
prō prefixed, the **prō** becoming **prōd** everywhere before **e**; as,
prōsum, prōdes, prōdest, prōsumus, prōdestis, prōsunt.

cīvitātī is in the Dat., after **prōfuit**. Compounds of **sum**, except
absum and **possum**, take the Dative.—**Morbō, Abl. of means,**
 after **exstinctus**, which agrees with **Numa** understood, the subject
 of **sepultus est**.—**Iāniculō monte**: Mount Janiculum was across
 the Tiber from the seven hills of Rome. According to the legend,
 Janus built a fortress here in early times, and hence the hill was
 called from him Janiculum.—**ille . . . hic, the former . . . the latter.**
ille refers to the more remote, Romulus; **hic**, to the nearer, Numa.

(a) From twenty to one hundred, the numerals are expressed
 in Latin just as they are in English: **septem et trīgintā, seven**
and thirty, or **trīgintā septem, thirty-seven**. The smaller num-
 ber precedes *with et*, or the larger number *without et*.—**annōs**

is in the Accusative, to denote duration of time, and modifies *rēgnāvit*.

Rule. — DURATION OF TIME and EXTENT OF SPACE are expressed by the Accusative.

230. *Translate at sight:—*

1. Omnium animī eā pietāte imbūtī sunt. 2. Nōn minus lēgum et poenārum metū quam iūreiūrاندō cīvēs continēbantur. 3. Bellum quidem nūllum Numa gessit, sed pāce cīvitātem auxit. 4. Rōmulus bella multa gessit ut cīvitātī prōdesset. 5. Nōn minus Rōmulus bellō cīvitātī prōfuit quam Numa pāce. 6. Rōmulus quīnque et vīgintī annōs bella gessit. 7. Rōmulus ad deōs trānsisse vulgō crēditus est; Numa in Iāniculō monte sepultus est. 8. Numa nōn bellō cīvitātī prōfuit, nam bellum nūllum gessit.

1. So two kings reigned in succession, the former twenty-seven years, the latter thirty-two. 2. When Romulus had reigned thirty-seven years, he was taken away out of sight; when Numa had reigned forty-three years, he was cut off by disease and was buried on Mount Janiculum. 3. Romulus so reigned that he benefited the state by war. 4. Romulus kept the citizens in check by the fear of the laws; Numa, by his piety. 5. The citizens were held in check without fear of punishment.

Give ten English words derived from Latin words in this lesson.

(a) Study the following groups of allied words:—

regō, to rule; **rēx**, a king; **rēgīna**, a queen; **rēgius**, -a, -um, belonging to a king, royal; **rēctor**, one who rules; **rēgnō**, to reign; **rēgula**, a rule.

faciō, to do, make; **facilis**, -e, easy (to do); **difficilis**, -e, not easy (to do); **facultās**, ability to do; **fabricō**, to construct; **factum**, a deed; **facinus**, a thing done; **factiō**, a doing, making; **factitō**, to do frequently; **faber**, one who makes, a workman.

doceō, to teach; **docilis**, -e, teachable; **indocilis**, -e, un-teachable; **docilitās**, teachableness; **doctrīna**, teaching; **doctor**, one who teaches; **doctus**, taught; **indoctus**, untaught; **documentum**, that which teaches.

Observe that the nouns ending in **-tor** designate the agent or doer, and that those in **-tās** are abstract nouns.



LESSON LXVIII

Comparison of Adjectives

231. Adjectives in Latin, as in English, have three degrees of comparison,—Positive, Comparative, and Superlative.

(a) POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
altus , -a, -um, <i>high</i> .	altior , -ius.	altissimus , -a, -um.
longus , -a, -um, <i>long</i> .	longior , -ius.	longissimus , -a, -um.
nōbilis , -e, <i>noble</i> .	nōbillior , -ius.	nōbillissimus , -a, -um.
sapiēns , <i>wise</i> .	sapientior , -ius.	sapientissimus , -a, -um.
fēlix , <i>fortunate</i> .	fēlicior , -ius.	fēlicissimus , -a, -um.

This is the regular form of comparison. It will be observed that the Comparative is formed by adding to the stem of the positive the ending **-ior**, **-ius**, and the Superlative by adding **-issimus**, **-issima**, **-issimum**. If the stem ends in a vowel, that vowel is dropped before these endings.

(b) POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
pulcher, -chra, -chrum, <i>beautiful.</i>	pulchrior, -ius, <i>more beautiful.</i>	pulcherrimus, -a, -um, <i>most beautiful.</i>
celer, -eris, -ere, <i>swift.</i>	celerior, -ius, <i>swifter.</i>	celerrimus, -a, -um, <i>swiftest.</i>
miser, -era, -erum, <i>wretched.</i>	miserior, -ius, <i>more wretched.</i>	miserrimus, -a, -um, <i>most wretched.</i>
acer, -ācris, -ācre, <i>sharp.</i>	acrior, -ius, <i>sharper.</i>	ācerrimus, -a, -um, <i>sharpest.</i>

Adjectives in **-er** form the Comparative regularly, but they form the Superlative by adding **-rimus, -a, -um** to the nominative singular masculine of the Positive.

(c) Six adjectives in **-ilis** form the Superlative by dropping the final **i** of the stem and adding **-limus, -a, -um**.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
facilis, -e, <i>easy.</i>	facilior, -ius.	facillimus, -a, -um.
difficilis, -e, <i>difficult.</i>	difficilior, -ius.	difficillimus, -a, -um.
similis, -e, <i>like.</i>	similior, -ius.	simillimus, -a, -um.
dissimilis, -e, <i>unlike.</i>	dissimilior, -ius.	dissimillimus, -a, -um.
gracilis, -e, <i>slender.</i>	gracilior, -ius.	gracillimus, -a, -um.
humilis, -e, <i>low.</i>	humilior, -ius.	humillimus, -a, -um.

All Comparatives except **plūs** are declined like **prior** (153 (a)); all Superlatives like **bonus**.

(d) The Comparative is sometimes best translated by *too* or *somewhat*, instead of *more*, and the Superlative by *very*; as, **senectūs est loquācior**, *old age is somewhat talkative*; **māximus numerus**, *a very great number*.

Compare the following adjectives: **augustus, vāstus, certus, laetus, ūtilis, iūcundus**.

232. In expressing a comparison between two objects the adjective in the Comparative is followed by **quam**

(*than*); or **quam** may be omitted and the following noun be put in the *Ablative*. If **quam** is used, the following noun takes the same case as the noun with which it is compared. **Quam** can be omitted only when it would be followed by the nominative or accusative. With relative pronouns, **quam** is rarely expressed.

Study the following sentences:—

1. Iāniculum est altius { quam mōns Aventīnus.
monte Aventīnō.
2. Albānī nōn erant sapientiōrēs { quam Rōmānī.
Rōmānīs.
3. Rōmulus nōn fuit nōbilior { quam Remus.
Remō.
4. Numitor erat nātū māior { quam Amūlius.
Amūliō.

Rule.—*The Comparative is followed by the Ablative when quam is not expressed.*

LESSON LXIX

Comparison of Adjectives — Continued

233. (a) Five adjectives in common use are compared irregularly.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus, -a, -um, <i>good</i> .	melior, -ius.	optimus, -a, -um.
malus, -a, -um, <i>bad</i> .	pēior, -ius.	pessimus, -a, -um.
māgnus, -a, -um, <i>great</i> .	māior, -ius.	māximus, -a, -um.
parvus, -a, -um, <i>small</i> .	minor, minus.	minimus, -a, -um.
multus, -a, -um, <i>much</i> .	plūs (n.).	plūrimus, -a, -um.

(b) The Positive of the following are rarely used except as nouns.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
[exterus]	exterior , -ius, <i>outer</i> .	extrēmus or extimus , <i>outermost</i> .
[superus]	superior , -ius, <i>higher</i> .	suprēmus or summus , <i>highest</i> .
[inferus]	inferior , -ius, <i>lower</i> .	īnīmus or īmus , <i>lowest</i> .
[posterus]	posterior , -ius, <i>later</i> .	postrēmus or postumus , <i>last</i> .

(c) The following want the positive:—

COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
cōterior , -ius, <i>hither</i> .	cōtīmus , -a, -um, <i>hithermost</i> .
ūltērior , -ius, <i>further</i> .	ūltīmus , -a, -um, <i>furthest</i> .
interior , -ius, <i>inner</i> .	īntīmus , -a, -um, <i>inmost</i> .
prior , -ius, <i>former</i> .	prīmus , -a, -um, <i>first</i> .
propior , -ius, <i>nearer</i> .	proxīmus , -a, -um, <i>nearest</i> .

(d) Some adjectives have no terminational comparison. These must be learned by observation. Such adjectives may be compared by prefixing to the positive **magis**, *more*, to form the comparative, and **māximē**, *most*, to form the Superlative; as, **mīrus**, *wonderful*, **magis mīrus**, *more wonderful*, **māximē mīrus**, *most wonderful*.

EXERCISE

234. 1. Aquila est māior quam vultur. 2. Caesar in Galliam ūteriōrem properāvit. 3. Remus prior sex vulturēs vidit. 4. Impia prōditiō celerrimā poenā vindicāta est. 5. Prīmō impetū vir inter Rōmānōs īnsīgnis, nōmine Hostilius, fortissimē dīmicāns cecidit. 6. Numa sacra plūrima instituit. 7. Lēgēs quoque ūtilissimās tulit Numa. 8. Māiōrem īstitutīs suīs auctōritātem conciliābat. 9. Rōmānī plūrēs virōs quam mulierēs habuērunt. 10. Quis Rōmānōrum rēgum erat optimus?

REVIEW QUESTIONS

Give three ways of expressing purpose in Latin. — In the sentence *she came to the city to seek water*, express *to seek water* in three ways in Latin. — How are the two Periphrastic Conjugations formed? Give illustrations with **doceō** and **mittō**. — Inflect the Present and Perfect Subjunctive of **sum**, **instituō**, **eō**, **ferō**, **contineō**. — Give the rule for Sequence of Tenses. Which tenses are called Principal Tenses and which Historical? — What tenses are usually in the Subjunctive after **cum**? What ones usually in the Indicative? When may any or all of these tenses be in the Indicative after **cum**? — How is a negative purpose expressed? Give an example. Give a synopsis of **possum** in the Indicative and Subjunctive. How is possession expressed in Latin? Write in Latin, in two ways, *I have a shield*. — Write the four monosyllabic nouns of the Third Declension that are masculine by exception. — Make a list of the words that have been used which never stand first in the sentence or clause. — What case follows the compounds of **sum**? What compounds of **sum** are exceptions to this rule? — Express the following numbers in Latin in two ways: 24, 35, 47. — How is duration of time expressed in Latin? How is time *at* or *within which* expressed? Give an example of each. — Name the six adjectives that have **-limus** in the Superlative.



LESSON LXX

The Story of Horatius Cocles

235. Porsena, rēx Etruscōrum, ad restituendōs in rēgnum Tarquiniōs infestō exercitū Rōmam vēnit. Prīmō impetū Iāniculum cēpit. Nōn umquam aliās ante tantus terror Rōmānōs invāsīt; adeō valida rēs tum Clūsīna erat māgnūque Porsenae nōmen. Ex agrīs in urbem dēmigrant; urbem

ipsam saepiunt praesidiis. Alia urbis pars mūrīs, alia Tiberī obiectō tūta vidēbātur.

NOTES¹

236. After Tarquinius Superbus, the last king of Rome, with his family, had been expelled from the city, he made several attempts to regain his lost sovereignty. The one referred to in this story is the third of these attempts, in which he was aided by King Porsena. The story of Horatius Cocles has always been a favorite one among the old Roman legends. It has been made familiar to English readers by the poetical version of it in Macaulay's "Lays of Ancient Rome." — **Cocles** means *one-eyed*. — **rēx Etruscōrum**: the Etruscans were the inhabitants of Etruria, a country adjoining Rome on the north. — **ad restituendōs Tarquiniōs**: cf. 198 (a), n. on **ad exercitum lūstrandum**. — **Rōmam**: Rule XXVIII. — **Prīmō impetū**: cf. the same (187). Compare **prīmō**.

Nōn umquam aliās ante, *not ever at any other time before*; an emphatic way of saying, *never before*. — **adeō** modifies **valida**, and is also to be taken with **māgnū**. — **rēs Clūsīna** = *the commonwealth of Clusium*. The city of Clusium was north of Rome, in the central part of Etruria. To-day it is *Chiusi*. — **dēmigrant**, the subject refers to the Romans. — **Alia pars . . . alia** (pars), *the one part . . . the other part*. — **mūrīs** and **Tiberī** are Ablatives of means with **tūta** (esse). — **Tiberī obiectō**, *by the Tiber thrown before* = *by the intervention of the Tiber*. — **vidēbātur** is a passive form from **videō**, used as a deponent, meaning *to seem*. — Give all the participles of **restituō**. — Synopsis of **cēpit** in the Ind. and Subj., both voices. — Decline **Tiberī** in the singular.

237. *Translate at sight*: —

1. Porsena, rēx Etruscōrum, Tarquiniōs in rēgnū restitūere nōn potuit. 2. Porsenae exercitus māior erat quam²

¹ The vocabularies for the following lessons will be found on p. 280 foll.

² *Than that of the Romans*. **Exercitus** is to be supplied from the first part of the sentence.

Rōmānōrum. 3. Ut in rēgnum Tarquiniōs restitueret, Rōmam vēnit. 4. Nōn umquam aliās ante Iāniculum erat captum. 5. Cum Iāniculum captum esset, māgnus terror Rōmānōs invāsīt. 6. Nōmen Porsenae māiōrem rei Clūsīnae auctōritātem conciliāvit. 7. Plūrimī¹ ex agrīs in urbem dēmigrābant. 8. Alia urbis pars praesidiīs, alia mūrīs saepiēbātur.

1. Porsena led the Etruscans to Rome. 2. He determined to restore the Tarquins to the throne (*rēgnum*). 3. Having taken the Janiculum, he hastened to Rome. 4. The Romans, dismayed, began to protect the city itself with garri- sons. 5. So great terror fell upon the Romans that² they fled into the city. 6. Many also came from the fields into the city.



LESSON LXXI

238. Pōns sublicius iter paene hostibus dedit, nisi ūnus vir fuisset Horātius Coclēś, illō cōgnōmine appellātus, quod in aliō proeliō oculum āmiserat. Is extrēmā pontis parte occupātā aciem hostium sōlus sustinuit, dōnec pōns ā tergō interrumpērētur. Ipsa audācia obstupefēcīt hostēs; ponte rescissō armātus in Tiberim dēsiluit et multīs superinci- dentibus tēlīs incolumis ad suōs trānāvit.

NOTES

239. Pōns sublicius, a bridge resting on piles. This is the oldest bridge across the Tiber of which we have any account. It

¹ *Very many.*

² *ut.*

crossed the river near the Palatine Hill. It is said to have been built by Ancus Marcius, the fourth king of Rome.

Iter is an irregular neuter noun of the 3d Declension, declined as follows:—

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
(a) N. Acc. V.	iter	itīnera
Gen.	itīneris	itīnerum
Dat.	itīnerī	itīneribus
Abl.	itīnere	itīneribus

dedit has the force of a Plupf. Subj. = *would have given if there had not been*, etc. The Indic. is used for greater vividness.—Decline **ūnus vir**; **aliō proeliō**; **sōlus**. Compare **extrēmā**.—Decline **aciem**.—**interrumperētur** is in the Subj., after **dōnec**, because it implies purpose or design.—**ponte rescissō** is an Ablative Absolute denoting time, but **multīs superincidentibus telīs** denotes concession; *although the weapons were falling thick around*. Compare **multīs**.

(b) **suōs** = *his friends*. The plural of **suus** is often used alone to mean *his, her, or their friends, possessions, etc.*, always referring to the subject, or to some emphatic word that is the real subject of thought.

240. Translate at sight:—

1. Hostēs ā Porsenā rēge ductī ad pontem sublicium vēnerant. 2. Hic pōns iter paene hostibus dedit; sed vir inter Rōmānōs insignis, nōmine Horātius, aciem hostium sōlus sustinuit. Is enim extrēmam pontis partem occupāvit. 3. Cum pōns ā tergō interrumperētur, Horātius armātus in Tiberim dēsiluit et ad suōs trānāvit. 4. Cum pontem rescidissent, Horātius, multīs superincidentibus telīs, incolumis ad suōs properāvit. 5. Etrūscī Horātium capere nōn potuerunt. 6. Rōmam capere, ponte rescissō, facillimum vidēbātur.

1. There was a man, Horatius Cocles, who had lost an eye in another battle. 2. He, taking possession of the furthest part of the pile-bridge, was able to hold in check the line of the enemy. 3. He alone could not conquer the enemy, but his friends broke down the bridge from behind. 4. Then he leaped into the river with his armor on and swam to his (friends). 5. The Romans were wiser than King Porsena.

exercitus, an army considered as a trained body of men.

āgmen, an army on the march.

aciēs, an army in line of battle.



LESSON LXXII

241. Grāta ergā tantam virtūtem cīvītās fuit; eī tantum agrī publicē datum est, quantum ūnō diē circumarāvit. Statua quoque eī in comitiō posita.

NOTES

242. Grāta is an adjective in the predicate after **fuit**. Compare it.—**tantum agrī**, *so much of land* = *so much land*.—**pūblicē**: in the name of the state.—**tantum . . . quantum** are correlatives = *so much as*.—**diē**: Rule XXII.—What does **quoque** render emphatic? Cf. 169.—**eī**, Dative after **posita** (est). Nearly equivalent to a Genitive (eīus), limiting **statua**.—The *Comitium* was an open space adjoining the Forum.

243. *Translate at sight*:—

1. Horātius agrum circumarāvit quem Rōmānī eī dederat.
2. Ager Horātiō publicē datus est. 3. Agrum quoque Rō-

mānī eī dedit. 4. Grātus populus statuam eī posuit. 5. Unō diē Porsena, rēx Etruscōrum, infēstō exercitū Rōmam vēnit. 6. Horātius Cocles, vir inclitā audaciā, aciem hostium sōlus sustinuit. 7. Porsenae nōmen erat māximum. 8. Horātius est appellātus Cocles, quod in aliō proeliō oculum āmīserat. 9. Rēx Etruscōrum in rēgnum Tarquiniōs restituere dēcrēvit.

1. When the Tarquins had come to Rome with a hostile army, great fear fell upon the Romans. They would have taken¹ the city at the first attack if it had not been for one man, Horatius Cocles. He was called by this name because he had lost an eye in another battle. He took possession of the furthest part of the bridge and fought with the enemy alone. Although the javelins fell thick about him, he swam across in safety to his friends. The name of Horatius was then greater at Rome than the name of king.

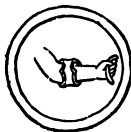
(a) The following is a list of the Prepositions used in the preceding lessons, arranged according to the case or cases that are used with them:—

With the Acc.: **ad, circā, ergā, extrā, inter, ob, per, propter.**

With the Abl.: **ā or ab, cum, ē or ex, prō, sine.**

With the Acc. or Abl.: **in, super.**

¹ Plupf. Subj.



LESSON LXXIII

244. Formation and Comparison of Adverbs

(a) ADJECTIVE	STEM	ADVERB
lātus, -a, -um, wide.	lāto-	lātē, widely.
benignus, -a, -um, kind.	benigno-	benignē, kindly.
miser, -era, -erum, wretched.	misero-	miserē, wretchedly.

From adjectives of the first and second declensions with stems in -o, adverbs are regularly formed by changing the final o of the stem to ē.

Form adverbs from **grātus, laetus, pulcher, longus, altus, iūcundus.**

(b) ADJECTIVE	STEM	ADVERB
similis, -e, like.	simili-	similiter, in like manner.
fortis, -e, brave.	forti-	fortiter, bravely.
sapiēns, wise.	sapienti-	sapienter, wisely.

From adjectives with stems in i adverbs are formed by adding **ter** to the stem. Stems in -nti, like **sapienti-**, drop the -ti before the adverbial ending -ter.

Form adverbs from **fēlix, fortunate; ūtilis, useful; brevis, short; prūdēns, prudent.**

(c) The Accusative singular neuter of many adjectives is used as an adverb: as, **multum (multus); facile (facilis); primum (primus).**

The Ablative singular of some adjectives is used as an adverb: as, **falsō (falsus); perpetuō (perpetuus); primō (primus); multō (multus).**

Adverbs are also formed in several other ways, which may best be learned by observation.

(d) POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
lātē	lātius	lātissimē
benignē	benignius	benignissimē
miserē	miserius	miserrimē
similiter	similius	simillimē
fortiter	fortius	fortissimē
sapienter	sapientius	sapientissimē

It will be observed that the Comparative of the adverb has the same form as the Accusative neuter singular of the Comparative of the adjective, and that the Superlative of the adverb is the same as the Accusative neuter plural of the Superlative of the adjective, except that it ends in *ē* instead of *a*.

(e) If the adjective is irregular in its Comparison, the adverb will in like manner be irregular.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bene	melius	optimē
male	pēius	pessimē
parum	minus	minimē
multum or multō	plūs	plūrimum
—	magis	māximē

(f) There are many adverbs not derived from adjectives, some of which do not admit of Comparison. Some of these, however, are compared; as, for example, *saepe*, *often*, *saepius*, *oftener*, *saepissimē*, *oftenest*; *diū*, *long* (of time), *diūtius*, *longer*, *diūtissimē*, *very long time*.

EXERCISE

245. 1. *Īgnem in arā p̄perpetuō alendum virginibus dedit.*
 2. *Fidēs āc iūsiūrandum nōn minus quam lēgum et poenārum metus cīvēs continēbant.* 3. *Numa nōn minus cīvitatī pr̄fuit quam Rōmulus.* 4. *Nūsquam benignē audīta lēgatiō est.* 5. *Māximē Sabīnī cum liberīs et cōiugibus convēnere.*

6. Hostilius fortissimē dīmicāns cecidit. 7. Nunc sciunt longē aliud esse virginēs rapere, aliud pūgnāre cum virīs. 8. Vērūm haud ita multō post occīsō Tatiō ad Rōmulum potentātus omnis reccidit. 9. Minimē servīlis erat adulē-scentis indolēs.

1. The soldiers fell fighting bravely. 2. The road was most difficult. 3. The Romans carried on many wars most successfully (*fēliciter*). 4. Strife very often arose between them (as to) which of the two should give a name to the new city. 5. The eagle flies more swiftly than the vulture. 6. For a very long time Romulus defended himself by force.

Give English words suggested by the following Latin words: *restituendōs*, *impetū*, *invāsīt*, *valida*, *oblectō*, *extrēmā*, *sustinuit*, *interrumperētur*, *posita*, *quantum*.

Study the following allied words:—

capiō, to take; *captō* (-āre), to lay hold of; *capessō* (-ere), to seize eagerly; *accipiō* (-ere), to receive; *recipiō* (-ere), to take back; *excipiō* (-ere), to take out; *praecipiō* (-ere), to take beforehand; *captus* (-ūs), a taking; *captiō* (-ōnis), a taking, deceiving; *captivus*, captive; *capāx*, able to take or hold; *capācitās*, space for taking or holding; *particeps*, taking a share, partaking; *princeps* (*primus* + *capiō*), taking the first, foremost.



LESSON LXXIV

The Story of Lævinus and Pyrrhus, King of Epirus

246. Tarentīnis, quod Rōmānōrum lēgātīs iniūriam fēcissent, bellum indictum est. Hī Pyrrhum, Ēpirī rēgem, contrā Rōmānōs auxilium popōscērunt, quī ex genere Achilles originem trahēbat. Is paulō post in Ītaliā vēnit tumque primum Rōmānī cum trānsmarīnō hoste dīmīcāvērunt. Missus est contrā eum cōnsul Pūblius Valerius Laevīnus, quī cum explorātōrēs Pyrrhī cēpisset, iūssit eōs per castra dūcī, ostendī omnem exercitum tumque dīmīttī, ut renūntiārent Pyrrhō quaecumque ā Rōmānīs agerentur.

NOTES

247. Tarentīnis, Dat. after *indictum est*. Rule X. *Tarentum* was a Greek city of Southern Italy, now *Taranto*. — *Pyrrhum* and *auxilium*, two Accusatives after *popōscērunt*; *asked Pyrrhus for aid*.

Rule. — *Verbs of ASKING, TEACHING, and CONCEALING take two Accusatives — one of a person, the other of a thing.*

ex genere Achilles: there was a legend that Pyrrhus, son of Achilles, settled in Epirus, after the fall of Troy; and from him Pyrrhus, king of Epirus, claimed descent. — *primum*, *for the first time*. Cf. *prīmō*, *at first*, Lesson XXVIII. — *quī cum*, etc., *and when he*. Cf. *quī cum* (209). — Note the change of subject with *dūcī*, *ostendī*, and *dīmīttī*. *eōs* is the subject of *dūcī*; *exercitum*, of *ostendī*; and *eōs* understood, of *dīmīttī*. — *quaecumque*: cf. 156, n. on *quicumque*; *everything which*, etc.

(a)

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

The expression of thoughts in the exact words of the writer or speaker is called *Direct Discourse* (*Ōrātiō Rēcta*).

The expression of thoughts not in the exact words of the writer or speaker, but depending upon some verb of *saying, thinking, perceiving*, etc., and containing the substance of what has been said, is called *Indirect Discourse* (**Orātiō Oblīqua**).

Examples

DIRECT DISCOURSE

II quī bonī **sunt beātī sunt**,
those who are good are happy.

Caesar dixit: "Pūblium Cōn-
sidium, quī rei militāris pe-
ritissimus **habēbātur, prae-
mīsī**," *Cæsar said: "I sent
forward Publius Considius,
who was considered most
skilled in military science."*

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

Dicit **eōs** quī bonī **sint beātōs**
esse, *he says that those who are
good are happy.*

Caesar dixit **sē** Pūblium Cōn-
sidium, quī rei militāris pe-
ritissimus **habērētur, prae-
mīsisse**, *Cæsar said that he
sent forward Publius Consi-
dus, who was considered most
skilled in military science.*

It will be seen that, in changing the sentence from Direct to Indirect Discourse, the verb of the principal clause (**sunt, prae-mīsī**) is changed to the Infinitive, and the verb of the subordinate clause (**sunt, habēbātur**) to the Subjunctive.

Rule. — In INDIRECT DISCOURSE the verb of the principal clause is in the INFINITIVE, and the verbs of the subordinate clauses are in the SUBJUNCTIVE.

(b) Subordinate clauses, even though not introduced by any word of *saying, thinking, perceiving*, etc., have their verbs in the Subjunctive if these clauses express the thought of some other person than the writer or speaker. This is sometimes called *Implied Indirect Discourse*.

fēcissent, in the above lesson, is in the Subjunctive for this reason. The cause clause introduced by **quod** gives the reason, not of the writer, but of those who declared war, viz. the Romans. This may be expressed in translation thus: *because* (as was alleged, or as was claimed) *they had done an injury to the envoys*

of the Romans. If the writer had wished to give this reason as his own, he would have used *fēcērant*.

248. *Translate at sight:—*

1. Rōmānī Tarentīnīs, quod eōrum lēgātīs iniūriam fēcissent, bellum indixērunt. 2. Tarentīnī ad Pyrrhum, Ēpīrī rēgem, lēgātōs mīsīt, quī contrā Rōmānōs auxilium peterent. 3. Pyrrhus dīxit sē ex genere Achillis orīginem trahere. 4. Haud ita multō post Pyrrhus in Ītaliā vēnit. 5. Dīcitur Rōmānōs, quī nōn umquam ante trānsmarīnum hostem vīdissent, cum Ēpīrī rēge dīmīcāre. 6. Populus Rōmānus Pūblium Valerium Laevīnum, quod cōsul esset, mittī contrā eum iūssit. 7. Laevīnus iūssit Pyrrhī explōrātōrēs, quī ā Rōmānīs essent captī, per castra dūcī. 8. Lēgātī renūntiāverunt Pyrrhō quaecumque ā Rōmānīs agēbantur.

1. The inhabitants of Tarentum had insulted the envoys of the Romans. 2. When the Romans had declared war upon them, they asked aid of Pyrrhus, king of Epirus. 3. Pyrrhus said that he would immediately come into Italy. 4. It is said that the Romans then for the first time fought with an enemy from across the sea. 5. He said that the scouts, who had been led through the camp, were dismissed. 6. They announced that the consul, who had been sent against the Tarentines, had captured the scouts of Pyrrhus.



LESSON LXXV



ELEPHANT

249. Commissā mox pūgnā cum iam Pyrrhī exercitus pedem referret, rēx elephantōs in Rōmānōrum aciem agī iūssit; tumque mūtata est proeli fortūna, Rōmānōs vāstōrum corporum mōlēs terribilisque superāstantium armātōrum speciēs turbāvit. Equī etiam, cōspectū et odōre beluārum -exterritī sessōrēs vel excutiēbant vel sēcum in fugam abripiēbant. Nox proeliō finem dedit. Pyrrhus captīvōs Rōmānōs summō honōre habuit; occīsōs sepelīvit.

NOTES

250. The battle here described was fought near Heraclea, on the river Siris. — **Commissā pūgnā**: cf. **pūgnam cōnseruit**, Lesson LI. — **pedem referret**, *began to give way*. — **vāstōrum corporum mōlēs**, *the bulk of their huge bodies = the huge bulk of their bodies*. — **turbāvit** has for subjects **mōlēs** and **speciēs**, but it agrees in number with the nearest subject, as is often the case in Latin. — **sessōrēs**, *those seated (on the horses) = the riders*. It is the object of **excutiēbant**, of which **equī** is the subject. — **finem dare**, *to give an end = to put an end to*. — **summō**: compare. — **occīsōs**, *the slain*. Observe the omission of the connective **et**. — Compare **vāstus**. Give the comparative of **terribilis**.

251. *Translate at sight*:—

1. Pūgna mox cum Pyrrhī exercitū commissa est.
2. Primō impetū Pyrrhī exercitus pedem referre coepit.

3. Dicitur Rōmānōs, quī nōn umquam ante elephantōs vīdisent, cōspectū bēluārum exterritōs esse. 4. Elephantōrum corpora sunt vāstiōra quam equōrum. 5. Rōmānīs elephantī terribiliōrēs vidēbantur quam Pyrrhī militēs. 6. Cum Pyrrhus elephantōs in Rōmānōrum aciem ageret, proeli fortūna mūtāta est.

When presently battle was joined, the army of Pyrrhus began to retreat. Then in order to change the fortune of the battle, the king led the elephants against the line of the Romans. The Romans were thrown into confusion by the terrible appearance of their huge bodies. The horses, also, terrified at the sight of the elephants and of the armed men standing upon (them), hurried away in flight with their riders. They say that Pyrrhus came into Italy because the inhabitants of Tarentum asked him for aid against the Romans.

(a) Observe the following words and expressions: **pūgnam committere, pūgnam cōnserere, dīmīcāre, pūgnāre, bellum gerere, bellum sūmere.**

Also the following: **interimere, interficere, occīdere, extinguere.**



LESSON LXXVI

252. Quōs cum adversō vulnere et truci vultū etiam mortuōs iacentēs vīdisset, tulisse ad caelum manūs dīcitur cum hāc vōce: sē tōtīus orbis dominum esse potuisse, sī tālēs sibi militēs contigissent. Amīcīs grātulantibus, “Quid mihi cum tālī victōriā,” inquit, “ubi exercitūs rōbur āmit-

tam? Si iterum eodem modō vicerō, sine ullō mīlite in Ēpīrum revertar.” Deinde ad urbem Rōmam māgnīs itineribus contendit; omnia ferrō ignīque vāstāvit; ad vicēsimum ab urbe lapidem castra posuit.

NOTES

253. **Quōs** refers to those slain in the battle, who are mentioned in the preceding sentence. Cf. **quī cum**, Lesson LXXIII. *When he had seen them*, etc. — **adversō vulnere**, *with wounds in front*. — **truci** is an adj. of the 3d Decl., of one ending (185 (a)). It is thus declined:—

(a) **Trux** (st. **truci-**), *fierce*.

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. V.	trux		trúcēs	trúcia
Gen.	trúci <i>s</i>		(trúci <i>um</i>)	
Dat.	trúci		trúci <i>bus</i>	
Acc.	trúce <i>m</i>	trux	trúcēs	trúcia
Abl.	trúci (-e)		trúci <i>bus</i>	

The Gen. plu. of **trux** is not found. — In like manner decline **simplex**, **-icis**, *simple*; **fēlix**, **-icis**, *fortunate*; **audāx**, **-ācis**, *bold*. — **etiam mortuōs**, *even in death*. Decline **vultus** and **manus**. Notice the gender of **manus**. — **iacentēs** agrees with **quōs**. — **hāc vōce**, *this exclamation, these words*. — To whom do **sē** and **sibi** refer? What is the rule for the use of **sui** and **suus** (182)? — What is the Dat. of **tōtius**? What other adjectives form the Gen. and Dat. sing. in the same way (156 (a))? — The sentence, **sē . . . contigissent**, in Direct Discourse, would be “**Ego tōtius orbis dominus esse potui, si tālēs mihi mīlitēs contigissent**.” — **orbis** is declined like **hostis** (161), but it has **e** or **i** in the Ablative. Notice the gender of **orbis**. — **tālēs**: decline like **in-signis** (188 (a)). — **Amīcīs**, Dat. after **inquit**.

mihi is the Dat. sing. of the personal pronoun of the 1st pers., **ego**. Learn inflection, Appendix, 13.

Quid mihi cum tali victoriā, etc., *what is there to me with such a victory (ubi, whereby) that by it I lose, etc. = what do I gain by a victory of such a nature that I lose by it the flower of my army?* — **mihi** may be referred to the Dat. of Possessor, with **est** understood. Rule XI. — **āmittam** is in the Subj., in a relative clause of result introduced by the relative adverb **ubi**. Rule XXXII. — **inquit** is a defective verb, from **inquam, inquis, inquit**, etc. It has the same form, **inquit**, for the Pres. and the Perf. 3d sing. — **Si . . . vicerō . . . revertar**, *if I conquer, I shall return*. **vicerō** is a Fut. Perf., but in English we should say, *if I conquer*, rather than *if I shall have conquered*. — **māgnis itineribus**, *by forced marches*. Abl. of means. — Notice the inversion of the usual English order in **ferro ignique**. — **vicesimum** is the ordinal number corresponding to the cardinal **viginti**. Cf. the table of numerals, Appendix, 12. — **vicesimum ab urbe lapidem**, *the twentieth (stone) milestone from the city*. Milestones were set up along the highways in all directions from the city. — **castra**: difference in meaning of the sing. and the plu.?

(4)

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

A Conditional Sentence consists of two parts, — a *Condition* and a *Conclusion*. The Condition is called the *Protasis*, and the Conclusion is called the *Apodosis*.

The conjunctions **si**, *if*, and **nisi**, *unless*, are the particles most frequently used in introducing conditions.

Conditional Sentences may be divided into three general classes, —

1. Conditions relating to the present or past, in which nothing is implied as to the truth or falsity of the supposition. These may be called *Simple Conditions*.

2. Conditions relating to the future, in which, because they relate to the future, it is implied that the truth or falsity of the supposition is uncertain. These may be called *Future Conditions*.

3. Conditions relating to the present or past, in which it is implied that the supposition is not true. These may be called *Conditions Contrary to Fact*.

I. In *Simple Conditions* a Present or Past Tense of the Indicative is used in both Condition and Conclusion.

1. *Present*: **SI epistulam scribit, mittit**, if he writes a letter, he sends it.
2. *Past*: **SI epistulam scripsit, misit**, if he has written a letter, he has sent it.

II. *Future Conditions* are divided into two classes, —

(a) Conditions in which the reference to the future is *distinct* and *vivid*. These take the Future Indicative in both Condition and Conclusion.

(b) Conditions in which the reference to the future is *less distinct* and *vivid*. These take the Present Subjunctive in both Condition and Conclusion for incomplete action, and the Perfect Subjunctive for completed action.

- (a) *Distinct and Vivid*: **SI epistulam scribet,¹ mittet**, if he writes (shall write) a letter, he will send it.
- (b) *Less Distinct and Vivid*: **SI epistulam scribat,² mittat**, if he should write a letter, he would send it.

III. *Conditions Contrary to Fact*. These may be either *Present* or *Past*.

Present Conditions Contrary to Fact take the Imperfect Subjunctive in both Condition and Conclusion.

Past Conditions Contrary to Fact take the Pluperfect Subjunctive in both Condition and Conclusion.

- (a) *Present*: **SI epistulam scriberet, mitteret**, if he wrote a letter, he would send it (but he has not written a letter, and therefore he will not send it).
- (b) *Past*: **SI epistulam scripsisset, misisset**, if he had written a letter, he would have sent it.

¹ If the action in the Condition is completed before the time of the action in the Conclusion, then the Future Perfect is used.

² For completed action, the Perfect Subjunctive is used.

Study with care the forms of the English sentences corresponding to the different forms of the conditional sentences in Latin.

254. *Translate at sight:—*

1. Rōmānōrum mortuōrum iacentium vulnera erant adversa. 2. Tulit ad caelum manūs et dīxit “Cum tālibus mīlitibus tōtīus orbis dominus esse potuī.” 3. Sī tālēs mihi mīlites contingant, tōtīus orbis sim dominus. 4. Sī iterum mihi sit tālis victōria, omnem exercitum āmittam. 5. Sī iterum eōdem modō vīcisset, sine ullō mīlite in Ēpīrum revertisset. 6. “Exercitūs rōbur āmīsī,” inquit Pyrrhus, “et omnia ferrō ignīque vāstābō.” 7. Omnibus rēbus ferrō ignīque vāstātīs, ad ūndecimum ab urbe lapidem castra posuit.

1. Pyrrhus saw the slain lying with a fierce countenance even in death. 2. He raised his hands to heaven and cried out, “If I had¹ such soldiers, I would immediately hasten by forced marches to Rome. 3. Now I know that it is one thing to lead my soldiers into battle, and a very different thing to conquer the Romans.”² 4. If Pyrrhus had asked aid of the gods, he would have conquered the Romans. 5. If he hastens to Rome by forced marches, he will lose the flower of his army.

(a) **omnis**, *all, the whole*, considered as made up of parts.

tōtus, *the whole* considered as a unit without regard to parts.

vincō, *to conquer*; **victor**, *a conqueror*; **victrix**, *she who conquers*; **victōria**, *victory*; **invictus**, *unconquerable*.

vāstō, *to lay waste*; **vāstus**, *waste, desert*; **vāstitās**, *a waste, desert*; **vāstātiō**, *a laying waste*; **dēvāstō**, *to devastate*.
vāstātor, *one who lays waste*.

¹ Use the Imperfect in both clauses.

² Consult Lesson LII.

LESSON LXXVII

255. Pyrrhō obviam vēnit Laevīnus cum novō exercitū. Quō visō rēx ait sibi eandem adversus Rōmānōs esse fortūnam quam Herculi adversus hydram, cui tot capita renāscēbantur, quot praecīsa erant; deinde in Campāniam sē recēpit; missōs ā senātū dē redimendīs captīvīs lēgātōs honorificē excēpit; captīvōs sine pretiō reddidit, ut Rōmānī, cōgnitā iam virtūte suā, cōgnōscerent etiam liberālitātem.

NOTES

256. Pyrrhō is the Dative after *obviam vēnit*. *obviam* with a verb takes the Dative. — *obviam vēnit*, *came to meet*. — *Quō visō*, *when he saw this*, or *upon seeing this*. — *ait* is from the defective verb *aiō*. It has the same form (*ait*) for the 3d sing. of the Pres. and the Perf. It is here in the Perfect.

sibi: Rule XI. *Herculi*: in the same construction as *sibi*. Literally, *that the same fortune was to him against the Romans as was to Hercules against the hydra*. *quam* is the subject of *esse* understood. Hercules, son of Jupiter and Alcmene, was compelled, through the jealousy of Juno, to perform twelve great labors. For the second of these labors, he was required to slay a seven-headed serpent, the Hydra, that infested the marshes of Lerna, south of Argos. No sooner did he cut off one head of this monster than two new ones sprung out of the bleeding stump. Finally, by searing the necks with a flaming brand as the heads were cut off, he prevented their growth, and so succeeded in destroying the Hydra.

tot . . . quot, *so many . . . as*. Cf. 242, *tantum . . . quantum*.

Campania is a rich country of Central Italy, south of Latium.

dē redimendīs captīvīs, *about the ransoming of the captives*. *redimendīs* is a Gerundive, agreeing with *captīvīs* (172, n. on *videndae*). — What does the clause with *ut* denote and what does

it modify? — *cōgnitā iam virtūte suā*, as they already knew, or who already knew, etc.

257. Translate at sight:—

1. Cum Pyrrhus ad tricesimum ab urbe lapidem castra posuisset, ei obviam venit Laevinus cum novo exercitu. Quod cum rex videret, clāmitabat: "Mihi eadem adversus Rōmānos est fortuna quae Herculi adversus hydram." 2. Pyrrhō obviam ivit Laevinus cum tot militibus quot in priore proelio habuerat. 3. Senātus ad regem in Campāniam de redimendis captivis legatos misit. 4. His legatis honorifice exceptis, dixit se sine pretio captivos esse redditurum. 5. Liberālitās Pyrrhī nōn minor virtūte erat. 6. Si captivos sine pretio reddat, Rōmāni liberālitatem cōgnoscant.

1. Night having put an end to the battle,¹ the king hastened by forced marches into Campania. 2. Then the consul, when he learned of this,² went to meet him with a fresh army. 3. When he saw the new army,³ he said that his fortune against the Romans was more wretched than (that) of Hercules against the hydra. 4. He said that he had returned the captives without price, in order that the Romans might come to know his liberality.

(a) Observe the following words and expressions used in the foregoing lessons:—

sē recipere; *sē inferre*; *eō, ire*; *prōcēdō*; *dēmigrō*; *contendō*; *properō*; *appropinquō*; *veniō*.

Also the following: *sciō*; *agnōscō*; *cōgnōscō*.

¹ Literally, *an end having been given to the battle by night*.

² Cf. 98.

³ Ablative Absolute.

LESSON LXXVIII

258. Erat Pyrrhus mīti ac plācābili animō; solet enim māgnī animī comes esse clēmentia. Ēius hūmānitātem expertī sunt Tarentīnī. Quī cum sērō intellēxissent sē prō sociō dominum accēpisse, sortem suam miserābantur idque aliquantō liberior, ubi vīnō incaluerant. Neque deerant, quī ad Pyrrhum dēferrent; arcessītque nōnnūllī, quod inter convīvium parum honōrificē dē rēge locūtī essent; sed perīculum simplex cōfessio culpae discussit. Nam cum rēx percontātus esset, num ea, quae pervēnissent ad aurēs suās, dīxissent; “Et haec dīximus,” inquit, “rēx, et nisi vīnum dēfēcisset, multō plūra et graviōra dictūrī fuimus.” Pyrrhus, quī mālēbat vīnī quam hominum eam culpam vidērī, subridēns eōs dīmisit.

NOTES

259. Decline mīti and plācābili (188 (a)). Compare mītis. — animō: Rule XXIII. — solet: principal parts. What kind of a verb (191, n. on ausae sunt)? Observe the inverted arrangement of words here. — Quī cum sērō intellēxissent, and when too late they had found out, etc. Compare sērō. — Why are sē and suam used here rather than eōs and eōrum, and why ēius, in the preceding sentence, rather than suam? — miserābantur, were bewailing. Notice the force of the Imperfect Tense here. The Imperfect is used to denote continued, repeated, or customary action. — idque, and that too. — aliquantō liberior, somewhat too freely (231 (d)). — incaluerant is from incalēscō, an Inceptive verb. All Inceptives end in -scō, but the sc is found only in the parts formed from the present stem. They are of the 3d Conjugation, and are called Inceptive because they denote the beginning of an action. For example, caleō means to be warm; calēscō, to grow warm. — vīnō incaluerant, had become heated with wine.

if understood, the antecedent of **quī**, is the subject of **deerant**. — **dēferrent**, Subjunctive in a relative result clause, *there were not lacking persons to report*. Principal parts, and synopsis of the mode. — **arcessitī**: supply **sunt**. Notice that this verb forms the perfect and supine stems after the analogy of the 4th Conjugation. Cf. **accitus est** (208). — **parum honorificē**, *with too little respect*. Compare **parum** (244 (e)). — **locūtī essent**, Subjunctive in implied indirect discourse; *they had spoken* (as was alleged) (247 (b)). — **periculum**: the danger they would be in from giving offense to the king. — For declension of **simplex**, cf. 253 (a). — **ea**, object of **dixissent**. How does **ea** differ from the Abl. sing. fem.? — **pervēnissent**, Subjunctive, because it is a part of the inquiry of the king, and hence it is not the expression of the thought of the writer, but of the king (247 (b)). — **dixissent**, indirect question introduced by **num**. Rule XXXIV. — To whom does **suās** refer? Why is it feminine plural? — **et** (*haec*) . . . **et** (*nisi*), *both . . . and*. — **nisi vinum dēfēcisset**, *if the wine had not given out* (253. III). — Compare **multō**, **plūra**, and **graviōra**. — **dictūrī fuimus**, the Perf. Ind. of the Act. Periphrastic Conjugation (213 (a)); *we should have said*. Used instead of **dixissēmus**.

plūra and **graviōra** are adjectives used alone in the plural as nouns; *many more and severer things*. **plūs** is declined:—

SINGULAR			PLURAL	
	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	—	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
Gen.	—	plūris		plūrium
Dat.	—	—		plūribus
Acc.	—	plūs	plūrēs (-is)	plūra
Abl.	—	—		plūribus

mālēbat, from **mālō**; compounded of **magis**, *rather*, and **volō**, *to wish*. — **vinī** and **hominum** limit **culpam**. **eam** is the subject of **vidērī**, and **culpam** is the Predicate Accusative. — Compare **sērō**, **liberius**, **parum**, **plūra**, **multō**, and **graviōra**. — Give the Comparative of **simplex** and **placābili**. — Form adverbs from **simplex** and **graviōra**, and compare them.

260. *Translate at sight:—*

1. Tarentīnī, cum sērō vīdissent Pyrrhum prō sociō dominum esse, nōn aegritūdinem animī dissimulābant. 2. Pyrrhus vir inclitā clēmentīā et hūmānitāte erat. 3. Nōnnūllī ad Pyrrhum dētulērunt quae dē eō Tarentīnī locūtī essent. 4. Sortem suam miserābantur quod prō sociō dominum accēpissent. 5. Nōnnūllī aliquantō liberius inter convīvium dē Pyrrhō locūtī erant. 6. “Num ea, quae pervēnērunt ad aurēs meās, dīxistī?” “Vīnō incaluimus,” inquit, “ubi haec gravissima dīximus.” Cum vīnī ea culpa viderētur, subridēns eōs dīmīsit.

1. Pyrrhus had¹ a more conciliatory spirit than the Romans, for he returned the captive Romans without a price. 2. They had spoken with too little respect of the king when they were heated with wine. 3. Therefore, he summoned them and inquired whether they had said these things. 4. He said that he preferred that it should seem (to be) the fault of the wine rather than of the men. 5. If the wine should give out, we should not say much more.



LESSON LXXIX

261. Pyrrhus igitur cum putāret sibi glōriōsum fore, pācem et foedus cum Rōmānīs post victōriam facere, Rōmam mīsit lēgātum Cīneam, quī pācem aequīs condiōnibus prōpōneret. Erat is rēgī familiāris multumque apud eum

¹ Literally, *was of a more conciliatory, etc.*

grātiā valēbat. Dicere solēbat Pyrrhus sē plūrēs urbēs Cineae eloquentiā quam vī et armīs expūgnāsse. Cineās tamen rēgis cupiditatem nōn adūlābātur; nam cum in sermōne Pyrrhus eī cōnsilia sua aperiret dīxissetque sē velle Itāliam diciōnī suae subicere, Cineās “Superātis Rōmānis,” inquit, “quid agere dēstinās, ō rēx?”

NOTES

262. The order is, **igitur cum Pyrrhus putāret**, etc. **igitur** usually stands second in its clause. — **cum** is causal here; *since*. — Form an adverb from **glōriōsus**, and compare both adjective and adverb. — **fore** is an old form, equivalent to **futūrum esse**. Cf. **foret** (169). The subject of **fore** is the clause **pācem . . . facere**, and **glōriōsum** agrees with this subject. *A clause used substantively always takes its adjective in the neuter.* — **Rōmam**: Rule XXX. — **quī . . . prōpōneret** a relative purpose clause, and hence its verb is in the Subjunctive; *sent Cineas to offer peace*, etc. What is the rule for the tense of **prōpōneret**? — **condiciōnibus**: Rule XIX. — **multumque . . . valēbat**, and had much influence with him on account of his esteem (for him), i.e. the esteem of Pyrrhus for Cineas.

rēgī is in the Dative, limiting the adjective **familiāris**. Cf. **mātrī simillimus** (143).

Rule. — *Adjectives of NEARNESS, FRIENDLINESS, FITNESS, LIKENESS, or their opposites, take the Dative of the object to which the quality is directed.*

vī et armīs, *by force of arms*; literally, *by force and arms*. This illustrates the figure of speech called *Hendiadys*, in which two nouns connected by a copulative conjunction are used instead of one noun and an adjective or limiting Genitive. Decline **vī** (116 (b)). — **tamen**: although Cineas was an intimate friend of the king, nevertheless he did not flatter him. — **Cineās** (before **superātis**) is the subject of **inquit**. — Learn the inflection of **volō**,

I am willing; nōlō (= nōn + volō), I am unwilling; and mālō (= magis + volō), I wish rather. Appendix, 9.

(a) Besides interrogative pronouns, adjectives, and adverbs, there are three interrogative particles used in asking questions, — **ne**, **nōnne**, and **num**. **-ne** is an enclitic, usually affixed to the emphatic word of the sentence.

-ne asks for information; as, **venitne?** *is he coming?*

nōnne expects the answer *yes*; as, **nōnne venit?** *is he not coming?*

num expects the answer *no*; as, **num venit?** *is he coming? = he is not coming, is he?*

263. Translate at sight:—

1. Pyrrhusne Rōmam lēgātum mīsīt quī pācem et foedus cum Rōmānīs faceret? 2. Eī glōriōsum erit pācem aequīs condiciōnibus facere. 3. Nōnne Cīneās rēgī familiāris fuit? 4. Num Pyrrhus sē mālle Cīneae ēloquentiam audīre dicebat quam Ītaliā dīciōnī suae subicere? 5. Pyrrhus dixit sē velle plūrimās urbēs vī et armīs expūgnāre. 6. Nōnne Pyrrhus in sermōne Cīneae cōnsilia sua aperuit?

1. Pyrrhus thought that it would be glorious for him to offer peace on equal terms. 2. Did the king send an envoy to Rome to offer peace and alliance with the Romans? 3. Did not Cineas inquire what the king intended to do when the Romans were overcome? 4. "I wish," said he, "to subject all Italy to my sway." 5. Did Pyrrhus capture the cities by force of arms?

(a) Observe the following:—

glōria, *glory*; **glōrior**, *-ārī*, *to glory*; **glōriātiō**, *-ōnis*, *a glorying*; **glōriōsus**, *full of glory*; **glōriōsē**, *gloriously*; **glōriōla**, *a little glory*.

grātus, *pleasing*; **grātia**, *favor*; **grātē**, *with pleasure*; **grātis**, *through favor*; **grātuitō**, *without pay, as a favor*; **grātiōsus**, *full of favor*; **grātulor**, **-ārī**, *to manifest joy*; **grātulātiō**, *a manifestation of joy*; **grātificor**, **-ārī**, *to do a favor*.

Observe that nouns in **-iō** are abstracts, and that adjectives in **-ōsus** denote fulness.



LESSON LXXX

264. “*Ītalīae vīcīna est Sicilia*,” inquit Pyrrhus, “*nec difficile erit eam armīs occupāre*.” Tunc Cīneās: “*Occupātā Siciliā, quid postea āctūrus es?*” Rēx, quī nōndum Cīneae mentem perspiciebāt, “*In Āfricam*,” inquit, “*trāicere mihi in animō est*.” Cū ille: “*Quid deinde, ō rēx?*” “*Tum dēnique, mī Cīneās*,” inquit Pyrrhus, “*nōs quiētī dabimus dulcīque ōtiō fruēmur*.” Tum Cīneās: “*At quid impedit, quōminus istō ōtiō iam nunc fruāris?*”

Rōmam cum vēnisset Cīneās, domōs prīncipum cum ingentibus dōnīs circumībat. Nūsqum vērō receptus est. Nōn ā virīs solum, sed etiam ā mulieribus sprēta eius mūnera.

NOTES

265. *Ītalīae*, Dat. after *vīcīna*. Rule XIV. — *nec* = *et nōn*. — *Cīneās*, *ille*, and *Cīneās* following *tum*, are subjects of *dixit* understood. — *mentem*, *the purpose* (of Cineas). — *mihi*, Dat. of possessor; *it is to me in mind* = *I intend*. In *Āfricam trāicere* is the subject of *est*. Decline *mihi*. — *Quid deinde*, *what next?* — *mī*, Voc. sing. masc. of *meus*, **-a**, **-um**. It is declined like *bonus*, except that it has *mī* in the Voc. sing. masc. — *nōs* is the object of *dabimus*; *we will give ourselves*, etc. — *dulcī*: decline and compare. — *ōtiō*: Rule XXVI.

istō is a demonstrative pronoun, from **iste, ista, istud**. As **hic** has been called the demonstrative of the 1st person (116 (a)), and **ille** the demonstrative of the 3d person (182 (a)), so **iste** may be called the demonstrative of the 2d person, because it refers to that which is related to the person spoken to. It means *that of yours*, or *that which you are speaking of* or *are interested in*. **istō ōtiō** = *that ease which you are speaking of*. **iste** is declined like **ille** (182 (a)).

frūāris: Rule XXXII.—**iam nunc**, *just now, at once*.—**domōs** is the direct object of **circumfābat**, and is thus declined:—

(a)	SINGULAR	PLURAL
N. V.	dōmus	dōmūs
Gen.	dōmūs (Loc. dōmī or dōmūī)	domōrum (dōmuum)
Dat.	dōmūī (dōmō)	dōmibus
Acc.	dōmum	dōmōs or dōmūs
Abl.	dōmō (dōmū)	domibus

A part of these forms, as will be seen, are from a stem in -u of the 4th Declension, and a part from a stem in -o of the 2d Declension.

circumfābat, Impf. of **circumeō** = **circum** (*around*) + **eō** (*to go*) (176 (a)).—**Nōn solum . . . sed etiam**, *not only . . . but even*.—**sprēta**, from **spērno**. **sunt** is to be supplied.

266. Translate at sight:—

1. Pyrrhus dicere solēbat nōn difficile futūrum esse Siciliam armīs occupāre. 2. Multō difficilior erat Rōmānōs superāre. 3. Occupātā Sicilia, in Āfricam trāicere Pyrrhō in animō fuit. 4. Dēnique dēstinābat sē quiētī dare dulcēque ōtiō fruī. 5. “Num in Āfricam,” inquit Cīneās, “trāicere tibi¹ in animō est?” 6. “At quid impedit, quōminus in Āfricam iam nunc trāiciās?” 7. Si Pyrrhus Rōmānōs superāvisset, Siciliam occupāvisset. 8. Si Siciliam occupet,

¹ Dat. of tū, *you*.

in *Āfricam* statim trāiciat. 9. Dulcius est ōtiō fruī quam cum Rōmānīs dīmicāre.

1. Since Sicily is near Italy, it will not be difficult to take possession of it with arms. 2. If Sicily is taken¹ possession of, we will cross into Africa. 3. If (our) enemies should be overcome, we should enjoy the victory. 4. Did the king perceive the purpose of Cineas? 5. Did Cineas come to Rome in order to visit the houses of the chief-men with great gifts? 6. Cineas, however, was a man of great eloquence.

Observe the following English derivatives:—

<i>vicinity</i>	<i>perspicuity</i>	<i>impede</i>
<i>occupation</i>	<i>dulcet</i>	<i>donor</i>
<i>activity</i>	<i>fruition</i>	<i>remunerate</i>

Form English derivatives from the following Latin words: *clēmētia*, *experti*, *intellegō*, *convivium*, *dēfēcisset*, *foedus*, *prōpōnō*, *cupiditās*, *subicere*, *quies*.

REVIEW QUESTIONS

How are adverbs formed from adjectives? How is the Comparative of adverbs formed? the Superlative? Explain the use of *suus*. When is it used rather than *ēius* or *eōrum*? What three words are used to mean army? Give the different meanings. What construction follows verbs of *asking*, *teaching*, etc.? Give an example. How is a relative pronoun to be translated when it stands first in a sentence? What is the general rule for modes in *Indirect Discourse*? Give different Latin expressions, meaning *to fight*, *to kill*. Give ordinal numerals for 2, 5, 10, 20, 30. Give

¹ 253 (A) II.

the three forms of conditional sentences, and tell how each is expressed in Latin. What is a semi-deponent verb? Give an example. What is an inceptive verb? How are inceptive verbs formed? In what conjugation are they? What parts of *plūs* are wanting? What is hendiadys? Composition of *nōlō* and *mālō*? Give the principal parts and the synopsis of the Indicative and Subjunctive. Give the three interrogative particles and the use of each. What difference in the meaning of *hic*, *ille* and *iste*?



LESSON LXXXI

267. Intrōductus deinde in cūriam cum rēgis virtutem prōpēnsūque in Rōmānōs animum verbis extolleret et dē condiōnū aequitāte dissereret et sententia senātūs ad pācem et foedus faciendū inclināre vidērētur, tum Appius Claudius, ob senectutem et caecitatem abstinere cūriā ōlim solitus, cōnfestim in senātū lecticā dēferri sē iussit ibique gravissimā ōrātiōne pācem dissuāsīt, itaque respōnsū Pyrrhō ā senātū est, eum, dōnec Italiā excēssisset, pācem cum Rōmānīs habere nōn posse.

NOTES

268. Let the student first read this long sentence through in the Latin, carrying the meaning along in his mind as he proceeds. It will thus present itself to him in about this form:—

“Conducted next into the senate-house, when the king’s high character and kindly towards the Romans feeling with words he praised, and about the fairness of terms he discoursed, and the sentiment of the senate towards the making of peace and a treaty to incline seemed, then Appius Claudius on account of age and blindness to stay away from the senate-house for some time being

accustomed, immediately into the senate on a litter to be carried himself he ordered, and there in a most earnest speech, peace he advised against, and so it was replied to Pyrrhus by the senate, him, until from Italy he had withdrawn, peace with the Romans to have not to be able."

This does not give an idiomatic English sentence, it is true, but it does give an idea of the Latin mode of expression, and, if the sentence be read through in this way with proper emphasis, the meaning will be sufficiently clear. It may then undergo such modifications as may be necessary to convert it into the English idiom.

faciendum, a Gerundive to be taken with **pācem** and **foedus**, but agreeing in gender with the nearest noun, **foedus**. — **cūriā**: Rule XX. — **cōnfēstim**, *right away*. Used properly of something to be done with rapidity. Cf. 200.

The **lectīca** was a kind of litter, used sometimes for carrying dead bodies to the grave, sometimes for conveying persons feeble from age or disease, or those disabled by wounds received in battle. In later times, the **lectīca** was used by the wealthy for traveling, and was often fitted up in expensive style.

respōsum est, *reply was made to Pyrrhus by the senate*. — **Ītaliā**: Rule XX. — **excēssisset**, Plupf. Subj. (247 (a)). The principal verb in the *indirect discourse* here is **posse**, depending upon **respōsum est**.

269. *Translate at sight:—*

1. Cīneās deinde in cūriam intrōductus est. 2. Cum Cīneās putāret sententiam senātūs ad pācem et foedus faciendum inclināre vidērī, tum Appius Claudius pācem dissuāsīt. 3. Pyrrhus, vir mītī et plācābilī animō, Rōmam mīsīt Cīneam, quī pācem cum Rōmānīs faceret. 4. Pyrrhus, dōnec Ītaliā excēsserit, pācem cum Rōmānīs habēre nōn potest. 5. Num Pyrrhus Ītaliā excēssit? 6. Respōsum ei ā Rōmānīs est, sē pācem nōn factūrōs esse. 7. Nōnne Rōmānī pācem cum Ēpīrī rēge fēcērunt?

In the senate Cineas was extolling with his words the high character of Pyrrhus. The sentiment of the senate inclined towards making peace and a treaty. The old age and blindness of Appius Claudius prevented him from going to the senate. And so he ordered himself to be carried to the senate at once on a litter. In a very earnest speech he said that the Romans would not make peace with Pyrrhus until he had withdrawn from Italy.



LESSON LXXXII

270. Praetereā Rōmānī captīvōs omnēs, quōs Pyrrhus reddiderat, infāmēs habērī iūssērunt, quod armātī capī potuissent, neque ante eōs ad veterem statum revertī quam sī binūm hostium occīsōrum spolia rettulissent. Ita lēgātus ad rēgem revertit; ā quō cum Pyrrhus quaereret, quālem Rōmam comperisset, Cīneās respondit urbem sibi templum, senātum vērō cōnsessum rēgum esse vīsum.

NOTES

271. *captīvōs*, subject of *habērī*. — *infāmēs*, predicate adj., after *habērī*. Decline *infāmis*. — *armātī*, an adj. agreeing with the subject of *potuissent*; *because they had allowed themselves to be captured with arms in their hands*. — *potuissent* is in the Subj. in implied Indirect Discourse. The reason given in *quod . . . potuissent* is not the reason of the writer, but of the Romans (**247 (b)**). — *neque* = *and not*. Same as *nec*. — *revertī* depends upon *iūssērunt*, like *habērī*. *And that they should not return to their former condition before they had brought back, etc.* — *ante* + *quam* = *before that*. — *sī* is redundant here, and may be omitted without

changing the sense. — **bīnūm**, contracted form for **bīnōrum**. It is a Distributive Numeral, meaning *two each*, i.e. *the spoils of two enemies slain by each*. — Synopsis of **rettulissent** in the Subj. Act. — **ā quō cum**: Cf. **quī cum** and **quōs cum** in former passages. When *Pyrrhus inquired of him*, etc. — **quālem Rōmam comperisset**, *what kind of a Rome he had found*. The verb is in the Subj., by Rule XXXIV. — **sibi** depends upon **vīsum esse**. — **urbem** and **senātum** are the subjects of **vīsum esse**, and **templum** and **cōnsessum** are predicate Accusatives.

272. Translate at sight:—

1. Rōmānī dīxērunt captīvōs omnēs, quōs Pyrrhus reddidisset, infāmēs habērī. 2. Rōmānī sē dēfendere nōn poterant. 3. Ita senātus eōs ad rēgem revertī iūssit. 4. Nōn ad veterem statum revertērunt quod armātī capī potuerant. 5. Cum ā lēgātō rēx quaereret quid Rōmānī fierī¹ iūssissent, Cīneās respondit, senātum captīvōs bīnūm hostium occīsōrum spolia referre iūssisse. 6. Urbs lēgātō templum, senātus vērō cōnsessus rēgum vidēbātur.

1. They considered those whom Pyrrhus had taken with arms in their hands, as infamous. 2. And so the reply was made to the envoy by the senate, that the captives could not return to their former condition. 3. They said that they would bring back the spoils of the enemies (who had been) slain. 4. Pyrrhus asked his envoy what kind of a senate he had found at Rome.²

Observe the following:—

ōs, **ōris**, *the mouth*; **ōrō**, **-āre**, *to speak*; **ōrātor**, *one who speaks*; **ōrātiō**, *a speech*; **ōsculum**, *a little mouth, a kiss*; **adōrō**, **-āre**, *to call upon, to reverence*; **ōstium**, *a door, an entrance*.

¹ *To be done.*

² *Rōmae.*

LESSON LXXXIII

Paulus Æmilius and Terentius Varro

273. Hannibal in Āpūliam pervēnerat. Adversus eum Rōmā profecti sunt duo cōsulēs, Paulus Æmilius et Terentius Varrō. Paulō Fabī cunctātiō magis placēbat; Varrō autem ferōx et temerārius, ācriōra sequēbātur cōsilia. 216 Ambō cōsulēs ad vicum, quī Cannae appellābātur, B.C. castra commūniverunt. Ibi deinde Varrō invītō cōlīgā aciem instrūxit et sīgnum pūgnæ dedit, Hannibal autem ita cōstituerat aciem, ut Rōmānīs et sōlis radii et ventus ab oriente pulverem adflāns adversi essent. Victus caesusque est Rōmānus exercitus; nūquam graviōre vulnere adflīcta est rēs pūblica.

NOTES

274. Hannibal came into Italy from the north over the Alps. After defeating the Romans in several engagements, he led his army down into Apulia in southeastern Italy. Here, near the little hamlet of Cannae, on the banks of the Aufidus, he again met the Roman forces and inflicted upon them the most crushing defeat that Rome had ever experienced.

Rōmā: Rule XXX.

Paulō, Dat. after placēbat.

Rule. — *Many verbs signifying to FAVOR, PLEASE, TRUST, OBEY, and their contraries, to COMMAND, RESIST, PERSUADE, THREATEN, and BE ANGRY, and the like, are followed by the Dative.*

Fabī, Gen. of Fabius. Fabius Maximus was made commander of the Roman forces after the defeat at Trasumenus and before the battle of Cannae. His policy was to watch the movements of

the enemy, hang upon his flanks and rear, cut off his supplies, and harass him in all possible ways without permitting himself to be drawn into any general action. Hence he was called **cunctātor**, or the Lingerer. — **ācriōra cōnsilia**, *more vigorous counsels*. — **Ambō**, decline like **duo** (198 (a)). — **invītō conlēgā**, *his colleague being unwilling = against the wish of his colleague*. Paulus favored the policy of Fabius and wished to avoid a battle with Hannibal until he could choose his time and place. Varro, on the contrary, was eager for a battle. — **ita . . . ut**, *so stationed his army that, etc.* **ut** introduces a result clause.

Rōmānīs, Dat. after **adversī**: *opposed to the Romans = in the face of the Romans*. Rule XIV. — **et . . . et**, *both . . . and*. — **rēs pūblica**, sometimes written as one word, **rēspūblica**, both parts being declined; Gen. and Dat. **reīspūblicae**; Acc. **rempūblicam**, etc. — **temerārius** has no terminational comparison. How may it be compared? — Decline **ferōx** and **ācriōra**. Compare **ferōx**, **ācriōra**, and **graviōre**. Form adverbs from the positive of these adjectives and compare them. 244. — What is the Superlative of **magis**?

275. Translate at sight:—

1. Cum Hannibal in Āpūliam pervēnisset, adversus eum Rōmānī duo cōsulēs mīsērunt. 2. Dīcunt Fabī cunctātiōnem Paulō placēre. 3. Uter ācriōra cōnsilia sequēbātur? Nōnne erat Varrō ferōx et temerārius? 4. Ab ambōbus cōsulibus commūnīta sunt castra. 5. Vicus, ad quem castra posuerant, Cannae appellābātur. 6. Ibi deinde Varrō, invītō Paulō, pūgnam cōnseruit. 7. Tum sīgnō datō Hannibal ad certāmen prōcēssit. 8. Cum Rōmānīs sōlis radiī adversī essent, Hannibal cōsulūm exercitū facile vīcit. 9. Nūsquam rēs pūblica graviōra vulnēra accēpit.

Hannibal came into Italy and joined battle with the Romans at Cannae, a hamlet in Apulia. The Romans were

led by the two consuls, Paulus and Varro. Paulus was very similar to Fabius, and delay was pleasing to him. But Varro was rash and wished to fight with the enemy immediately. Hannibal drew up his line in such-a-way¹ that the wind blowing the dust from the east was in the face of the Romans. Varro was more imprudent than Paulus.



LESSON LXXXIV

276. Paulus Aemilius tēlis obrutus cecidit; quem cum mediā in pūgnā sedentem in saxō opplētum cruōre conspexisset quidam tribūnus militum, "Cape," inquit, "hunc equum et fuge, Aemilī. Etiam sine tuā morte lacrimārum satis lūctūsque est." Ad ea cōsul; "Tū quidem mācte virtūte estō! Sed cavē, exiguum tempus ē manibus hostium ēvādendī perdās! Abī, nūntiā patribus, ut urbem mūniant ac priusquam hostis victor adveniat, praesidiis firment. Mē in hāc strāge meōrum militum patere expīrāre." Alter cōsul cum paucīs equitibus Venusiam perfūgit. Cōsulārēs aut praetōriī occidērunt vīginti, senātōrēs captī aut occīsī trīgintā, nōbilēs virī trecentī, militum quadrāgintā milia, equitum tria milia et quīngentī.

NOTES

277. obrutus: cf. **Tatius scūtis eam obrufiūssit**, Lesson LI. — Principal parts of **cadō** and **caedō**. — **mediā in pūgnā**, *in the midst of the battle*. Monosyllabic prepositions are often placed between the noun and the adjective. — **sedentem** and **opplētum**

¹ Ita.

agree with **quem**, which is the object of **cōspexisset**. — **quīdam** is declined like **quī**, **quae**, **quod**, except that **m** is changed to **n** before **d**; as, **quendam** for **quemdam**. The neuter sometimes has **quiddam** for **quoddam**. Write the declension. — **tribūnus mīlitum**: the Roman legion had six of these tribunes of the soldiers, or military tribunes, each of whom commanded it for two months of the year. — **Cape** and **fuge** are in the Pres. Imperative Act. 2d sing. This form of the verb is the same as the pres. stem. For example, **amā**, **monē**, **rege**, **audi**, are the Imperatives of **amō**, **moneō**, **regō**, and **audiō**. The Pres. Imperative Act. may be found by dropping **-re** of the Pres. Inf. Act. The Imperative has two tenses, — the Pres. and Fut. Learn the inflection of the Imperative Act. and Pass. as given in the Appendix, 1-4.

Notice that the Pres. Imperative Pass. has the same form as the Pres. Inf. Act.

(a) The Imperatives of **dīcō**, **dūcō**, **faciō**, and **ferō** drop the final **e** of the stem in the 2d sing.; thus, **dīc**, **dūc**, **fac**, and **fer**. — **tuā**: decline like **bonus**. — **lacrimārum** and **lūctūs** are Genitives limiting **satis**; *there is enough of tears and grief*. — Supply **dixit** with **cōsul**.

(b) **tū** is the personal pronoun of the 2d person. Learn its inflection; Appendix, 13.

mācte virtūte estō, is an idiomatic expression, equivalent to the English *Heaven speed thee!* *Good luck attend thee!* or *Well done!* **estō** is the Fut. Imperative of **sum**.

(c) Learn the inflection of the Imperative of **sum**; Appendix, 6. **cavē**, inflect the Imper. — **ēvādendī**, the Gen. sing. of the Gerund limiting **tempus**; *time for escaping*. In what cases is the Gerund used? Has it any plural? See 119 n. on **vēnandō**. — **perdās**, Pres. Subj. after **nē**, lest, omitted after **cavē**. **Nē** is often omitted before an object clause after **cavē**; *beware of losing*, etc. — **Abī**, Imper. of **abeō** = **ab** + **eō**; *depart*.

(d) Learn the inflection of the Imperative of **eō**; Appendix, 11. **nūntiā**, Imper. of **nūntiō**. Inflect the Pres. and Fut. of the Imper., both voices. Notice the omission of the connective **be-**

tween **abi** and **nūtiā**. — **ut mūniant**, literally, *that they should fortify*; better rendered, *to fortify*. — **victor**, a noun with the force of an adj. Cf. (153 (a)), n. on **victor auguriō**. Translate, *before the enemy shall arrive victorious*. — **adveniat** is in the Subj. in a subordinate clause in Indirect Discourse. Rule XXXV. **nūtiā** is the verb of *saying* that introduces the Indirect Discourse. — **firment**, Pres. Subj., connected to **mūniant** by **et** understood. Give the synopsis of **mūniant**, **adveniat**, and **firment**, in the Subj. — **Mē**, subject of **expirāre**. Decline it (App. 13). — **patere**, the Imper. of the deponent verb **patior**; Passive in form, but Active in meaning; *allow me*, etc. Inflect it like the Passive of **capiō**, Appendix, 5. — **Alter** = *the other*, when two are spoken of; **alius**, *another*, when more than two are spoken of.

Venusiam: Rule, XXX. — *Ex-consuls or ex-praetors there perished twenty, senators captured or slain thirty, noblemen three hundred, of soldiers forty thousand, of knights three thousand and five hundred.* — The **equitēs** were those who served on horseback, *the knights*. — **mille**, *a thousand*, is indeclinable in the sing. In the plu. it has **milia**, **mīlium**, **mīlibus**, etc. — Prin. parts of **occidērunt** and **occisi**.

(e) The first three cardinal numbers are declined, as we have seen (198 (a)). From four to one hundred inclusive, they are indeclinable. From two hundred to nine hundred inclusive, they are declined in the plu., like the plu. of **bonus**. — **militum** and **equitum** are Partitive Genitives after **milia**; the sing. **mille** does not usually take the Genitive.

Alter is declined as follows : —

SINGULAR			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	alter	altera	alterum
Gen.	altérius	altérius	altérius
Dat.	alterī	alterī	alterī
Acc.	alterum	alterum	alterum
Abl.	alterō	alterā	alterō

The plural is declined like the plural of **bonus**.

278. *Translate at sight:—*

1. Haud grāta Varrōnī erat Fabī cunctātiō. 2. Multī Rōmānī tēlis obrutī cecidērunt. 3. Quīdam tribūnus mīlitum Paulum mediā in pūgnā sedentem in saxō cōspexit. 4. Quīdam Paulō dixit, sine ēius morte lacrimārum satis lūctūsque esse. 5. Cavēte, hostēs ē manibus cōsulum ēvādant.. 6. Priusquam hostis advēnerit, firmāte urbem praesidiīs. 7. Paulus fortissimē dīmicāns cecidit, sed Varrō Venusiam perfūgit. 8. Abīte, urbem mūnīte, praesidiīs firmāte.

1. "Take this horse, Aemilius," said a certain tribune of the soldiers, "and escape from the hands of the enemy." 2. Beware of taking refuge in the city, with a few soldiers. 3. Announce to the ex-consuls that they should flee immediately from the city. 4. Allow me to depart and to return to Rome. 5. The soldiers of Hannibal were fiercer than (those)¹ of the Romans. 6. Behold the victorious enemy: flee-for-refuge to Rome; draw up the line of battle.



LESSON LXXXV



ANULUS

279. Hannibal in tēstimōnium victōriae suae trēs modiōs aureōrum ānulōrum Carthāginem mīsit, quōs dē manibus equitum Rōmānōrum et senātōrum dētrāxerat.

Hannibalī victōrī cum cēterī grātulārentur suādērentque ut quīetē iam ipse sūmeret et fessīs mīlitibus daret, ūnus ex ēius prae-

¹ Omit.

fectis, Maharbal, minimē cēssandum ratus, Hannibalem hortābātur, ut statim Rōmam pergeret, diē quīntō victor in Capitoliō epulātūrus. Cumque Hannibal illud nōn probāset, Maharbal “Nōn omnia nīmīrum,” inquit, “eīdem diī dedēre. Vincere scīs, Hannibal; victōriā ūtī nescīs.” Mora hūius diēi satis crēditur salūti fuisse urbī et imperiō.

NOTES

280. in tēstimōnium victōriæ suæ, for a proof of his victory, i.e. to show how great the victory was. — **aureōrum ānulōrum**: cf. **aureōs ānulōs**, Lesson L. Only Romans of high rank were allowed by law to wear gold rings. — A **modius** was equal to nearly one peck. — **Carthāginem**: Rule XXX. Carthage was a city in northern Africa, near modern Tunis. It was the bitter enemy of Rome. — **Hannibal** is the Dat. after **grātulārentur** and **suādērent**, by Rule XII. — **victōrī**, victorious. — **ut . . . daret**: read in the order of the Latin words and the meaning will be apparent. *That rest now he himself should take and to the weary soldiers should give.* — **ex ēius præfectīs**, equivalent to a Gen. limiting **ūnus**; thus, **ūnus ēius præfectōrum** = *one of his commanders*. The Ablative with **ē** (**ex**) or **dē** is often used instead of the Partitive Genitive,¹ especially after cardinal numbers.

minimē cēssandum: Cf. **minimēque servīlem**, 140. Supply **esse** with **cēssandum**, making the Infinitive of the Pass. Periphrastic Conj. depending upon **ratus**; *thinking that it must by no means be delayed*, = *thinking that he must by no means delay*. Cf. 214. — **Rōmam**: Cf. **Carthāginem**, above. — Supply **et** before **diē quīntō**. — **diē**: Rule XXII. — **victor** agrees with a pronoun understood referring to Hannibal and the subject of **epulātūrus** (**esset**); *that he victorious*, etc. — **epulātūrus** (**esset**) is in the same construction as **pergeret**; the Impf. Subj. of the Act. Periphrastic

¹ That is, the Gen. denoting the whole, limiting a word denoting a part, as in **ūnus præfectōrum**, **ūnus** being a word denoting a part, and **præfectōrum** a word denoting the whole of which a part is taken.

Conj. Cf. 213. — *eīdem*, is the Dat. sing. after *dedēre*; *truly the gods have not given to the same one*, etc. — *dedēre*, the Perf. Ind. Act., 3d plu. of *dō*; *dedērunt* or *dedēre*. — Decline *dī* (205 (b)). — *scīs*, *you know how*, etc. — *victōriā*: Rule XXVI. — *salūtī* is the Dat. of the *end for which*, and *urbī* and *imperīō* are Datives of the *object to which*, after *satis fuisse*; *is believed to have been enough for safety to the city and empire*; i.e. *enough to make the city and empire safe*.

Rule. — *A few verbs admit two Datives, — one denoting the OBJECT TO WHICH, the other the END FOR WHICH anything is, or is done.*

Give the synopsis of *cēssandum esse* in the Ind. Mode, and of *epulātūrus esset* in the Subj.

281. *Translate at sight: —*

1. Aureōs ānulōs dē manibus equitum Rōmānōrum et senātorum Hannibal dētrāxit et Carthāginem mīsit. 2. Ūnus ex ēius militibus suāsīt nē quiētem fessīs hostibus daret. 3. Maharbal dixit Hannibalem statim Rōmam pergere posse. 4. Hannibal illud minimē probāvit, sed quiētem iam ipse sūmere voluit. 5. Quid diē quīntō victor in Capitōliō nōn epulābātur? 6. Cavē, Hannibal, quiētem sūmās nē deinde tē Rōmānī vincant. 7. Ūnus ē tribūnīs militum dīxit Hannibalem vincere scīre, victōriā ūtī nescīre.

1. The gold rings, which had been taken from the hands of the Roman knights, were sent to Carthage as a proof of the victory. 2. One of his commanders urged Hannibal not to delay at all, but to hasten to Rome at once. 3. Use your victory, Hannibal; send your army to Rome. 4. Hasten to Rome. 5. He said that on the fifth day he would banquet at Rome. 6. His friends were congratulating him because

he had conquered¹ the Roman army. 7. If you knew how to conquer, you would know how to use (your) victory.

Observe the following:—

probō, to approve; **probus**, worthy of approval, honest; **improbus**, unworthy of approval, base; **improbitās**, dishonesty; **comprobō**, to approve; **comprobātiō**, approbation; **probitās**, that which is approved, honesty; **probātiō**, approval; **improbō**, to disapprove; **approbō**, to approve; **approbātiō**, approbation.



LESSON LXXXVI

282. Hannibal cum victōriā posset ūti, fruī māluit, reliquāque Rōmā in Campāniam dēvertit, cūius dēliciis mox exercitūs ārdor ēlanguit; adeō ut vērē dictum sit Capuam Hannibālī Cannās fuisse. Numquam tantum pavōris Rōmæ fuit, quantum ubi acceptæ clādis nūntius advēnit. Neque tamen ūlla pācis mentiō facta est; quīn etiam animō cīvitās adeō magnō fuit, ut Varrōnī ex tantā clāde redeuntī obviam īrent et grātiās agerent, quod dē rē publicā nōn dēspērāsset; quī, sī Poenōrum dux fuisset, temeritātis poenās omnī suppliciō dedisset. Dum igitur Hannibal sēgniter et ōtiōsē agēbat, Rōmānī interim respirāre coepērunt.

NOTES

283. victōriā: Rule XXVI. — **posset:** give the synopsis of the Subj. and inflect this tense. — To what class of verbs do **ūti** and **fruī** belong? — **māluit**, prin. parts. Inflect the Pres. Ind., and give the synopsis of the Ind. See Appendix, 9. What is its com-

¹ Subjunctive (247 (b)).

position?—What is the antecedent of **cūius**? What is the gender of **cūius**, and why?—**dēliciis**: Rule XIX. — **adeō ut**, to such a degree that, etc.—**Capuam** the subject, and **Cannās** the predicate of **fuisse**. — **Rōmae**, at Rome.

Rule. — PLACE WHERE is expressed by the ABLATIVE WITH *in*; but names of TOWNS and SMALL ISLANDS are put in the LOCATIVE CASE, without a preposition.

(a) The Locative in the First and Second Declensions singular, has the same form as the Genitive; as, **Rōmae**, at Rome; **Corinthī**, at Corinth. In the Third Declension and in the plural number, the Locative has the form of the Dative or Ablative; as, **Athēnis**, at Athens (from **Athēnae**); **Cūribus**, at Cures (from **Cūrēs**, -ium). — **tantum . . . quantum**, so much . . . as. — **ubi acceptae clādis nūntius**, when the messenger of the disaster received, = when the tidings of the disaster that had befallen them, etc. — Give the Gen. and Dat. sing. of **illius**. What other words form the Gen. and Dat. in the same way? — **animō**: Rule XXIII. Translate: the state possessed such greatness of soul, etc. — **obviam irent**: Cf. **obviam vēnit**, 256; also 176 (a). — Observe the construction of **Pyrrhō** in 256, and apply the same rule to **Varrōnī**. — Why is **irent** Subjunctive? — **redeuntī**, Pres. Part., from **redeō**, agreeing with **Varrōnī**. It is inflected: —

Nom.	rédiēns
Gen.	redeúntis
Dat.	redeúntī , etc.

(b) **grātias agere** = to express gratitude, return thanks; **grātiām habēre** = to feel gratitude; **grātiām referre** = to show gratitude.

dēspērāset, Subj., because it is the reason, not of the writer, but of the citizens. Shortened form for **dēspērāvisset**. — Observe the number of **irent** and **agerent**. They are plural, because of the plural idea of **cīvitās**; the citizens of the state. Give the synopsis of the two verbs in the Ind. and Subj. active. — **Poenī**, the Carthaginians, so called from their supposed Phoenician origin.

—*omni supplicio*, with every kind of punishment. — *fuisse* and *dedisset* are in the Plupf. Subj. in a conditional sentence, in which the condition is contrary to fact in past time (253 (A) III). — *Dum . . . agēbat*, while therefore Hannibal was moving sluggishly and leisurely.

284. *Translate at sight:—*

1. Hannibal cum victoriā posset fruī, in Campāniam dē-
vertere māluit. 2. Campāniæ dēliciis exercitūs ārdor ēlan-
guēscēbat. 3. Capua Hannibalī Cannæ fuit. 4. Vērē dixit
Capuam Hannibalī Cannās fuisse. 5. Dixit numquam tantum
pavōris Rōmæ fuisse. 6. Rōmānī nūllam pācis mentiōnem
fēcērunt; quīn etiam Varrōnī ex tantā clāde redeuntī obviam
iērunt. 7. Sī Hannibal in Campāniam dēvertisset, mox
exercitūs ārdor ēlanguisset. 8. Eī grātiās ēgērunt quod
fortissimē dīmīcāvisset. 9. Sī Hannibal sēgniter et ōtiōsē
ēgisset, Rōmānī interim respirāre coepissent.

1. If he had preferred to leave Rome, there would not have
been so much terror in the city. 2. Although¹ great disaster
had befallen them, nevertheless they made no mention of
peace. 3. They went to meet Varro (as he was) returning
from the battle, and thanked him. 4. They said that they
thanked him because he had made no mention of peace.
5. If Hannibal had been the leader of the Romans, they
would have thanked him because he had conquered.

¹ Cum.



LESSON LXXXVII

285. Arma nōn erant; detracta sunt templis vetera hostium spolia. Deerat iuventus; servi manūmissi et armati sunt. Egēbat aerarium; opēs suās libēns senātus in medium prōtulit, nec praeter quod in bullis singulisque anulīs erat, quicquam sibi aurī reliquērunt. Patrum exemplum secuti sunt equitēs imitataeque equitēs omnēs tribūs. Dēnique vix sufficere tabulae, vix scribārum manūs, cum omnēs privātae opēs in publicum dēferrentur.

Cum Hannibal redimendi sui cōpiam captivīs Rōmānīs fecisset, decem ex ipsīs Rōmānī eā dē rē missi sunt; nec pignus aliud fidei ab iis pōstulātum est, quam ut iūrarent sē, si nōn impetrāssent, in castra esse reditūrōs.

NOTES

286. templis: Rule XX. — **vetera;** the Comparative of **vetus** is wanted, and is supplied by the Comparative of **vetustus**, *old*; **vetustior**. The Superlative is **veterrimus**. — **manūmissi:** observe the composition and literal meaning; **manus**, *the hand*, and **mittō**, *to let go, send*; hence, *to let go from the hand*. — **libēns** is an adjective used with the force of an adverb; *the senate willingly*. — **opēs** has no Nom. nor Dat. sing. — Why not **eōrum** instead of **suās**? — **prōtulit:** give synopsis of the Ind. — **praeter quod** = **praeter id** (*i.e. aurum*) **quod**, etc., *except the gold that was in the amulets and rings of each*. — **quicquam** is the neut. sing. of **quisquam**, which has no fem. and no plu. The first part only is declined, and it has the same forms as simple **quis**, except in the neut. where **quic** is usually found instead of **quid**. Decline it. — **quicquam aurī**, *anything of gold*, = *any gold*. — **Patrum** = **senātōrum**. For **senātōrēs** and **equitēs**, cf. Lessons LV and LVI. — **imitatē**, sc. **sunt**. The subject is **tribūs**, the object **equitēs**. — **tribus** was a division of the Roman people for political pur-

poses. Decline it. — **suffēcēre**, Perf. Ind. Act., 3d plu., **suffēcērunt** or **-ēre**. The records hardly gave room for entering an account of the contributions to the public treasury, and the force of clerks was hardly sufficient to do the work of recording. — **manūs**, *bands*, or *force of clerks*. — **in pūblicam dēferrentur**, *were turned over to public use*. — Cf. **in medium**, above. — **suī** is the Genitive plural of **sē**, but the Genitives **suī**, **vestrī**, and **nostrī** take the Genitive singular form of the Gerundive in **-ī** without regard to the gender or number of the pronoun. — **redimendī suī cōpiam**, = *a chance to ransom themselves*. — **decem ex ipsīs**, = *decem ipsōrum*, *ten of their number*. Cf. n. on **ūnus ex eius praefectīs**, 280. — **eā dē rē**, *i.e. about ransoming themselves*. — Decline **pīgnus**; **aliud** in the sing.; **fidelī**. — **fidelī**, *of good faith*. — **ut iūrarent**, a purpose clause in apposition with the subject of **pōstulātum est**. — Why is **sē** used rather than **eōs**? — **impetrāssent**, syncopated form for **impetrāvissent**. — **sē . . . reditūrōs**, is Indirect Discourse depending on **iūrarent**. In the direct form it would read: **Si nōn impetrāverimus in castra redībimus**.

287. *Translate at sight:—*

1. Cum Rōmānīs arma nōn essent, deōrum templīs veterima hostium spolia dētrāxērunt. 2. Si Rōmānīs arma fuissent, nōn dētrāxissent templīs hostium spolia. 3. Cum deesset iuvētūs, servōs manūmīsērunt et armāvērunt. 4. Dicunt opēs suās libentem senātum in medium prōferre, nec quicquam sibi aurī relinquere. 5. Dīxērunt sē equitum exemplum sequī. 6. Dīxērunt eōs equitum exemplum sequī. 7. Quid omnēs prīvātae opēs in pūblicum dēferēbantur? 8. Nōnne Hannibal redimendī suī cōpiam captīvīs Rōmānīs fēcit? 9. Iūrāvērunt autem sē in castra esse reditūrōs.

Why were the slaves freed and armed by the Romans? Because their youth had been slain in battle and soldiers

were wanting. They had no treasury, and¹ so the senators willingly brought forth their wealth for the public use. But the Romans said that they would not ransom those who had been captured with-arms-in-their-hands.² If Hannibal had not exacted any other pledge of good faith from them, they would have returned to the camp.



LESSON LXXXVIII

288. Eōs senātus nōn redimendōs cēnsuit responditque eōs cīvēs nōn esse necessāriōs, quī, cum armātī essent, capī potuissent. Ūnus ex eīs lēgātīs ē castrīs Poenōrum ēgressus, velutī aliquid oblitus, paulō post in castra erat regressus, deinde comitēs ante noctem adsecūtus erat.

Is ergō, rē nōn impetrātā, domum abiit. Reditū enim in castra sē liberātum esse iūreiūrandō interpretābātur. Quod ubi innōtuit, iūssit senātus illum comprehendī et vinctum dūcī ad Hannibalem. Ea rēs Hannibalis audāciam māximē frēgit, quod senātus populusque Rōmānus rēbus adflictīs tam excelsō esset animō.

NOTES

289. *redimendōs*, sc. *esse*; the Inf. of the 2d Periphrastic Conj. with *eōs* for the subject depending upon *cēnsuit* (214). — *esse* and *potuissent*: Rule XXXV. — *capī potuissent*, *could be captured*. Cf. *quod armātī capī potuissent* (270). — *Ūnus ex eīs lēgātīs*: Cf. *decem ex ipsīs* (286), and *ūnus ex eius prae-fectīs* (280). — *velutī*, *as if*; i.e. pretending that he had forgotten something. — *aliquid* is an indef. pron. and is thus declined: —

¹ *Itaque*.

² *Armātī*.

SINGULAR			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	álicuis (aliqui)	álicua	álicuid (aliquod)
Gen.	alicuius	alicuius	alicuius
Dat.	alicui	alicui	alicui
Acc.	áliquem	áliquam	álicuid (aliquod)
Abl.	álicuō	álicuā	álicuō
PLURAL			
Nom.	álicui	álicuæ	álicuā
Gen.	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
Dat.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
Acc.	álicuōs	álicuās	álicua
Abl.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

aliquis and aliquid are adjective forms; aliqui and aliquod, substantive. Observe the resemblance in the forms of aliquis and quis (134). aliquis has aliqua instead of aliquæ in the fem. sing. and neut. plu.—*rē nōn impetrātā*, the thing not being gained, i.e. the plan of having the prisoners ransomed not succeeding.—*domum*: Rule XXX.—*Reditū*, Abl. of means, modifying *liberātum esse*. Decline *reditū*.—*iūreiūrāndō*: Rule XX.—Decline it (202 (b)).—*Quod ubi innōtuit*, when this became known.—*Ea rēs*, this circumstance, i.e. the return of the soldier by the Roman senate.—*māximē frēgit*, especially overcame or broke down.—*rēbus afflictiis*, when their affairs were in a wretched condition. An Ablative Absolute, denoting time.—*excelsō animō*: Rule XXIII; were of so noble a spirit = showed so noble a spirit.—Why is *esset* in the Subjunctive?

290. Translate at sight:—

1. *II cīvēs nōn erant necessariī, quī armātī capī potuērunt.*
2. *Eōs, quī armātī captī sunt Rōmānī nōn redēmērunt.*
3. *Ūnus ex captīvis, cum ē castrīs Poenōrum ēgressus esset, dixit sē aliquid oblītum esse.*
4. *Si aliquid oblītus esset, in castra nōn esset regressus.*
5. *Dixit sē domum abire velle.*

6. Domum abiit, velutī reditū in castra liberātus est iūreiūrandō, sed senātus populusque Rōmānus tam excelsō erat animō, ut illum dūci ad Hannibalem iuberet.

When one of the soldiers had been captured with arms in his hands, the senate decided that he ought not to be ransomed. Therefore when he said that he was freed from his oath, the senate commanded that he be conducted to Hannibal. When this became known, Hannibal said that the Roman people showed a noble spirit. If the senate had not ordered him to be arrested, he would not have returned to the camp of the Carthaginians.

(a) Give English words suggested by the following: —
adversus, **ferōx**, **cōstituō**, **oriēns**, **pulvis**, **dētrahō**, **dēspērō**,
supplicium, **redimō**, **ēgredior**, **frangō**, **adveniō**, **decem**.

Study the following group of allied words: —

stō(āre), *to stand*; **astō** = **ad** + **stō**, *to stand near*; **cōnstō**, *to stand together, agree*; **abstō**, *to stand against, oppose*; **statuō**, *to cause to stand*; **statua**, *a statue*; **statiō** (ōnis), *a standing*; **stabulum**, *a standing place*; **stabilis**, *steadfast*; **stāgnūm**, *standing water*; **stabilitās**, *steadfastness*; **status**, *a station*.

REVIEW QUESTIONS

Give the Dative and Ablative of **ambō**; the Genitive plural of **quidam**. What cardinal numbers are declined? How is *place to which* expressed in Latin? *place where*? What cases have the same endings as the *Locative*? What case follows **obviam ire** and **obviam venire**? Give the Comparative of **vetus**; the Superlative. Give the Accusative singular, all genders, of **quisquam**. What peculiarity in the use of the Gerundive with the Genitive of the personal pronouns? What construction often takes the place of the limiting Genitive with cardinal numbers? Give an example.

THE LIFE OF TIMOLEON

CORNELIUS NEPOS

INTRODUCTORY NOTE

291. Timoleon was a native of Corinth, but he spent the greater part of his active life in Syracuse, which became his adopted city. He is generally recognized as one of the truly great characters of his age and race. He has sometimes been compared to Washington, and his political unselfishness, the purity of his public life, and his devotion to the interests of his country, make such a comparison most natural. He freed the Syracusans from the yoke of a cruel tyrant, reorganized the government and established it upon a firm foundation, and then laid down his power and lived for the rest of his life as a private citizen of the city he had served so well. At his death, in 336 B.C., the Syracusans mourned him with unaffected grief, and erected in their market-place a noble monument to his memory.

LESSON LXXXIX

292. Tīmoleōn Corinthius. Sine dubiō māgnus omnium iūdiō hīc vir exstitit. Namque huīc ūnī contigit, quod nesciō an ullī, ut et patriam, in quā erat nātus, oppressam ā tyrannō liberāret, et ā Syracūsānīs, quibus auxiliō erat missus, iam inveterātam servitūtem dēpelleret, tōtamque Siciliam, multōs annōs bellō vēxātam ā barbarīsque oppressam, suō adventū in prīstinum restitueret. Sed in hīs rēbus nōn simplicī fortūnā cōnflictātus est et, id quod difficilīus putātur, multō sapientius tulit secundam quam adversam fortūnam. Nam cum frāter eius Tīmophanēs dux ā Corinthiīs dēlēctus, tyrannidem per mīlites mercēnnāriōs occupās-

set particepsque regni posset esse, tantum affuit a societate sceleris, ut antetulerit civium suorum libertatem fratris salutis, et parere legibus quam imperare patriae satius duxerit.

NOTES

In the following lessons the student is referred for the meaning of words to the general vocabulary at the end of the volume.

293. Timoleon Corinthius is a sort of superscription, or announcement of the subject of the sketch. *Timoleon the Corinthian*. **Timoleon** is declined Nom. **Timoleon**, Gen. **Timoleon-tis**, etc.—**exstitit**, nearly equivalent to *fuit*; *stood forth, was*.—**Namque**, an emphatic *nam*; *for in fact*.—The antecedent of **quod** is *id* understood, the subject of **contigit**.—**quod nescio an illi**, sc. **contigerit**; *I know not whether it has happened to any one*. Decline **an** and **illi** in the sing.—**ut**, *namely that*, etc. The clause with **ut** extends to the end of the sentence, and is the real subject of **contigit**, or is in apposition with *id* understood, the subject of **contigit**. *Substantive Clauses of Result are used with verbs signifying IT HAPPENS, IT REMAINS, IT FOLLOWS, etc.*—**et . . . et (a Syracusanis)**, both . . . and.—**a** shows the relation between **Syracusanis** and **depelleret**.—**quibus auxilio**: Rule XIII.—**iam inveteratam**, *already of long standing*.—**anno**: Rule XVI.—**in pristinum**, *to its former condition*. Read this sentence through from beginning to end, following the order of the Latin, and then change it into good English. The tyrant mentioned in this sentence was Timophanes, a brother of Timoleon, who had established himself as ruler of Corinth, his native city.

non simpliciter fortuna, *not with simple fortune = with varying fortune*.—**secundam fortunam**, *prosperity*; **adversam fortunam**, *adversity*.—**tyrannidem occupasset**, *he had seized upon the tyranny, = he had made himself despotic ruler*.—**Timoleon** understood is the subject of **posset**; *and he might have been a partner in the government*.—**a societate sceleris**, *from a share in the crime*. So far was he from sharing in the crime, etc.—**legibus** and **patriae**, Rule XII.—**satius duxerit**, *he considered it better*.

294. Timoleon, the Corinthian, was undoubtedly a great man by the judgment of all. When he had freed his native country from the tyrant, he was sent to aid the Syracusans (for aid to the Syracusans). It fell to his lot to contend with varying fortune. But he always considered it better to bear adversity than to rule over his country. The Syracusans returned thanks to him because he had restored¹ their country to its former condition.



LESSON XC

295. Hāc mente per harūspicem commūnemque adfinem, cui soror ex Isdem parentibus nāta nūpta erat, frātre[m] tyrannum interficiendum cūrāvit. Ipse nōn modo manūs nōn attulit, sed nē āspicere quidem frāternum sanguinem voluit. Nam, dum rēs cōficērētur, procul in praesidiō fuit, nē quis satelles posset succurrere. Hōc praeclārissimum ēius factum nōn parī modō probātum est ab omnibus; nōn-nūlli enim laesam ab eō pietātem putābant et invidiā laudem virtūtis obterēbant. Māter vērō post id factum neque domum ad sē filium admīsit neque āspexit, quīn eum frātricīdam impiumque detēstāns compellāret. Quibus rēbus ille adeō est commōtus, ut nōnnumquam vitāe finem facere voluerit atque ex ingrātōrum hominū cōspectū morte dēcēdere.

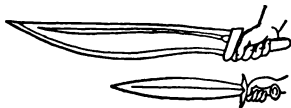
NOTES

296. Hāc mente, *with this mind or feeling*; referring to *anteulerit* . . . *dūxerit*, in the last sentence of the preceding lesson.

¹ Why should this verb be in the Subjunctive?

— **harduspicem**, a *haruspex* was a priest who examined the entrails of the sacrifices and thus foretold future events. — **cui**, Dat. after **nūpta erat**. — **Nūbō**, meaning literally *to veil one's self*, is used only of the marriage of the woman, and regularly takes the Dat. — **interficiendum** is the Gerundive agreeing with **frātre**. Cf. **eōs educandōs**, 115. Translate: *he had his brother, the tyrant, killed*. Rule XXXVIII. — **manūs nōn attulit**, *did not apply his hands (to the deed) = did not take part in killing his brother*. Plutarch says that Timoleon stepped aside and stood weeping while the two assassins drew their swords and slew his brother. Other authorities say that Timoleon slew him with his own hand. — **dum**, *until*. Observe the Subj., **cōnfigerētur**. **Dum**, meaning *until*, regularly takes the Subj. — **in praesidiō**, *on guard*. — **nē** introduces a negative purpose; *lest any follower or that no follower might*, etc. Observe that **quis** following **nē** is an indefinite pronoun; so is it also after **si**, **nisi**, **num**. — Decline **satelles**. — **nōn parī modō**, *not in like manner, not equally*. — **pietātem laesam (esse)**, *that brotherly love had been violated*. — **invidiā**, *with hatred*. — **quīn detestāns compellāret**, *but that execrating him she addressed him, etc.* = *without addressing him with execrations as, etc.* — **morte**, means of **dēscēdere**.

297. When his brother had seized upon absolute power at Corinth, Timoleon had him put to death. He did not take part in the deed, but he was on guard so that no one could render aid. This deed of his was not approved by many. After this his mother never admitted Timoleon to her home, and never saw him without thinking that he had violated brotherly love.



LESSON XCI

298. Interim Diōne Syracūsīs interfectō Dionȳsius rūsus Syracūsārum potītus est. Cūius adversārii opem ā Corinthiīs petiērunt ducemque, quō in bellō ūterentur, pōstulārunt. Hūc Timoleōn missus incēdibīlī fēlicitāte Dionȳsium tōtā Siciliā dēpulit. Cum interficere posset, nōluit, tūtōque ut Corinthum pervēnīret effēcit, quod utrōrumque Dionȳsiōrum opibus Corinthiī saepe adiūtī fuerant, cūius benīgnitātis memoriā volēbat exstāre, eamque praeclāram victōriā dūcēbat, in quā plūs esset clēmētiaē quam crūdēlitātis, postrēmō ut nōn solum auribus acciperētur, sed etiam oculis cernerētur, quem, ex quantō rēgnō, ad quam fortūnam dētrūsisset.

NOTES

299. Syracūsīs: Rule XXIX. — **Syracūsārum potītus est:** **potior**, which regularly takes the Ablative (Rule XXVI), is sometimes followed by the Genitive, as in the present instance. — What is the antecedent of **cūius**? — **quō**: Rule XXVI. — **incēdibīlī fēlicitāte**, with *incredible good fortune*; ablative of manner modifying **dēpulit**: Rule XIX. — Why is **Siciliā** in the Ablative? — **Cum**, *although*. — **tūtō** modifies **pervēnīret**, and **ut . . . pervēnīret** is an object clause of purpose after **effēcit**.

There were two kings of Syracuse bearing the name Dionysius, known in history as Dionysius the Elder and Dionysius the Younger. The latter was the son of the former. Dion was the friend and adviser of the Elder, and after the death of that prince, he was assassinated. Then the Younger Dionysius, who had been driven out of the city, returned and established a most cruel and tyrannical government. It was to free the Syracusans from this tyrant that the aid of Timoleon was sought.

cūius benīgnitātis memoriā, *the memory of which kindness, etc.* — **eamque praeclārum**, etc., *and he considered that a*

famous victory.—Supply *volēbat* with *postrēmō*. Observe the two constructions following *volēbat*, viz.: *exstāre* an Inf., and *ut* with a Subj.—*nōn solum auribus*, etc., *not only should be heard with the ears, but even seen with the eyes.*—*quem* is interrogative; *whom, from how great a kingdom, and to what a condition, he had thrust down = whom he had thrust down, from how great a kingdom, and to what a condition.*

(a) *uterque* is compounded of *uter* and *-que*. See *ūnus*, *alius*, etc. *uter* is thus declined:—

	SINGULAR		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	<i>uter</i>	<i>utra</i>	<i>utrum</i>
Gen.	<i>utrius</i>	<i>utrius</i>	<i>utrius</i>
Dat.	<i>utri</i>	<i>utri</i>	<i>utri</i>

The other forms are like those of *bonus*.

neuter, neither, is declined like *uter*.—*uterque, each, both*, is declined like *uter*, with *-que* added to it, except that the Genitive singular has *-ius* instead of *-us*.

300. When Dion was killed at Syracuse, the opponents of Dionysius asked aid from the Corinthians. They sent Timoleon, who with great good fortune quickly freed all Sicily. He did not wish to drive the tyrant into exile, because both of the Dionysii had often aided the Corinthians. He said that he wished the memory of this kindness to be manifest. But he brought it to pass that they should see with their eyes from how great a kingdom he had thrust him down.



LECTICA

LESSON XCII

301. Post Dionŷsī dēcēssum cum Hicetā bellāvit, quī adversātus erat Dionŷsiō; quem nōn odiō tyrannidis dissēnsisse, sed cupiditāte, indicio fuit, quod ipse, expulsō Dionŷsiō, imperium dīmittere nōluit. Hōc superātō, Tīmoleōn mǎximās cōpiās Carthāginiēnsium apud Crīmīssum flūmen fugāvit, ac satis habēre cōēgit, sī liceret Āfricam obtinēre, quī iam complūrēs annōs possessiōnem Siciliæ tenēbant. Cēpit etiam Māmercum, Ītalicum ducem, hominem bellicōsum et potentem, quī tyrannōs adiūtum in Siciliam vēnerat. Quibus rēbus cōfectis, cum propter diuturnitātem bellī nōn solum regiōnēs, sed etiam urbēs dēsertās vidēret, conquīsīvit quōs potuit, prīmum Siculōs, deinde Corinthō arcessīvit colōnōs, quod ab iis initiō Syracūsae erant conditae.

NOTES

302. **dēcēssum**, departure from Syracuse. Hicetas was the tyrant of Leontini, a town of Sicily, northwest of Syracuse.—The subject of **bellāvit** is Timoleon.—**quem** is the subject of **dissēnsisse**, depending upon **indiciō fuit**; literally, *it was for a proof*, = *it was a proof that he disagreed with him not from hatred of the tyranny, but from desire for it*, etc.—**Hōc**, i.e. Hicetas.—**ac satis habēre cōēgit**, and compelled them to be satisfied.—**quī** refers to the Carthaginians.—**complūrēs annōs**: Rule XVI.—**adiūtum**, Supine of **adiūvō**, depending upon **vēnerat**. Rule XXXVII.—**regiōnēs**, the country districts, in distinction from the **urbēs**.—**conquīsīvit quōs potuit**, he collected (those) whom he could.—Compare the adjectives **mǎximās**, **potentem**, and **bellicōsum**. Synopsis of **nōluit**. Give all the Infinitives of **dissēnsisse**; all the Participles of **expulsō**. Synopsis of **liceret** in the Ind. and Subj., 3d sing. Princ. parts of **cōēgit**, **conquīsīvit**, and **arcessīvit**.—Compare with **bellāre** the words and expressions in 251 (a).

303. For several years Timoleon made war upon the tyrants. He conquered Hicetas and put to flight the Carthaginians who had come into Sicily to drive out Dionysius. If Dionysius had been expelled, Hicetas would not have been willing to lay down the government. Having overcome the Carthaginians, he wished to capture their leader. On account of the long continuance of the war, not only the country districts, but even the cities, were deserted.



LESSON XCIII

304. Civibus veteribus sua restituit; novis bellō vacuēfactās possēsiōnēs dīvisit; urbium moenia dīsiecta fānaque dētēcta refēcit; cīvitatibus lēgēs libertātemque reddidit; ex māximō bellō tantum ōtium tōtāe insulae conciliāvit, ut hīc conditor urbium eārum, nōn illi quī initiō dēdūxerant, vidērētur. Arcem Syracūsīs, quam mūnierat Dionysius ad urbem obsidendam, ā fundāmentis disiecit; cētera tyrannidis prōpugnācula dēmōlītus est deditque operam, ut quam minimē multa vestīgia servitūtis manērent. Cum tantis esset opibus, ut etiam invītis imperāre posset, tantum autem amōrem habēret omnium Siculōrum, ut nūllō recūsante rēgnum obtinēret, māluit sē diligī quam metuī. Itaque, cum prīmum potuit, imperium dēposuit ac privātus Syracūsīs, quod reliquum vitae fuit, vixit.

NOTES

305. *sua, their possessions.* *suus, -a, -um,* refers regularly to the subject, but it may refer to the leading object of thought, as in

the present instance.—**novis**, sc. **civibus**.—**tōtae** is the Dat. formed regularly, instead of the more common **tōti**.—**illi**, subject of **vidērentur** understood.—**dēdūxerant**, *had led out* (the colonists).

ad urbem obsidendam: another instance of **ad** with the Gerundive denoting purpose.—**dedit operam**, *took care*.—**quam minimē multa vestigia**, *as few traces as possible*. **Quam, longē**, and **multō** are used to strengthen the Superlative.

Cum, *although*.—**tantis esset opibus**, *was of so great resources*, = *possessed so great resources or power*. For the construction of **opibus**, cf. Rule XXIII.—**invitis**, *against their will*. It agrees with **illis** understood, which is in the Dat. after **imperāre**. *That he might have ruled over them even against their will*.—Repeat **cum** before **tantum autem**: *although, moreover*, etc.—**nūllō recūsante**, *no one objecting* = *without objection from any one*.

cum primum potuit, *as soon as he could*.—**quod reliquum vitæ fuit**, *what of life was left* = *the remainder of his life*. **vitæ** is in Gen. limiting **quod**.

(a) Observe the expressions:—

operam dare, *to bestow care, take pains*; **quam minimē**, *as little as possible*; **cum primum**, *as soon as*.

306. For the purpose of liberating the city, he ordered the bulwarks of the tyranny to be destroyed. He said that he would restore to the old citizens their possessions. He took care that the citadel at Syracuse should be destroyed. If he should restore laws and liberty to the states, he would seem to be the founder of these cities. But he preferred to live as a private citizen at Syracuse rather than to be feared by the citizens. Therefore, as soon as he could, he set out from the city.

LESSON XCIV

307. Neque vērō id imperitē fecit; nam quod cēteri rēgēs imperiō potuērunt, hīc benevolentīā tenuit. Nullus honōs huīc defuit, neque postea rēs ūlla Syracūsīs gesta est publicē, dē quā prius sit dēcrētum quam Tīmoleontis sententia cōgnita. Nullius umquam cōsiliū nōn modo antelātum, sed nē comparātum quidem est. Neque id magis benevolentīā factum est quam prūdentiā.

Hic cum aetate iam prōvectus esset, sine ūllō morbō lūmina oculōrum amisit. Quam calamitatem ita moderatē tulit, ut neque eum querentem quisquam audierit neque eō minus privātis publicisque rēbus interfuerit. Veniēbat autem in theātrum, cum ibi conciliū populī habērētur, propter valētūdinem vectus iūmentis iūctis, atque ita dē vehiculō quae vidēbantur dīcēbat. Neque hōc illi quisquam tribuēbat superbiae; nihil enim umquam neque insolēns neque glōriōsum ex ore eius exiit.

NOTES

308. *id, this, i.e. the laying down of the government and living as a private citizen.*—The antecedent of **quod** is **id** understood, the object of **tenuit**.—**potuērunt**, sc. **tenēre**.—**imperiō**, *by their power*.—**huīc**: cf. 229, n. on **civitatē**.—**publicē**, *by public authority*.—**prius** is separated from **quam** by tmesis. **Priusquam**, *before*.—**cōgnita**, sc. **esset**; *before learning the opinion of Timoleon*.—**Nullius umquam**, etc., *not only was no one's counsel ever preferred*, etc.—Supply **est** with **antelātum**.—**factum est**, Perf. Pass. of **faciō**. The Pass. of **faciō** is **fiō**. Learn **fiō**, Appendix, 11.

aetate prōvectus esset, *he was advanced in age*.—**lūmina**, *the lights = the sight*.—**ita moderatē**, *so calmly*.—**querentem**, Pres. Part. of the deponent verb **queror**, *to complain*. *Deponent verbs have, besides the Passive forms with Active meaning, the Fut. Inf.*

the Participles, Gerund, and Supine of the Active Voice.—**neque eō minus . . . interfuit**, nor any the less on this account did he take part, etc.—**Veniēbat autem**, moreover, he was accustomed to come, etc.—**propter valētūdinem**, drawn, on account of his infirmity, by beasts yoked; i.e. in a chariot.—**dē vehiculō**, from the vehicle.—**quae vidēbantur**, what seemed best (to him).—**Neque hōc illi quisquam tribuēbat superbiae**, nor did any one ascribe this to him as haughtiness. **illi** and **superbiae**, Rule XIII.—**ex ore exit**, came from his mouth = fell from his lips.—Observe **cōnsilium**, counsel, advice, and **concilium**, an assembly.

309. No honor was wanting to Timoleon at Syracuse. When he had lost the sight of his eyes, he bore the calamity so calmly that he was (held) in great honor. He nevertheless took part in public and private affairs. No one ever heard him complaining. When he came into the theatre, borne in a chariot, no one said that he did this on account of his haughtiness. He had so much love from all (of all) that he seemed (to be) the founder of Syracuse.



LESSON XCV

310. Quī quidem, cum suās laudēs audīret praedicārī, numquam aliud dīxit quam sē in eā rē māximē diīs agere grātiās atque habēre, quod, cum Siciliam recreāre cōstituissent, tum sē potissimum ducem esse voluissent. Nihil enim rerum hūmānarum sine deōrum nūmine gerī putābat; itaque suae domī sacellum Automatiās cōstituerat idque sāctissimē colēbat.

Ad hanc hominis excellentem bonitatem mīrābilēs accēserant cāsūs. Nam proelia māxima nātālī suō diē fecit

omnia, quō factum est ut eius diem nātālem fēstum habēret ūniversa Sicilia. Huīc quīdam Laphystius, homō petulāns et ingrātus, vadimōnium cum vellet impōnere, quod cum illō sē lēge agere dīceret, et complūrēs concurrissent quī procācitātem hominis manibus coērcēre cōnārentur, Timoleōn ōrāvit hominēs nē id facerent.

NOTES

311. aliud, anything else. — agere grātiās atque habēre, that he in this matter especially thanked the gods and felt grateful to them. Cf. 283 (b). — cum . . . tum, when . . . then. — sē potissimum, himself in preference to anybody else. — domī: Rule XXIX. — Automatiās, a Greek Genitive. — colēbat, was wont to worship. Imperfect of customary action. — mirābilēs accēsserant cāsus, wonderful incidents were added. — diē: Rule XXII. — omnia agrees with proelia. It is made emphatic by its position. — quō factum est, from which it came to pass. — fēstum (diem), as a holiday. — vadimōnium cum vellet impōnere, when a certain Laphystius wished to impose upon him bail for appearance = wished to compel him to give bail for appearance (in court). — cum illō sē lēge agere, that he was acting with him according to law. — nē id facerent, not to do this. — Observe cōstituissent, had determined, and cōstituerat, had built. — Also observe neque eum querentem quisquam audierit in the last lesson, and cum suās laudēs audīret praedicārī in the present lesson.

312. 1. Timoleon fought a very great battle on his birthday. 2. A certain man wished to compel him to give bail for his appearance. 3. He said nothing else than that he did not wish to hear his own praises proclaimed. 4. He returned thanks to the gods because he had been able to restore Sicily. 5. He felt grateful to the gods because he was able to hold the love of the people.

LESSON XCVI

313. Namque, id ut Laphystiō et cuiūs licēret, sē māximōs labōrēs summaque adiisse pericula. Hanc enim speciem libertātis esse, sī omnibus, quod quisque vellet, lēgibus experiri licēret. Idem, cum quīdam Laphysti similis, nōmine Dēmaenetus, in cōtione populī dē rēbus gestis eius dētrahere coepisset ac nōnnūlla inveheretur in Tīmoleonta, dixit nunc dēmum sē vōtī esse damnātum; namque hōc ā diis immortalibus semper precātum, ut tālem libertātem restitueret Syracūsānis, in quā cuiūs licēret dē quō vellet impūnē dicere.

Hic cum diem suprēmum obisset, publicē ā Syracūsānis in gymnasiō, quod Tīmoleontēum appellātur, tōtā celebrante Sicilia sepultus est.

NOTES

314. A verb of *saying*, implied in what has gone before, is to be supplied at the beginning of this passage. *For (he said) that he had encountered dangers, etc., in order that this (very thing) might be permitted to L. and to anybody (else).*—*id* is the subject of *licēret*. *It precedes ut for the sake of emphasis.*—*cuiūs* is an Indef. Pron. from *quīvīs*, compounded of *qui* and the 2d person sing. of *volō*, to wish. It is declined like *qui*, except that it has *quidvīs* or *quodvīs* in the neuter.

(a)	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	quīvīs	quāevīs	quidvīs or quodvīs
Gen.	cūiūsvis	cūiūsvis	cūiūsvis
Dat.	cuivis	cuivis	cuivis, etc.

Give the prin. parts of *adiisse*, and all of the Infinitives.—*speciem*, the appearance = the idea.—The antecedent of *quod* is *id* understood, the object of *experiri*.—*Laphysti* is in the Gen. after *similis*.—*Similis* may be regarded as a Substantive limited

by a Genitive. Compare the English, "*We ne'er shall look upon his like again.*" So here, *the like of Laphystius*. *Similis* usually takes the Genitive of likeness of character, and the Dative of external likeness.—*nōmine*: Rule XXIV.—*dē rēbus eius dētrahere coepisset*, had begun to detract from his exploits. — *nōnnulla inveherētur*, made some attack, etc.—*Timoleonta*, a Greek Accusative. — *vōti esse damnātum*, was condemned for his vow = was bound to fulfil his vow. *Vōti* is the Genitive of the charge after a verb of condemning.—*precātum (esse)*, that he had always prayed for this from the immortal gods.—*in quā = ut in eā*, that in it, i.e. in the exercise of it.—*dē quō vellet*, to speak about whatever he wished (to speak about).—*Hic . . . obiisset*, when he had come to his last day = when he died.—*tōtā celebrante Siciliā*, all Sicily thronging there.

315. 1. He encountered very great labors and extreme perils in order that this might be allowed to anybody. 2. It is permitted to each one to try by the laws what he may wish. 3. He made some attack upon Timoleon in the assembly of the people. 4. He restored such liberty to the Syracusans that each one was able to say what he wished. 5. They buried him in the gymnasium at the public expense. 6. When he had freed all Sicily from the tyrant, he died.

(a) Give English words derived from the following:

contingō, nātus, pristinus, succurrō, commōtus, dissentiō, conquirō, potēns, dēdūcō, querentem, impōnere, experiri.

Study the following group of allied words:—

sedeō, to sit; sessor, one who sits; sessiō, a sitting; sēdēs, a seat; sella, a chair; sedile, a seat; Insideō, to sit upon; Insidiae, an ambushade; praesidium, a sitting before, a guard; obsidiō, ōnis, a siege; subsidium (a sitting near), reserve force; cōnsensus (a sitting together), an assembly.

THE LAST STRUGGLE FOR GALLIC FREEDOM

FROM CÆSAR'S GALLIC WAR (BOOK VII.)

INTRODUCTORY NOTE

The events narrated in the following pages belong to the seventh year of Cæsar's campaigns in Gaul, 52 B.C. In the former years he had met and defeated the separate forces of the different Gallic tribes, until now all opposition seemed to be crushed and the subjugation of the country complete. But in the midst of this apparent tranquility, Vercingetorix, a young prince of the Arverni, set on foot a combined and determined movement to throw off the Roman yoke and restore to the Gallic peoples their former freedom. Cæsar had succeeded in shutting up the forces of the Gauls in Alesia, whither they had fled for refuge after their cavalry had been defeated in a skirmish with the Romans. This town was a well-nigh impregnable fortress situated in the country of the Mandubii, near the sources of the Seine river. Vercingetorix sent out emissaries who succeeded in arousing all Gaul, and in bringing a vast army to the assistance of their beleaguered chief. The capture of this place and the surrender of Vercingetorix form the subject of the following selection.

*The Re-inforcements arrive. Those in the Town prepare to
make a Sally*

79. Intereâ Commius reliquique ducēs, quibus summa imperi permissa erat, cum omnibus cōpiis ad Alesiam perveniunt et colle exteriōre occupatō nōn longius mille pas-

79. summa imperi, the chief command.—colle exteriōre, this hill was outside of the investing line of the Romans, to the southwest of the town.—mille passibus, one	thousand paces = one mile. The Roman pace was measured from the point where the foot was raised from the ground to the point where the same foot was placed upon the
--	--

The Romans attacked. The Gauls driven back

80. Caesar omnī exercitū ad utramque partem mūnitiōnum dispositō, ut, si ūsus veniat, suum quisque locum teneat et nōverit, equitātum ex castris ēdūci et proelium committi iubet. Erat ex omnibus castris, quae summum undique iugum tenēbant, dēspectus, atque omnēs militēs intenti pūgnae prōventum exspectābant. Galli inter equitēs rārōs sagittariōs expeditōsque levis armātūrae interiēceraut, quī suis cēdentibus auxiliō succurrerent et nostrōrum equitum impetūs sustinērent. Ab hīs complūrēs dē imprōvisō vulnerātī proeliō excēdēbant. Cum suōs pūgnā superiōrēs esse Galli cōnfīderent et nostrōs multitudīne premī vidērent, ex omnibus partibus et iī, quī mūnitiōnibus continēbantur, et hī, quī ad auxiliū convēnerant, clāmōre et ululātū suōrum animōs cōnfirmābant. Quod in cōspectū omnium rēs gerēbātur neque rēctē ac turpiter factum cēlārī poterat, utrōsque et laudis cupiditās et timor ignōminiae ad virtutē excitābat. Cum ā meridie



80. si ūsus veniat, if it should become necessary. — proelium committi, cf. 251 (a). — in colle summō, on the top of a hill. Some adjectives, such as medius, reliquus, summus, infimus, extrēmus, are used to denote the middle part, remaining part, highest part, etc., of an object: as collis summus, the highest part of the hill; hostēs reliquī, the rest of the enemy. — rārōs, an adj. agreeing with sagittariōs and expeditōs; archers and light-armed infantry here and there. — quī introduces a purpose clause; best translated by an Infinitive; to run up to the assistance of their men when they were giving way. — suis and auxiliō, Rule XIII. — hīs, i.e. the archers and light-armed infantry. — pūgnā, Abl. of specification. Rule XXIV. — et iī . . . et hī, both those in the town and those who had come to their assistance. — ululātū, with the war-whoop. — nequerēctē ac turpiter, neither the thing done rightly nor the thing done basely = neither a brave

prope ad sōlis occāsum dubiā victōriā pūgnārētur, Germānī unā in parte cōnfertis turmīs in hostēs impetum fēcērunt eōsque prōpulērunt; quibus in fugam coniectis, sagittārii circumventi interfectique sunt. Item ex reliquis partibus nostrī cēdentēs usque ad castra insecūti sui conligendī facultātem nōn dederunt. At ii, quī ab Alesiā prōcēsserant, maestī prope victōriā dēspērātā sē in oppidum recēpērunt.

A Night Attack on the Romans

81. Ūnō diē intermissō Gallī atque hōc spatiō māgnō crātium, scālārum, harpagōnum numerō effectō mediā nocte silentiō ex castris ēgressi ad campestrēs mūnitiōnēs accēdunt. Subitō clāmōre sublātō, quā significātiōne quī in oppidō ob-sidēbantur dē suō adventū cōgnōscere possent, crātēs prō-icere, fundīs, sagittīs, lapidibus nostrōs dē vāllō prōturbāre reliquaque, quae ad oppūgnātiōnem pertinent, parant administrāre. Eōdem tempore clāmōre exaudītō, dat tubā si-gnum suis Vercingetorix atque ex oppidō ēducit. Nostri, ut superiōribus diēbus, ut cuique erat locus attribūtus, ad mū-

nor a cowardly act. — *dubiā victōriā pūgnārētur*, the fighting continued with the victory undecided. *Victōriā*, Abl. of manner. — *Germānī*, on the side of the Romans. — *cōnfertis turmīs*, Abl. Abs., with squadrons of horse in close array. — *quibus*, these, i.e. the Gauls. — *cēdentēs* agrees with *eōs* understood, object of *insecūti*. — *sui conligendi facultātem*, an opportunity to recover themselves. Cf. 286, n. on *sui*.

81. *hōc spatiō*, in this interval; Abl. of time. — *māgnō* goes with *numerō*. — *effectō*, being procured. — *harpagōnum*, of grappling irons, to be used in pulling down the Roman

defenses. This movement was made by the Gauls outside, who had come to the relief of the besieged. — *campestrēs mūnitiōnēs*, the fortifications in the plain, viz. those of the Romans. — *quā* introduces a purpose clause and is equivalent to *ut eā*, in order that by this signal. — *prōicere* and *prōturbāre* depend upon *parant*. — Supply *et* before *fundīs*. — *dē vāllō prōturbāre*, to drive in disorder from the rampart. — *suis*, Dat., to his men. — *ut* after *nostri* and *ut* before *cuique* are adverbs = *as*, *just as*. — *ut superiōribus diēbus*, just as on former days. — *cuique*, Dat. of *quisque*. —

nitiōnēs accēdunt; fundis librilibus, sudibusque quās in opere disposuerant ac glandibus Gallōs prōterrent. Prōspectū tenebris adēptō, multa utrimque vulnera accipiuntur; complūra tormentis tēla cōniciuntur. At Mārcus Antōnius et Gāius Trebōnius lēgātī, quibus hae partēs ad dēfendendum obvenerant, quā ex parte nostrōs premi intellēxerant, hīs auxiliō ex ūlteriōribus castellis dēductōs submittēbant.

The Gauls retreat at Daybreak

82. Dum longius ab mūnitiōne aberant Galli plūs multitudine telōrum prōficiēbant; posteāquam propius succēssērunt, aut sē stimulis inopināntēs induēbant, aut in scrobēs delāti trānsfodiēbantur, aut ex vāllō ac turribus trāiecti pilis mūrālibus interibant. Multis undique vulneribus acceptis, nullā mūnitiōne perruptā, cum lūx appeteret, veriti nē ab latere apertō ex superiōribus castris ēruptiōne circumveni-

fundis librilibus, with slings carrying stones of a pound weight. — sudēs were wooden stakes sharpened at the end and sometimes charred in the fire to make them hard. — glandēs means in the first place acorns, and then leaden bullets for the sling made in the form of acorns. — Prōspectū tenebris adēptō, the view being cut off by the darkness. — The tormentum was an engine for throwing missiles by means of twisted cords. — ad dēfendendum obvenerant, had fallen by lot to defend. — dēductōs agrees with eōs understood, the object of submittēbant, sent for aid to these those led out from the farther forts = led out men from the far-

ther forts and sent them to assist these.

82. Dum, as long as. — plūs prōficiēbant, they accomplished more (than the enemy) = they had the advantage. — stimuli were sharpened stakes set in pits and covered with brush to impede the enemy. The pits in which these stakes were set were called scrobēs. — sē stimulis inopināntēs induēbant, were impaled unawares on the sharpened stakes, or falling into the pits were pierced through, or transfixed by the mural pikes from the rampart and towers they perished. — ab latere apertō, on the open side = on the right side; the shield being carried on the left arm, the right side was

rentur, sē ad suōs recēpērunt. At interiōrēs, dum ea quae ā Vercingetorige ad ēruptionem praeparāta erant prōferunt, priōrēs fossās explent; diūtius in hīs rēbus administrandīs morātī, prius suōs discēssisse cōgnōvērunt quam mūnitiōnibus appropinquārent. Ita rē infectā in oppidum revertērunt.

The Gauls plan a Surprise for the Romans

83. Bis māgnō cum dētrimentō repulsī, Gallī quid agant cōnsulunt. Locōrum perītōs adhibent; ex hīs superiōrum castrōrum sitūs mūnitiōnēsque cōgnōscunt. Erat ā septentriōnibus collis, quem, propter māgnitūdinem circuitūs, opere circumplectī nōn potuerant nostri; necessariō paene iniquō locō et lēniter dēclivī castra fēcerant. Haec Gāius Antistius Rēgīnus et Gāius Canīnius Rebilus, lēgātī, cum duābus legiōnibus obtinēbant. Cōgnitīs per explorātōrēs regiōnibus, ducēs hostium LX mīlia ex omni nūmerō dēligunt, eārum civitātum quae māximam virtūtis opiniōnem habēbant; quid quōque pactō agī placeat, occultē inter sē cōstituunt; adeundī tempus dēfīniunt, cum merīdiēs esse videātur. Hīs cōpiīs Vercassivellaunum Arvernum, ūnum ex quattuor ducibus, propinquum Vercingetorigis, praeficiunt. Ille, ex castrīs

unprotected.—interiōrēs . . . priōrēs, those from within the town who were in the advance.—diūtius, too long.—suōs, their friends, i.e. those who had come to their relief.—rē infectā, their purpose unaccomplished.

83. Locōrum perītōs, familiar with the places.

Rule.—Adjectives of DESIRE, KNOWLEDGE, FULNESS, POWER, SHARING. GUILT. and their oppo-

sites, and Verbals in -ax take the Genitive.

opere, by their works.—necessariō paene iniquō, almost of necessity unfavorable.—eārum civitātum . . . opiniōnem, the highest reputation for courage of these states.—quid quōque pactō agī placeat, what it seems best should be done and in what way.—placeat, Subj. in an indirect question. Of what is it the object?—cōpiīs, Dat.

primā vigiliā ēgressus, prope cōfectō sub lūcem itinere, post montem sē occultāvit, mīlitēsque ex nocturnō labōre sēsē reficere iūssit. Cum iam merīdiēs appropinquāre vidērētur, ad ea castra quae supra dēmōstrāvimus contendit; eōdemque tempore equitātus ad campestrēs mūnitiōnēs accēdere, et reliquae cōpiae prō castris sēsē ostendere coepērunt.

The Final Struggle

84. Vercingetorix ex arce Alesiae suōs cōspicātus ex oppidō ēgreditur: crātis, longuriōs, mūsculōs, falcēs reliquae, quae ēruptiōnis causā parāverat, prōfert. Pūgnātur ūnō tempore omnibus locīs, atque omnia temptantur; quae minimē vīsa pars firma est, hūc concurritur. Rōmānōrum manus tantīs mūnitiōnibus distinētur nec facile plūribus locīs occurrit. Multum ad terrendōs nostrōs valet clāmor, quī post tergum pūgnantibus exstitit, quod suum pericūlum in aliēnā vident salūte cōnstāre; omnia enim plērumque, quae absunt, vehementius hominum mentēs perturbant.

after praeficiunt. Rule X. — **primā vigiliā**, at the first watch; Abl. of time when. The Romans divided the night from sunset to sunrise into four equal watches, the length of course varying with the season of the year. — **sub lūcem**, at day-break.

84. **Pūgnātur**, the fighting continues. — **quae minimē vīsa . . . hūc concurritur**, what part seemed least firm, hither it is hastened = they rush to that part which seemed the weakest. — **manus**, the forces. — **nec facile plūribus locis occurrit**, nor do they easily present themselves in several places. — **pūgnan-**

tibus is a Dat. depending upon **post tergum exstitit**, nearly equal to a Gen. limiting **tergum**; which arose behind the back to (of) them fighting = behind their backs as they fought. — **quod suum pericūlum . . . cōnstāre**, because they see that their own danger depends upon the safety of others. The Roman soldiers in one of the lines of fortification could hear the shouts of the Gauls behind them attacking those in the other line of fortification, and they knew that they were out of danger as long as their friends were successful in resisting the attack made upon them by the relieving force of Gauls.

85. Caesar idōneum locum nactus, quid quāque ex parte gerātur cōgnōscit; labōrantibus submittit. Utrisque ad animum occurrit ūnum esse illud tempus, quō māximē contendī conveniat: Galli, nisi perfrēgerint mūnitiōnēs, dē omni salūte dēspērānt; Rōmānī, sī rem obtinuerint, finem labōrum omnium exspectant. Māximē ad superiōrēs mūnitiōnēs labōrātur, quō Vercassivellaunum missum dēmōnstrāvimus. Iniquum loci ad dēclivitātem fāstigium māgnū habet mōmentum. Alii tēla cōniciunt, alii testūdine factā subeunt; dēfatigātis in vicem integrī succēdunt. Agger ab ūniversis in mūnitiōnem coniectus et āscēsum dat Gallis et ea, quae in terrā occultāverant Rōmānī, contegit; nec iam arma nostris nec virēs suppetunt.

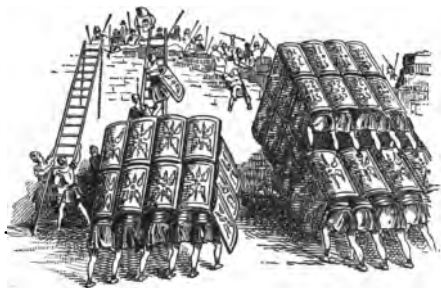
86. His rēbus cōgnitis Caesar Labiēnum cum cohortibus sex subsidiō labōrantibus mittit; imperat, sī sustinēre nōn posset, dēductis cohortibus ēruptiōne pūgnāret; id nisi

85. quāque, Abl. sing. of quisque. — quāque ex parte, on each side. — gerātur, Rule XXXIV. — Utrisque ad animum occurrit, it occurs to the mind of both, i.e. Romans and Gauls. — Utrisque, cf. pūgnantibus, § 84. — quō māximē contendī conveniat, in which it is necessary to put forth the utmost effort. — conveniat, subjunctive in a relative result clause. — dē omni salūte dēspērānt, wholly despair of safety. — perfrēgerint, obtinuerint, Fut. Perf. Ind. — Māximē . . . labōrātur, they exert themselves especially. — Supply esse with missum. — Iniquum loci ad dēclivitātem . . . mōmentum, the unfavorable downward slope of the ground is of great importance. — ad dēclivitātem, downward. — testū-

dine factā, having formed a testudo. Testudo means a tortoise. The soldiers formed the testudo by joining their shields over their heads so as to make a protection against missiles hurled upon them from above. — dēfatigātis in vicem integrī succēdunt, fresh soldiers succeed in turn to those exhausted = as they become exhausted fresh soldiers in turn take their places. The agger was a sloping mound of earth leading up to the wall or the fortification that was to be scaled; also used for the regular earthworks of the entrenched camp. — et . . . et, both . . . and.

86. subsidiō labōrantibus, Rule XIII. Cf. suis cēdentibus auxiliō, § 80. — dēductis cohortibus ēruptiōne pūgnāret, to withdraw their

necessariō nē faciat. Ipse adit reliquōs, cohortātur nē labōrī succumbant; omnium superiōrum dīmicātiōnum fructum in eō diē atque hōrā docet cōsistere. Interiōrēs dēspērātis campestribus locis propter magnitudinem mūnitiōnum loca prae-rupta ex āscēnsū temptant; hūc ea, quae parāverant, cōnferunt. Multi-



TESTUDO

tūdine telōrum ex turribus prōpūgnantēs dēturbant, aggere et crātibus fossās explent, falcibus vāllum ac lōricam rescindunt.

87. Mittit primō Brūtum adulēscēntem cum cohortibus Caesar, post cum aliīs Gāius Fabium lēgātum; postrēmō ipse, cum vehementius pūgnārētur, integrōs subsidiō addūcit. Restitūtō proeliō ac repulsis hostibus, eō quō Labiēnum mīserat contendit; cohortēs quattuor ex proximō castellō dēdūcit, equitum partem sequi, partem circumīre exteriōrēs mūnitiōnēs et ab tergō hostēs adoriri iubet. Labiēnus, postquam neque aggerēs neque fossae vim hostium sustinēre

cohortis and make a sally. — nē faciat, takes the place of an Imperative in Direct Discourse. — in eō diē atque hōrā cōsistere, depends upon this day and hour. — Interiōrēs, those within the town. — ex āscēnsū, by climbing up. — ea quae parāverant; these are given in the first part of § 84. — ex turribus . . . dēturbant, they drive out in disorder from the towers those

who were defending them. Cf. dē vāllō prōturbāre, § 81. — falcibus . . . rescindunt, with their wall-hooks they tear down the palisades and breastworks.

87. *cum vehementius pūgnārētur, since they were fighting more fiercely. — integrōs, fresh troops. — eō quō, to the place where. Supply et before equitum and partem. — aggerēs, the earthworks.*

poterant, coactis unā quadrāgintā cohortibus, quās, ex proximis praesidiis deductās, fors obtulit, Caesarem per nūtiōs facit certiōrem quid faciendum existimet. Accelerat Caesar, ut proeliō intersit.

Defeat of the Gauls

88. Eius adventū ex colōre vestītūs cōgnitō, quō insignī in proeliis ūtī cōsuerat, turmisque equitum et cohortibus visis quās sē sequi iusserat, ut dē locis superiōribus haec



HEAD OF GAUL
(Rome)

dēclīvia et dēvexa cernēbantur, hostēs proelium committunt. Utrisque clāmōre sublātō, excipit rursus ex vāllō atque omnibus mūnitiōnibus clāmōr. Nostri, omissis pilis, gladiis rem gerunt. Repente post tergum equitātus cernitur; cohortēs aliae appropinquant: hostēs terga vertunt; fugientibus equitēs occurrunt; fit mājna caedēs. Sedulius, dux et

prīnceps Lemovicum, occiditur; Vercassivellaunus Arvernus vivus in fugā comprehenditur; signa militāria LXXIV ad Caesarem referuntur; paucī ex tantō numerō sē incolumēs in castra recipiunt. Cōspicātī ex oppidō caedem et fugam suōrum, dēspērātā salūte, cōpiās ā mūnitiōnibus reducunt.

—unā, adv., together. — fors obtulit, chance threw them in his way. — Caesarem facit certiōrem, makes Caesar more certain = informs Caesar. — quid faciendum existimet, what he thinks must be done. Supple esse with faciendum. — existimet, Rule XXXIV. — intersit, take part in.

88. ex colōre cōgnitō, i.e. pur-

ple. — quō, Rule XXVI. — insignī, as a distinguishing mark. — ūtī, Inf. of ūtor. — haec dēclīvia et dēvexa, these steep hillsides. Dēclivis means inclined downwards, and dēvexus means sloping. The two together may be rendered steep hillsides. — excipit, is caught up. — rem gerunt, continue the fight. — vivus comprehenditur, is taken

Fit prōtinus, hāc rē audītā, ex castrīs Gallōrum fuga. Quod nisi crēbris subsidiis ac totius diēi labōre militēs essent dēfessi, omnēs hostium cōpiae dēlērī potuissent. Dē mediā



DYING GAUL

nocte missus equitātus novissimum āgmen cōnsequitur : māgnus numerus capitur atque interficitur ; reliquī ex fugā in civitatēs discēdunt.

Vercingetorix surrenders

89. Posterō diē Vercingetorīx, conciliō convocātō, id bellum sē suscepisse nōn suārum necessitātium sed commūnis libertātis causā dēmōnstrat ; et, quoniam sit fortūnae cēdendum, ad utramque rem sē illīs offerre, seu morte suā Rōmānīs satisfacere, seu vīvum trādere velint. Mittuntur dē hīs

alive. — Quod nisi, but if the soldiers had not been exhausted by the frequent reinforcements (of one another).

89. suārum necēssitātium causā, for his own interests. — quo-

niam sit fortūnae cēdendum, since he must yield to fate. — ad utramque rem, for either event. — Rōmānīs; compounds of satis, benē, and male are followed by the Dat. — vīvum agrees with sē

rēbus ad Caesarem lēgātī. Iubet arma trādī, principēs prōdūcī. Ipse in mūnitiōne prō castris cōnsēdit: eō ducēs prōdūcuntur. Vercingetorix dēditur; arma prōiciuntur. Reservātis Haeduīs atque Arvernīs, sī per eōs cīvitatēs recuperāre posset, ex reliquīs captīvīs tōtō exercitui capita singula praedae nōmine distribuit.

understood, the object of trādere. | Dat. for tōtī. — capita singula, cap-
— Ipse, Caesar. — sī (to see) whether. | tives one by one = a captive to each
— posset, Rule XXXIV. — tōtō, | soldier under the name of booty.

NOTE. — Every generous spirit will be touched by the sad fate of the noble Gallic chief who fought so gallantly, though unsuccessfully, for the deliverance of his country. We are told that he armed himself, and equipped his horse, in the most magnificent manner, and then sallied out at the gate. After he had ridden several times around the Roman proconsul as he sat upon his tribunal, he dismounted, put off his armor, and placed himself at Caesar's feet. Here he remained in silence until Caesar ordered a guard to take him away and keep him for his triumph. Vercingetorix had relied upon the former friendship of Caesar for forgiveness, or at least for honorable treatment. But Caesar knew no mercy for those who had ventured to take the field against the legions of Rome. The noble Gaul was sent to Rome, to be confined in a dungeon until the day of his execution. Mommsen, who has only praise for Caesar, gives in a few words the closing scene of this tragedy: "Five years afterwards, he (Vercingetorix) was led in triumph through the streets of the Italian capital; and while his conqueror was offering thanks to the gods on the summit of the Capitol, Vercingetorix was beheaded at its foot as guilty of treason against the Roman nation."

TRANSLATION INTO LATIN

79-82. 1. Having seized the outer hill, they encamped three miles from our fortifications. 2. On the next day, leading out the cavalry from the camp, they stationed the infantry in the higher places. 3. If the cavalry had been led out from the camp, battle would have been joined. 4. The camp occupied the top

of the ridge. 5. The Gauls thought that their men had the¹ advantage in the fight. 6. If they should despair of victory, they would retreat into the town. 7. They fear lest they may be surrounded on the right flank.

83-86. 1. The Gauls, being twice repulsed, took counsel as to what they should do. 2. Going out of the camp at the second watch, they well nigh completed the march at daylight. 3. They brought forth the hooks which had been prepared in case of a sally. 4. They fought everywhere at once. 5. If the Gauls should not break through the fortifications, they would entirely despair of safety. 6. Having learned this, Cæsar sends ten cohorts as a reinforcement for those who were struggling. 7. Do not give up to the labor.

87-89. 1. Since the fight was raging more fiercely, Cæsar sends Brutus with four cohorts as an aid to his men. 2. Labienus informed Cæsar, through a messenger, what he thought should be done. 3. The enemy turn and flee: a great slaughter takes place. 4. Many are taken alive in their flight. 5. Suddenly, a shout being raised from both sides, they join battle. 6. Many are slain, but a few withdraw unharmed into the town. 7. If the soldiers are not worn out with the labor of the day, all the forces of the enemy will be destroyed. 8. The next day, Vercingetorix called together a council, in order to show why he had undertaken this war. 9. We must yield to fortune.

¹ Superiōrēs.

APPENDIX



REGULAR VERBS

First Conjugation

1. Amō (st. amā-), to love

Principal Parts : *Active Voice*, amō, amāre, amāvi, amātum
Passive Voice, amor, amārī, amātus sum

INDICATIVE

Active Voice		Passive Voice	
PRESENT			
<i>I love, am loving, do love</i>		<i>I am loved, etc.</i>	
ámō	amāmus	ámor	amāmur
ámās	amātis	amāris (-re)	amāmini
ámat	amant	amātur	amántur

IMPERFECT

<i>I loved, was loving, did love</i>		<i>I was loving, etc.</i>	
amābam	amābāmus	amābar	amābāmur
amābās	amābātis	amābāris (-re)	amābāmini
amābat	amābant	amābātur	amābántur

FUTURE

<i>I shall love or be loving</i>		<i>I shall be loved</i>	
amābō	amābimus	amābor	amābimur
amābis	amābitis	amāberis (-re)	amābimini
amābit	amābunt	amābitur	amābúntur

Active Voice**Passive Voice****PERFECT***I loved or have loved**I was loved or have been loved*

amāvi	amāvimus
amāvisti	amāvistis
amāvit	amāverunt (-re)

amātus,	sum	amāti,	sūmus
-a, -um	es	-ae, -a	estis
	est		sunt

PLUPERFECT*I had loved or had been loving**I had been loved*

amāveram	amāverāmus
amāverās	amāverātis
amāverat	amāverant

amātus,	eram	amāti,	erāmus
-a, -um	erās	-ae, -a	erātis
	erat		erant

FUTURE PERFECT*I shall have loved or been loving**I shall have been loved*

amāverō	amāverimus
amāveris	amāveritis
amāverit	amāverint

amātus,	erō	amāti,	erimus
-a, -um	eris	-ae, -a	eritis
	erit		erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE**PRESENT**

ámem	amēmus
ámēs	amētis
ámet	ámēt

ámer	amēmur
amēris (-re)	amēmini
amētur	amēntur

IMPERFECT

amārem	amārēmus
amārēs	amārētis
amāret	amārent

amārer	amārēmur
amārēris (-re)	amārēmini
amārētur	amārēntur

PERFECT

amāverim	amāverimus
amāveris	amāveritis
amāverit	amāverint

amātus,	sim	amāti,	sīmus
-a, -um	sīs	-ae, -a	sītis
	sit		sint

Active Voice		PLUPERFECT		Passive Voice	
amāvíssem	amāvissémus	amātus, -a, -um	éssem	amātī, -ae, -a	essémus
amāvissēs	amāvissētis		essēs		essētis
amāvisset	amāvissent		éssent		éssent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

<i>love thou</i>	<i>love ye</i>	<i>be thou loved</i>	<i>be ye loved</i>
ámā	amáte	amāre	amāmini

FUTURE

<i>thou shalt love</i>	<i>you shall love</i>	<i>thou shalt be loved</i>	<i>they shall be loved</i>
amātō	amātōte	amātor	—
amātō	amántō	amātor	amántor

INFINITIVE

PRES. amāre, <i>to love</i>	amāri, <i>to be loved</i>
PERF. amāvísse, <i>to have loved</i>	amātus esse, <i>to have been loved</i>
FUT. amātūrus esse, <i>to be about to love</i>	amātum frī, <i>to be about to be loved</i>

PARTICIPLES

PRES. amāns, -antis, <i>loving</i>	PERF. amātus, -a, -um, <i>loved or having been loved</i>
FUT. amātūrus, -a, -um, <i>being about to love</i>	GERUNDIVE, amándus, -a, -um, <i>to be loved</i>

GERUND

SUPINE

GEN. amándi, <i>of loving</i>	
DAT. amándō, <i>to or for loving</i>	
ACC. amándum, <i>loving</i>	amātum, <i>to love</i>
ABL. amándō, <i>by love</i>	amātū, <i>to love or to be loved</i>

Second Conjugation

2. **Móneō** (st. **monē-**), *to warn*

Principal Parts: *Active Voice*, móneō, monēre, mónui, mónitum
Passive Voice, móneor, monēri, mónitus sum

INDICATIVE

Active Voice

Passive Voice

PRESENT

*I warn, am warning, do warn**I am warned, etc.*

móneō monēmus

móneor

monēmur

mónēs monētis

monēris (-re)

monēmini

mónet mónent

monētur

monéntur

IMPERFECT

*I warned, was warning, did warn**I was warned, etc.*

monēbam monēbāmus

monēbar

monēbāmur

monēbās monēbātis

monēbāris (-re)

monēbāmini

monēbat monēbant

monēbātur

monēbāntur

FUTURE

*I shall warn or be warning**I shall be warned*

monēbō monēbimus

monēbor

monēbimur

monēbis monēbitis

monēberis (-re)

monēbīmini

monēbit monēbunt

monēbitur

monēbūntur

PERFECT

*I warned or have warned**I was warned or have been warned*

mónui monuímus

mónitus { sum

móniti { súmus

monuísti monuístis

-a, -um { es

-ae, -a { éstis

mónuit monuērunt (-re)

{ est

{ sunt

Active Voice**Passive Voice****PLUPERFECT***I had warned or had been warning**I had been warned*

monúeram	monuerámus	mónitus -a, -um	éram	móniti -ae, -a,	erámus
monúerās	monuerátis		érās		erátis
monúerat	monúerant		érat		érant

FUTURE PERFECT*I shall have warned**I shall have been warned*

monúerō	monuérimus	mónitus -a, -um	érō	móniti -ae, -a	érimus
monúeris	monuéritis		éris		éritis
monúerit	monúerint		érit		érint

SUBJUNCTIVE**PRESENT**

móneam	moneámus	mónear	moneámur
móneās	moneátis	moneáris (-re)	moneámini
móneat	móneant	moneátur	moneántur

IMPERFECT

monérem	monērēmus	monérer	monērēmur
monérēs	monērētis	monérēris (-re)	monērēmini
monérēt	monérēt	monérétur	monéréntur

PERFECT

monúerim	monuérimus	mónitus -a, -um	sim	móniti -ae, -a	sīmus
monúeris	monuéritis		sīs		sītis
monúerit	monuérint		sit		sint

PLUPERFECT

monuíssem	monuissēmus	mónitus -a, -um	éssem	móniti -ae, -a	essēmus
monuissēs	monuissētis		essēs		essētis
monuísset	monuísset		éssset		éssset

IMPERATIVE

Active Voice

Passive Voice

PRESENT

<i>warn thou</i>	<i>warn ye</i>	<i>be thou warned</i>	<i>be ye warned</i>
monē	monēte	monēre	monēmini

FUTURE

<i>thou shalt warn</i>	<i>you shall warn</i>	<i>thou shalt be warned</i>	<i>they shall be warned</i>
monētō	monētōte	monētor	—
monētō	monéntō	monētor	monéntor

INFINITIVE

PRES. monēre, <i>to warn</i>	monēri, <i>to be warned</i>
PERF. monuisse, <i>to have warned</i>	monitus esse, <i>to have been warned</i>
FUT. monitūrus esse, <i>to be about to warn</i>	monitum iri, <i>to be about to be warned</i>

PARTICIPLES

PRES. monēns, -entis, <i>warning</i>	PERF. monitus, -a, -um, <i>warned</i> or <i>having been warned</i>
FUT. monitūrus, -a, -um, <i>being about to warn</i>	GERUNDIVE , monendus, -a, -um, <i>to be warned</i>

GERUND

SUPINE

GEN. monēdi, <i>of warning</i>	
DAT. monēdō, <i>to or for warning</i>	
ACC. monēdum, <i>warning</i>	monitum, <i>to warn</i>
ABL. monēdō, <i>by warning</i>	monitū, <i>to warn or to be warned</i>

Third Conjugation

3. Régō (verb stem **reg-**; pres. stem **rege-**), to rulePrincipal Parts: *Active Voice*, régō, régere, réxi, réctum*Passive Voice*, régor, régi, réctus sum

INDICATIVE

Active Voice

Passive Voice

PRESENT

*I rule, am ruling, do rule**I am ruled, etc.*

régō	régimus
regis	regitis
regit	regunt

régor	regimur
regeris	regimini
regitur	reguntur

IMPERFECT

*I ruled, was ruling, did rule**I was ruled, etc.*

regēbam	regēbāmus
regēbās	regēbātis
regēbat	regēbant

regēbar	regēbāmur
regēbāris (-re)	regēbāmini
regēbātur	regēbantur

FUTURE

*I shall rule or be ruling**I shall be ruled, etc.*

regam	regēmus
regēs	regētis
reget	regent

regar	regēmur
regēris (-re)	regēmini
regētur	regentur

PERFECT

*I ruled or have ruled**I was ruled or have been ruled*

rēxi	rēximus
rēxistī	rēxistis
rēxit	rēxērunt (-re)

rēctus	{ sum	rēctī	{ sumus
-a, -um	{ es	-ae, -a	{ estis
	{ est		{ sunt

Active Voice

Passive Voice

PLUPERFECT

*I had ruled or had been ruling**I had been ruled*

rēxeram	rēxerāmus	rēctus	{ éram	rēcti	{ erāmus
rēxerās	rēxerātis	-a, -um	{ érās	-ae, -a	{ erātis
rēxerat	rēxerant		{ érat		{ érant

FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have ruled or been ruling**I shall have been ruled*

rēxerō	rēxerimus	rēctus	{ érō	rēcti	{ érimus
rēxeris	rēxeritis	-a, -um	{ éris	-ae, -a	{ éritis
rēxerit	rēxerint		{ érit		{ érint

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

régam	regāmus	régar	regāmur
regās	regātis	regāris (-re)	regāmini
regat	regant	regātur	regantur

IMPERFECT

régerem	regerēmus	régerer	regerēmur
régerēs	regerētis	regerēris (-re)	regerēmini
régeret	régerent	regerētur	regerentur

PERFECT

rēxerim	rēxerimus	rēctus	{ sim	rēcti	{ sīmus
rēxeris	rēxeritis	-a, -um	{ sis	-ae, -a	{ sītis
rēxerit	rēxerint		{ sit		{ sint

PLUPERFECT

rēxíssem	rēxissēmus	rēctus	{ éssem	rēcti	{ essēmus
rēxissēs	rēxissētis	-a, -um	{ essēs	-ae, -a	{ essētis
rēxísset	rēxissent		{ éssset		{ ésssent

IMPERATIVE

Active Voice

Passive Voice

PRESENT

<i>rule thou</i>	<i>rule ye</i>	<i>be thou ruled</i>	<i>be ye ruled</i>
<i>rége</i>	<i>régite</i>	<i>régere</i>	<i>regimini</i>

FUTURE

<i>thou shalt rule</i>	<i>you shall rule</i>	<i>thou shalt be ruled</i>	<i>they shall be ruled</i>
<i>regitō</i>	<i>regitōte</i>	<i>regitor</i>	—
<i>regitō</i>	<i>reguntō</i>	<i>regitor</i>	<i>reguntor</i>

INFINITIVE

PRES. <i>regere, to rule</i>	<i>regi, to be ruled</i>
PERF. <i>rexisse, to have ruled</i>	<i>rectus esse, to have been ruled</i>
FUT. <i>recturus esse, to be about to rule</i>	<i>rectum fri, to be about to be ruled</i>

PARTICIPLES

PRES. <i>regens, -entis, ruling</i>	PERF. <i>rectus, -a, -um, ruled or having been ruled</i>
FUT. <i>recturus, -a, -um, being about to rule</i>	GERUNDIVE, <i>regendus, -a, -um, to be ruled</i>

GERUND

SUPINE

GEN. <i>regendi, of ruling</i>	
DAT. <i>regendō, to or for ruling</i>	
ACC. <i>regendum, ruling</i>	<i>rectum, to rule</i>
ABL. <i>regendō, by ruling</i>	<i>rectū, to rule or to be ruled</i>

Fourth Conjugation

4. **Aúdiō** (st. audī-), *to hear*

Principal Parts: *Active Voice*, aúdiō, audfre, audfvi, audftum
Passive Voice, aúdiōr, audfri, audftus sum

INDICATIVE

Active Voice

Passive Voice

PRESENT

*I hear, am hearing, do hear**I am heard, etc.*

aúdiō audfimus

aúdiōr

audfmur

aúdis audftis

audfris (-re)

audfmini

aúdit aúdiunt

audftur

audiúntur

IMPERFECT

*I heard, was hearing, did hear**I was heard, etc.*

audiēbam audiēbāmus

audiēbar

audiēbāmur

audiēbās audiēbātis

audiēbāris (-re)

audiēbāmini

audiēbat audiēbant

audiēbātur

audiēbántur

FUTURE

*I shall hear**I shall be heard*

aúdiam audiēmus

aúdiar

audiēmur

aúdiēs audiētis

audiēris (-re)

audiēmini

aúdiet aúdient

audiētur

audiéntur

PERFECT

*I heard or have heard**I was heard or have been heard*

audfvi audfvimus

audftus { sum

audfti { sūmus

audivísti audivístis

-a, -um { es

-ae, -a { éstis

audfvit audvérunt (-re)

est

sunt

Active Voice**Passive Voice****PLUPERFECT***I had heard or had been hearing**I had been heard*

audfveram	audiverāmus	audftus	{ éram	audfti	{ erāmus
audfverās	audiverātis	-a, -um	{ érās	-ae, -a	{ erātis
audfverat	audfverant		{ érat		{ érant

FUTURE PERFECT*I shall have heard or been hearing**I shall have been heard*

audfverō	audivérimus	audftus	{ érō	audfti	{ érimus
audfveris	audivéritis	-a, -um	{ éris	-ae, -a	{ éritis
audfverit	audfverint		{ érit		{ érint

SUBJUNCTIVE**PRESENT**

aúdiam	aúdiāmus	aúdiar	aúdiāmur
aúdiās	aúdiātis	aúdiāris (-re)	aúdiāmini
aúdiat	aúdiant	aúdiātur	aúdiāntur

IMPERFECT

audfrem	audirémus	audfrer	audirémur
audfrēs	audirētis	audiréris (-re)	audirēmini
audfret	audfrent	audirétur	audiréntur

PERFECT

audfverim	audivérimus	audftus	{ sim	audfti	{ sfmus
audfveris	audivéritis	-a, -um	{ sis	-ae, -a	{ sftis
audfverit	audfverint		{ sit		{ sint

PLUPERFECT

audivíssem	audivissémus	audftus	{ éssem	audfti	{ essémus
audivissēs	audivissētis	-a, -um	{ essēs	-ae, -a	{ essētis
audivísset	audivísset		{ éssset		{ éssset

IMPERATIVE

Active Voice

Passive Voice

PRESENT

<i>hear thou</i>	<i>hear ye</i>	<i>be thou heard</i>	<i>be ye heard</i>
<i>audī</i>	<i>audīte</i>	<i>audire</i>	<i>audīmini</i>

FUTURE

<i>thou shalt hear</i>	<i>ye shall hear</i>	<i>thou shalt be heard</i>	<i>they shall be heard</i>
<i>audītō</i>	<i>audītōte</i>	<i>audītor</i>	—
<i>audītō</i>	<i>audiūntō</i>	<i>audītor</i>	<i>audiūntor</i>

INFINITIVE

PRES. <i>audire, to hear</i>	<i>audiri, to be heard</i>
PERF. <i>audivisse, to have heard</i>	<i>auditus esse, to have been heard</i>
FUT. <i>audītūrus esse, to be about to hear</i>	<i>audītum iri, to be about to be heard</i>

PARTICIPLES

PRES. <i>audiēns, -entis, hearing</i>	PERF. <i>auditus, -a, -um, heard or having been heard</i>
FUT. <i>audītūrus, -a, -um, being about to hear</i>	GERUNDIVE, <i>audiēndus, -a, -um, to be heard</i>

GERUND

SUPINE

GEN. <i>audiēndī, of hearing</i>	
DAT. <i>audiēndō, to or for hearing</i>	
ACC. <i>audiēndum, hearing</i>	<i>audītum, to hear</i>
ABL. <i>audiēndō, by hearing</i>	<i>audītū, to hear or to be heard</i>

Third Conjugation — Verbs in -iō

5. Cāpiō (verb stem cap-; pres. stems cape- and capi-), to take

Principal Parts: *Active Voice*, cāpiō, cāpere, cēpī, cāptum

Passive Voice, cāpior, cāpī, cāptus sum

INDICATIVE

Active Voice

Passive Voice

PRESENT

I take, am taking, do take

I am taken, etc.

cāpiō cāpimus

cāpior cāpimur

cāpis cāpitis

cāperis (-re) cāpiminī

cāpit cāpiunt

cāpitur cāpiuntur

IMPERFECT

I took, was taking, did take

I was taken, etc.

cāpiēbam, cāpiēbās, etc.

cāpiēbar, cāpiēbāris (-re), etc.

FUTURE

I shall take or be taking

I shall be taken, etc.

cāpīam, cāpiēs, etc.

cāpiar, cāpiēris (-re), etc.

PERFECT

I took or have taken

I was taken or have been taken

cēpī, cēpísti, etc.

cāptus, -a, -um, sum, es, etc.

PLUPERFECT

I had taken or had been taking

I had been taken

cēperam, cēperās, etc.

cāptus, -a, -um, eram, érās, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have taken or been taking

I shall have been taken

cēperō, cēperis, etc.

cāptus, -a, -um, erō, éris, etc.

Active Voice**SUBJUNCTIVE****Passive Voice****PRESENT**cápiam, cápiās, *etc.*cápiar, capiāris (-re), *etc.***IMPERFECT**cáperem, cáperēs, *etc.*cáperer, caperēris (-re), *etc.***PERFECT**cēperim, cēperis, *etc.*cáptus, -a, -um, sim, sis, *etc.***PLUPERFECT**cēpíssem, cēpíssēs, *etc.*cáptus, -a, -um, ésssem, éssēs, *etc.***IMPERATIVE****PRESENT***take thou* *take ye*

cápe cápite

be thou taken *be ye taken*

cápere capimīni

FUTURE*thou shalt* *you shall*
take *take*cápitō capitōte
cápitō capiúntō*thou shalt be* *they shall be*
taken *taken*cápitōr —
cápitōr capiúntōr**INFINITIVE**PRES. cápere, *to take*cápi, *to be taken*PERF. cēpísse, *to have taken*cáptus ésse, *to have been taken*FUT. captūrus ésse, *to be about*
*to take*cáptum frī, *to be about to be*
taken

PARTICIPLES

Active Voice

PRES. *cápiēns, -entis, taking*FUT. *captūrus, -a, -um, being
about to take*

Passive Voice

PERF. *cáptus, -a, -um, taken or
having been taken*GERUNDIVE, *capiéndus, -a, -um,
to be taken*

GERUND

GEN. *capiéndi, of taking, etc.*

SUPINE

ACC. *cáptum, to take*ABL. *cáptū, to take or to be taken*

IRREGULAR VERBS

6. **Sum** (pres. stem *es-*; perf. stem *fu-*)Principal Parts: *sum, esse, fui, futūrus*

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I am

<i>sum</i>	<i>súmus</i>
<i>es</i>	<i>éstis</i>
<i>est</i>	<i>sunt</i>

IMPERFECT

I was

<i>eram</i>	<i>erāmus</i>
<i>erās</i>	<i>erātis</i>
<i>erat</i>	<i>erant</i>

FUTURE

I shall be

<i>erō</i>	<i>érimus</i>
<i>eris</i>	<i>éritis</i>
<i>erit</i>	<i>érunť</i>

PERFECT

I have been

<i>fui</i>	<i>fúimus</i>
<i>fuisti</i>	<i>fuistis</i>
<i>fuit</i>	<i>fuérunt (-ēre)</i>

PLUPERFECT

I had been

fúeram	fuerāmus
fuerās	fuerātis
fúerat	fúerant

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have been

fúerō	fúerimus
fúeris	fúeritis
fúerit	fúerint

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

sim	sīmus
sīs	sītis
sit	sint

IMPERFECT

essem	essēmus
essēs	essētis
esset	essent

PERFECT

fúerim	fúerimus
fúeris	fúeritis
fúerit	fúerint

PLUPERFECT

fúissem	fuiissēmus
fúissēs	fuiissētis
fúisset	fuiissent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

<i>be thou</i>	<i>be ye</i>
es	este

FUTURE

<i>thou shalt be</i>	<i>ye shall be</i>
éstō	estōte
<i>he shall be</i>	<i>they shall be</i>
éstō	súntō

INFINITIVE

PRES. *esse, to be*PERF. *fuisse, to have been*FUT. *futūrus esse, to be about to be*

PARTICIPLE

futūrus, -a, -um, about to be

7. Póssum (potis, able + sum), to be able, can

Principal Parts : possum, pósse, pótuī, —

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I can, am able

póssum	póssumus
pótes	potéstis
pótest	póssunt

IMPERFECT

I could, was able

póteram, -ās, etc.

FUTURE

I can, shall be able

póterō, -is, etc.

PERFECT

I could, have been able

pótuī, -istī, etc.

PLUPERFECT

I could have, had been able

potúeram, -ās, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT

I could have, shall have been able

potúerō, -is, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

póssim	possimus
póssis	possitis
póssit	póssint

IMPERFECT

póseem, -ēs, etc.

PERFECT

potúerim, -is, etc.

PLUPERFECT

potúissem, -issēs, etc.

INFINITIVE

PRESENT

to be able

pósse

PERFECT

to have been able

potúisse

8. Prōsum (prō + sum), to profit

Principal Parts: prōsum, prōdēsse, prōfutūrus

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

prōsum	prōsumus
prōdes	prōdētis
prōdest	prōsunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

prōsim	prosfmus
prōsis	prosfitis
prōsit	prōsint

IMPF.	prōderam
FUT.	prōderō
PERF.	prōfui
PLUPF.	prōfueram
FUT. PERF.	prōfuerō

prōdēssem

prōfuerim

prōfuissem

IMPERATIVE

PRES.	prōdes
FUT.	prōdestō

prōdestōte

INFINITIVE

PRESENT	PERFECT	FUTURE
prōdēsse	prōfuisse	prōfutūrus esse

PARTICIPLE

FUTURE

prōfutūrus, -a, -um

9. Vōlō, to be willing, to wish**Nōlō (nōn + volō), to be unwilling****Mālō (magis + volō), to be more willing, to prefer**

Principal Parts: vōlō, velle, vōlui, —
 nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, —
 mālō, mālle, mālui, —

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

	vólō	nōlō	mālō
	vis	nōn vis	māvis
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nolumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	vólunt	nólunt	mālunt
IMPF.	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
FUT.	vólam, -ēs	nōlam, -ēs	mālam, -ēs
PERF.	vólui	nōlui	mālui
PLUPF.	volúeram	nólúeram	mālúeram
FUT. PERF.	volúerō	nólúerō	mālúerō

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

	vélím	nólim	málim
	vélis	nólis	mális
	vélit	nólit	málit
	velfmus	nólfmus	málfmus
	velftis	nólfis	málfis
	vélint	nólint	málint
IMPF.	véllem, -ēs	nóllem, -ēs	mállem, -ēs
PERF.	volúerim	nólúerim	mālúerim
PLUPF.	volúíssem	nólúíssem	mālúíssem

IMPERATIVE

PRES.	—	nóli	—
	—	nólite	—
FUT.	—	nólitō	—
	—	nólitōte, nólúntō	—

INFINITIVE

PRES.	vélle	nólle	málle
PERF.	voluísse	nóluisse	máluísse

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	vólēns	nólēns	—
-------	--------	--------	---

10.

Férō, to bear, carry

Principal Parts : férō, férre, túli, látum

INDICATIVE

Active Voice**Passive Voice**

PRESENT

I bear, do bear, am bearing

I am borne, etc.

férō férimus
fers fértis
fert férunt

féror férimur
férris or -re ferímini
fértur ferúntur

IMPF. ferēbam
FUT. féram, -ēs, etc.
PERF. túli
PLUPF. túleram
FUT. PERF. túlerō

ferébar
férar, -ēris, etc.
látus sum
látus éram
látus éro

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	féram, -ās, etc.	férar, -āris, etc.
IMPF.	férrem	férrer
PERF.	túlerim	látus sim
PLUPF.	túleram	látus éssem

IMPERATIVE

	Active Voice		Passive Voice	
PRES.	fer	férte	férre	ferímini
FUT.	fértō	fértōte	fértor	—
	fértō	ferúntō	fértor	ferúntor

INFINITIVE

PRES.	férre	férri
PERF.	tulisse	lātus esse
FUT.	lātūrus esse	lātum fri

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	férēns	PERF.	lātus
FUT.	lātūrus	GERUNDIVE,	feréndus

GERUND

SUPINE

GEN.	feréndi, etc.	ACC.	lātum
		ABL.	lātū

11. **Éō**, *to go* (used only in the Active)
Fīō (pass. of **faciō**), *to be made, become*

Principal Parts: **éō**, **fīre**, **fīvi** (**fī**), **ītum**
fīō, **fīeri**, **fāctus sum**

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

éō	fīmus	fīō	fīmus
is	fītis	fīs	fītis
it	éunt	fīt	fīunt

IMPF.	fbam	fiēbam
FUT.	fbō	fflam, -ēs, etc.
PERF.	īvī (īi)	fāctus sum
PLUPF.	fveram (ieram)	fāctus eram
FUT. PERF.	fverō (ierō)	fāctus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	éam	fflam, -ās, etc.
IMPF.	frem	fierem
PERF.	fverim (ierim)	fāctus sim
PLUPF.	ivissem	fāctus essem

IMPERATIVE

PRES.	i	fte	fi	ffte
FUT.	ftō	itōte	—	—
	ftō	eúntō	—	—

INFINITIVE

PRES.	fre	fieri
PERF.	ivisse (ísse)	fāctus esse
FUT.	itūrus esse	fāctum firi

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	fēns, GEN. eúntis	PERF.	fāctus
FUT.	itūrus, -a, -um	GERUNDIVE,	faciendus

GERUND

GEN.	eúndi, etc.
------	-------------

SUPINE

ACC.	ítum	fāctum
ABL.	ítū	fāctū

12.

NUMERALS

CARDINALS	ORDINALS
1. ūnus, -a, um	primus, -a, um
2. duo, duae, duo	secundus (alter)
3. trēs, tria	tertius
4. quattuor	quārtus
5. quīnque	quīntus
6. sex	sextus
7. septem	septimus
8. octō	octāvus
9. novem	nōnus
10. decem	decimus
11. ūndecim	ūndecimus
12. duodecim	duodecimus
13. tredecim	tertius decimus
14. quattuordecim	quārtus decimus
15. quīndecim	quīntus decimus
16. sēdecim (sexdecim)	sextus decimus
17. septendecim	septimus decimus
18. duodēvigintī	duodēvicēsīmus
19. ūndēvigintī	ūndēvicēsīmus
20. vīgintī	vicēsīmus
21. { vīgintī ūnus <i>or</i> }	{ vicēsīmus primus <i>or</i> }
{ ūnus et vīgintī }	{ ūnus et vicēsīmus }
22. { vīgintī duo <i>or</i> }	{ vicēsīmus secundus <i>or</i> }
{ duo et vīgintī }	{ alter et vicēsīmus }
30. trīgintā	trīcēsīmus
40. quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsīmus
50. quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsīmus
100. centum	centēsīmus
200. ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsīmus
1000. mille	millēsīmus

13. PERSONAL PRONOUNS

	FIRST PERSON		SECOND PERSON		THIRD PERSON (REFLEXIVE)
	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plu.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plu.</i>	<i>Sing. and Plu.</i>
Nom.	égo	nōs	tū	vōs	—
Gen.	méi	{ nōstrūm (nōstrī) }	túi	{ véstrūm (véstrī) }	súi
Dat.	mhi	nōbis	tbi	vōbis	sbi
Acc.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē (sēsē)
Abl.	mē	nōbis	tē	vōbis	sē (sēsē)

14. RULES OF SYNTAX

I. The Subject of a Finite Verb is in the Nominative Case.

II. The Object of a Transitive Verb is in the Accusative Case.

III. A Predicate Noun after a neuter or passive verb takes the same case as the subject.

IV. Adjectives, Adjective Pronouns, and Participles agree with their nouns in Gender, Number, and Case.

V. A Pronoun agrees with its antecedent in Gender and Number, but its Case depends upon the construction of the clause in which it stands.

VI. A Noun joined to another noun denoting the same person or thing is in the same case by Apposition.

VII. A Noun limiting another noun denoting a different person or thing is in the Genitive.

VIII. Adjectives of *Desire*, *Knowledge*, *Fulness*, *Power*, *Sharing*, *Guilt*, and their opposites, and Verbals in *-āx*, take the Genitive.

IX. The Indirect Object of an action is in the Dative.

X. Many verbs compounded with *ad*, *ante*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, *prō*, *sub*, and *super* are followed by the Dative.

XI. After **sum** and similar verbs, the Possessor is expressed by the Dative, the thing possessed being the subject of the verb.

XII. Many verbs signifying to *Favor, Please, Trust, Obey*, and their contraries, to *Command, Resist, Persuade, Threaten, be Angry*, and the like, are followed by the Dative.

XIII. A few verbs admit two Datives, — one denoting the *Object to which*, the other the *End for which*, anything is, or is done.

XIV. Adjectives of *Nearness, Friendliness, Fitness, Likeness*, or their opposites, take a Dative of the object to which the quality is directed.

XV. The Subject of the Infinitive is in the Accusative.

XVI. Duration of Time and Extent of Space are expressed by the Accusative.

XVII. Verbs meaning to *Make, Choose, Name, Call*, and the like, take two Accusatives of the same person or thing.

XVIII. Verbs of *Asking, Teaching, and Concealing* take two Accusatives, — one of a *person*, the other of a *thing*.

XIX. *Cause, Means, and Instrument* are expressed by the Ablative. *Manner* is expressed by the Ablative, either alone or joined with the preposition **cum**.

XX. That of which anything is *deprived*, or from which it is *removed or separated*, is expressed by the Ablative.

XXI. The Degree of Difference is expressed by the Ablative.

XXII. Time at or within which is expressed by the Ablative.

XXIII. A noun with an adjective or limiting Genitive is in the Ablative after the verb **sum**, or another noun, to denote the *Character or Quality* of a person or thing.

NOTE. — Instead of the Ablative, the Genitive is sometimes used.

XXIV. The Ablative of Specification is used with Nouns, Adjectives, and Verbs, to denote *in what respect* anything is true.

XXV. The Comparative is followed by the Ablative when **quam** (*than*) is not expressed.

XXVI. The Deponent Verbs **ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior**, and **vescor** are followed by the Ablative.

XXVII. The Voluntary Agent of a verb in the Passive Voice is in the Ablative with **ā** or **ab**.

XXVIII. A noun and a participle, or a noun and an adjective, or two nouns, may be put in the Ablative to denote the *time*, *cause*, or other *attendant circumstance* of an action.

This is called the *Ablative Absolute*.

XXIX. *Place Where* is expressed by the *Ablative* with *in*; but names of *Towns* and *Small Islands*, *Domus*, and *Rūs* are put in the *Locative Case* without a preposition.

XXX. After verbs of *Motion*, *Place to which* is expressed by the *Accusative*, *Place from which* by the *Ablative*; names of *Towns*, *Small Islands*, *Domus*, and *Rūs*, without a preposition; other nouns take *ad* or *in* with the *Accusative*, and *ab*, *dē*, or *ex* with the *Ablative*.

XXXI. Verbs of *Declaring*, *Thinking*, *Believing*, *Knowing*, take after them an Infinitive with a Subject Accusative.

XXXII. Clauses denoting *Purpose* or *Result* take the Subjunctive after *ut*, *nē*, *quōd*, *quīn*, *quōminus*, or a Relative.

XXXIII. *Cum* Causal (*since*) or Concessive (*although*) takes the Subjunctive; *Cum* Temporal (*when*) generally takes the Subjunctive of the Imperfect and Pluperfect Tenses, and the Indicative of the Present and Perfect Tenses.

XXXIV. The Indirect Question has its verb in the Subjunctive.

XXXV. In Indirect Discourse (*Ōrātiō Obliqua*) the verb of the *Principal* clause is in the *Infinitive*, and the verbs of the *Subordinate* clauses are in the *Subjunctive*.

XXXVI. The Subjunctive is used to express a *command* or an *exhortation*. In this sense it is used chiefly in the *first* and *second* persons singular and the *first* and *third* persons plural of the Present Tense.

XXXVII. The Supine in *-um* is used with verbs of *Motion* to express *Purpose*.

XXXVIII. After verbs of *Giving*, *Sending*, *Undertaking*, *Contracting for*, and the like, the Accusative of the Gerundive in agreement with the object of the verb is used to express *Purpose*.

XXXIX. A Principal Tense in the main clause of a complex sentence is followed by a Principal Tense in the dependent clause; and a Historical Tense in the main clause is followed by a Historical Tense in the dependent clause.

15. SPECIAL VOCABULARIES

235

Porsena, -ae, m., *Porsena*, a proper name.

Infestus, -a, -um, adj., *hostile, dangerous.*

umquam, adv., *at any time, ever.*

aliās, adv., *at another time.*

ante, adv., *before.*

tantus, -a, -um, adj., *so great, so much, such.*

terror, -ōris, m., *alarm, terror.*

invādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsum, to enter, fall upon, attack.

adeō, adv., *so, to such a degree.*

validus, -a, -um, adj., *strong, powerful, staunch.*

Clūsīnus, -a, -um, adj., *of Clusium, Clusian.*

dēmigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to migrate, remove.

saepiō, -īre, -sī, -tum, to hedge in, fortify, guard.

praesidium, -ī, n., *a protection, guard, garrison.*

pars, **partis**, f., *a part.*

mūrūs, -ī, m., *a wall.*

obiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, to throw before, set against, use as a defense.

tueor, -ēri, -tūtus sum, to guard, defend.

238

pōns, **pontis**, m., *a bridge.*

sublicius, -a, -um, adj., *resting upon piles, sublician.*

iter, **itineris**, n., *a way, march, journey.*

paene, adv., *almost, nearly.*

nisi, conj., *if not, unless, except.*

cōgnōmen, -**minis**, n., *a surname, name.*

āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, to lose, send away.

extrēmus, -a, -um, adj., *outermost, farthest, farthest part of.*

occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to take possession of, seize, occupy.

aciēs, -ēī, f., *a sharp point, edge, line of battle.*

sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum, to sustain, hold in check, withstand.

dōnec, conj., *as long as, until.*

tergum, ī, n., *the back, rear.*

interrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, to break apart, to break in pieces.

audācia, -ae, f., *boldness, rashness, audacity.*

obstupefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum, to astonish, amaze, stupefy.

rescindō, -ere, -scidī, -scisum, to cut off, cut down, break down.
dēsiliō -ire, -uī, -sultum, to leap down.
tēlum, -ī, n., a missile, weapon.

superincidō, -ere, —, —, to fall from above, fall upon.
incolumis, -e, adj., unimpaired, unharmed, safe.
trānō, -nāre, -nāvī, —, to swim over, swim across.

241

grātus, -a, -um, adj., acceptable, pleasing, thankful, grateful.
ergā, prep., towards.
virtūs, -ūtis, f., manliness, courage, virtue.
cīvitās, -tātis, f., the state.
pūblicō, adv., publicly, in behalf of the state.

quantus, -a, -um, adj., how much, as.
circumarō, -āre, -āvī, —, to plow around.
statua, -ae, f., an image, statue.
Comitium, -ī, n., a place of meeting, the Comitium.
pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum, to put, place.

246

quod, conj., because.
iniūria, -ae, f., injustice, wrong, injury.
Ēpirus, -ī, f., Epirus, a country in the northwest of Greece.
contrā, prep., against.
auxilium, -ī, n., help, assistance, succor.
pōscō, -ere, popōscī, —, to ask, demand, request.
genus, -eris, n., race, stock, family, kind, class.
origō, -inis, m., a beginning, descent, lineage, origin.
trahō, -ere, trāxī, trāctum, to draw, drag, drive.
paulō, adv., a little.

prīmum, in the first place, first, for the first time.
trānsmarīnus, -a, -um, adj., beyond sea, from over the sea.
cōnsul, -is, m., a consul. The highest magistrate of the Roman republic.
explorātor, -ōris, m., a spy, scout.
castra, -ōrum, n., a camp. Used only in the plu. in this sense.
ostendō, -ere, -ī, ostentum, to show, exhibit.
dīmittō, -ere, -misī, -misum, to send out, dismiss.
renūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to carry tidings back, report.

249

committō, -ere, -misi, -missum,
to bring together, join, begin.

mox, adv., soon, directly, presently.

pēs, pedis, m., a foot; **pedem**
referre, to retreat, go back.

referō, -ferre, rettuli, relātum,
to bear back, bring back.

elephantus, -i, m., an elephant.

mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to
change.

fortūna, -ae, f., fortune, chance,
good fortune.

corpus, -oris, n., a body.

molēs, -is, f., bulk, mass, difficulty.

terribilis, -e, adj., frightful,
dreadful, terrible.

superāstō, -āre, -stitī, —, to
stand upon.

speciēs, —, f., sight, look, appearance.

turbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to disturb,
confound, throw into disorder.

equus, -i, m., a horse.

odor, -ōris, m., smell, scent, odor.

bēlva, -ae, f., a beast, monster.

exterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, to
strike with terror, frighten, terrify.

essor, -ōris, m., one who sits,
a sitter, a rider.

vel, conj., or if you choose, or
either; **vel . . . vel,** either . . .
or.

excutiō, -ere, -cussi, -cussum,
to shake off, remove.

fuga, -ae, f., flight.

abripīō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptum,
to take away by force, to carry
off.

nox, noctis, f., night.

finis, -is, f., an end, boundary,
limit. In the plural, territory.

captivus, -a, -um, adj., taken
prisoner, captive. As a substantive, a prisoner.

summus, -a, -um, adj. sup.,
highest, greatest, the top of.

honor, -ōris, m., honor, distinction.

252

adversus, -a, -um, adj., turned
towards, facing, in front.

vulnus, -eris, n., a wound.

trux, trucis, adj., wild, fierce,
stern.

mortuus, -a, -um, adj., dead.

iaceō, -ēre, -uī, —, to lie, be
prostrate, lie dead.

vōx, vōcis, f., the voice, word,
exclamation.

tōtus, -a, -um, adj., all, the
whole, entire.

orbis, -is, m., *a circle, the world.*
tālis, -e, adj., *such, of such a kind.*
mīles, -itis, m. and f., *a soldier, soldiery.*
contingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctum,
to touch, to happen, to fall to one's lot.
amīcus, -ī, m., *a friend.*
grātulor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep.,
to be glad, to congratulate.
victōria, -ae, f., *victory.*
inquam, inquis, inquit, etc.,
def. verb, to say.
rōbur, -oris, n., *hard wood, oak, strength, flower.*

iterum, adv., *again, a second time.*
modus, -ī, m., *measure, manner, way.*
ūllus, -a, -um, adj., *any, any one.*
contendō, -ere, -ī, -tentum, *to strive for, to pursue, to hasten, to fight.*
ferrum, -ī, n., *iron, sword, tool.*
vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to lay waste, ravage, desolate.*
vicēsimus, -a, -um, *ordinal adj., twentieth.*
lapis, -idis, m., *a stone.*

255

obviam, adv., *in the way, against, to meet.*
āiō, ais, ait, etc., *def. verb, to say, affirm.*
hydra, -ae, f., *a hydra.*
tot, indecl. adj., *so many.*
caput, -itis, n., *the head, the life.*
renāscor, -ī, -nātus sum, dep.
verb, to be born again, to grow again.
quot, indecl. adj., *how many, as.*
praecidō, -ere, -ī, -cīsum, *to cut off in front, cut off.*

dē, prep. with abl., *about, concerning, from.*
redimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēptum, *to buy back, to ransom, to redeem.*
honōrificē, adv., *honorably, with respect.*
pretium, -ī, n., *price, ransom.*
reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, *to give back, return.*
liberālitās, -tātis, f., *generosity, liberality.*
excipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *to take out, to receive.*

258

mīlis, -e, adj., *mild, gentle, kind.*
plācābilis, -e, adj., *placable, conciliatory.*

comes, -itis, m. and f., *a companion, associate, attendant.*

olēmentia, -ae, f., *moderation, forbearance, mercy.*

hūmānitās, -tātis, f., *humanity, kindness, refinement.*

experior, -iri, -pertus sum, dep., *to try, to test, experience.*

In the perf., *to know by experience.*

sērō, adv., *late, too late.*

intellegō, -ere, -lēxi, -lēctum, *to come to know, to understand.*

socius, -i, m., *a companion, an ally.*

accipiō, ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *to receive, accept, to learn.*

sors, sortis, f., *a lot, fate, fortune.*

miseror, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *to lament, deplore, pity.*

aliquantō, adv., *somewhat, rather.*

liberē, adv., *freely, openly.*

vinum, -i, n., *wine.*

incalēscō, -ere, -calui, inc., *to grow warm, to become heated.*

dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *to carry away, to report.*

arcessō, -ere, -ivi, -itum, *to call, summon.*

nonnūllus, -a, -um, adj., *some, several.* As a substantive in the plural.

convivium, -i, n., *a social feast, a banquet.*

parum, adv., *too little, not enough.*

loquor, loqui, locūtus sum, dep., *to speak, talk, say.*

periculum, -i, n., *a trial, danger, risk.*

simplex, -icis, adj., *simple, frank, open.*

cōfessiō, -ōnis, f., *a confession, an acknowledgment.*

culpa, -ae, f., *a fault, guilt, blame.*

discutiō, -ere, -cussi, -cussum, *to shatter, to remove, dispel.*

percontor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *to ask particularly, inquire.*

num, adv., *whether* (in indirect questions).

perveniō, -ire -vēni, ventum, *to come up, arrive, reach.*

auris, -is, f., *the ear.*

dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *to revolt, to be wanting, to fail, to give out.*

plūs, plūris, adj., *more.*

gravis, -e, adj., *weighty, serious, severe, earnest.*

mālō, mālī, mālui, *to choose rather, to prefer.*

subrideō, -ēre, -risi, *to smile.*

261

igitur, conj., *then, therefore, accordingly.*

putō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *to reckon, consider, think.*

glōriōsus, -a, -um, adj., *full of glory, famous, glorious.*

foedus, -eris, n., *treaty, league, alliance.*

aequus, -a, -um, adj., *even, just, fair, equal.*

condiciō, -ōnis, f., *condition, terms, agreement.*

prōpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, *to place before, put forth, propose.*

familiāris, -e, adj., *of a household, intimate, friendly.*

multum, adv., *much, greatly.*

apud, prep. with acc., *with, in the presence of.*

grātia, -ae, f., *favor, friendship, esteem, thanks.*

valeō, -ere, -uī, —, to be *strong, to have power, to have influence.*

ēloquentia, -ae, f., *eloquence.*

expūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to

take by assault, to storm, to capture.

cupiditās, -ātis, f., *desire, passion, ambition.*

adulor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *to flatter, fawn upon.*

sermō, -ōnis, m., *talk, conversation, discourse.*

aperiō, -īre, -uī, -ertum, to *open, to disclose, to reveal.*

volō, velle, voluī, to wish.

diciō, -ōnis, f., *dominion, sway, rule.*

subiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -lectum, to *place under, to make subject.*

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to go *over, to surpass, to overcome.*

dēstinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to *design, intend.*

264

nec, adv., *nor and not.*

difficilis, -e, adj., *difficult, hard.*

nōndum, adv., *not yet.*

perspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spec-tum, *to look through, to perceive, see through.*

ego, meī, mihi, etc., I.

nōs, acc. plu. of ego.

quies, -ētis, f., *rest, repose, quiet.*

dulcis, -e, adj., *sweet, agreeable, pleasant.*

ōtium, -ī, n., *ease, leisure, peace.*

frui, -ī, fructus sum, dep., to *enjoy, delight in.*

impediō, -īre, -ivī, -itum, to en- *tangle, hinder, obstruct.*

quōminus, conj., *by which the less, that not, to prevent.*

iste, ista, istud, pron., *this, that, that of yours.*

domus, -ūs, f., *a house, home.*

dōnum, -ī, n., *a gift, present.*

circumeō, -īre, -ivī or -iī, -itum, *to go around, to visit, to canvass.*

sōlum, adv., *alone, only. nōn . . . sōlum, not only.*

spernō, -ere, sprēvī, sprētum, *to spurn, reject, scorn.*

267

intrōdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -duc-
tum, *to lead in, introduce, admit.*

cūria, -ae, f., *the senate house.*

prōpēnsus, -a, -um, adj., *inclin-*
ing towards, willing, friendly.

extollō, -ere, —, —, to
raise, praise, extol.

aequitas, -atis, f., *evenness, fair-*
ness, equity.

dissērō, -ere, -uī, -tum, to
examine, discuss, discourse about.

sententia, -ae, f., *opinion, senti-*
ment.

senātus, -ūs, m., *the senate.*

inclinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to
turn, incline, yield, give way.

caecitas, -atis, f., *blindness.*

olim, adv., *at that time, for some*
time, formerly.

cōnfēstim, adv., *immediately,*
forthwith.

lectica, -ae, f., *a litter, sedan.*

ibi, adv., *there, in that place.*

orātiō, -ōnis, f., *a speech, ora-*
tion.

dissuādeō, -ere, -suāsī, -suā-
sum, *to advise against, dis-*
suade.

respondeō, -ēre, -spōndī, -spōn-
sum, *to answer, reply.*

excēdō, -ere, -cēssī, -cēssum,
to go out, to withdraw.

270

Infāmis, -e, adj., *of ill repute,*
disreputable, infamous.

vetus, -eris, adj., *old, advanced*
in years.

status, -ūs, m., *station, position,*
condition, rank.

antequam, adv., *before, sooner*
than.

bīnī, -ae, -a, distributive nu-
meral, *two by two, two each.*

spolium, -ī, n., *spoils, booty.*

quaerō, -ere, quaesivī, quae-
sītum, *to seek, ask, inquire.*

qualis, -e, adj., *of what sort or*
kind, such as, as.

comperiō, -īre, -perī, -pertum,
to gain knowledge of, to find
out.

templum, -ī, n., *a temple, a con-*
secrated place.

cōnsessus, -ūs, m., *a collection,*
an assembly.

273

profiōscoor, -ī, -fectus sum,
dep., to set out, depart, march.

cunotātīō, -ōnis, f., *a lingering,*
delay.

placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, to
please, to be pleasing.

ferōx, -ōcis, adj., *bold, head-*
strong, fierce.

temerārius, -a, -um, adj., *rash, imprudent, indiscreet.*

acer, **acris**, **acre**, adj., *sharp, spirited, keen, active.*

sequor, -ī, **secutus sum**, dep., *to follow, adopt.*

ambō, **ambae**, **ambō**, num., *both.*

vīcus, -ī, m., *a village, hamlet.*

commūniō, -īre, -īvi, -ītum, *to fortify on all sides, to intrench.*

invītus, -a, -um, adj., *against the will, unwilling.*

conlēga, -ae, m., *a colleague.*

instruō, -ere, -struxī, -strūctum, *to form, draw up, furnish.*

radius, -ī, m., *a beam, ray.*

ventus, -ī, m., *the wind.*

oriēns, -entis, m., *the rising sun, the East.*

pulvis, -eris, m. (rarely f.), *the dust.*

adfūō, -āre, -āvī, —, *to blow towards.*

caedō, -ere, **cecidī**, **caesum**, *to cut, to cut to pieces, to slay, slaughter.*

adflīgō, -ere, -lxi, -lctum, *to strike (to the ground), to damage, injure, afflict.*

rēs pūblica, **rei pūblīcae**, f., *the commonwealth, the state, the republic.*

276

sedeō, -ere, **sēdī**, **sessum**, *to sit.*

saxum, -ī, n., *a stone, rock.*

oppleō, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētum, *to fill, cover.*

cruor, -ōris, m., *blood, gore.*

cōnspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spec-tum, *to look at, gaze upon, observe.*

quīdam, **quaedam**, **quoddam** or **quiddam**, indef. pron., *a certain, some.*

tribūnus, -ī, m., *a tribune.*

tuus, -a, -um, poss. pron., *thine, your.*

mors, -tis, f., *death.*

lacrima, -ae, f., *a tear.*

satis, *enough.* Used as an adv., or as an indecl. adj. or noun.

lūctus, -tis, m., *sorrow, grief, lamentation.*

tū, **tui**, pres. pron., *thou, you.*

mactus, -a, -um, adj., *worshiped, honored; macte virtūte, good luck! well done!*

estō, fut. imper. of **sum**, 2d sing. : *thou shalt be, be thou.*

caveō, -ere, **cāvī**, **cautum**, *to be on one's guard, take heed, beware.*

exiguus, -a, -um, adj., *small, scanty, short.*

ēvādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsum, *to go out, escape.*

perdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, *to make way with, waste, lose, ruin.*

abēō, -īre, -ī, —, to go away, depart.

mūniō, -īre, -īvi, -ītum, to fortify, guard, defend.

priusquam, adv., sooner than, before that.

adveniō, -īre, -vēni, -ventum, to come to, to reach, arrive at.

firmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to make firm, strengthen.

strāgēs, -is, f., an overthrow, ruin, slaughter, carnage.

pator, pati, passus sum, dep., to suffer, permit, allow.

expirō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to breathe out, perish, expire.

alter, altera, alterum, gen. alterius, adj. pron., the other (of two), one (of two).

paucus, -a, -um, adj., a few, little.

perfugiō, -ere, -fūgi, —, to flee for refuge, take refuge.

cōsulāris, -e, adj., of a consul, consular. As a substantive, an ex-consul.

aut, conj., or. aut . . . aut, eūther . . . or.

praetōrius, -a, -um, adj., of a praetor, praetorian. As a substantive, an ex-praetor.

occidō, -ere, -cidī, -cāsum, to fall, perish, be slain.

vīginti, num. adj., twenty.

nōbilis, -e, adj., well known, famous, high born.

trecenti, -ae, -a, num. adj., three hundred.

mille, num. adj., indeclinable in the sing., a thousand. In the plu., a substantive, declined, mīlia, mīlium, mīlibus, etc.

quīngenti, -ae, -a, num. adj., five hundred.

279

tēstimōnium, -i, n., testimony, evidence, proof.

modius, -i, m., a measure, a peck.

dētrahō, -ere, -trāxi, -trāctum, to draw off, take away, remove.

(cēterus), -a, -um, adj., the rest. Nom. sing. masc. not used.

suadeō, -ēre, suāsī, suāsum, to advise, urge, persuade.

fessus, -a, -um, adj., wearied, tired.

praefectus, -i, m., an overseer, commander.

cēssō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to delay, cease, stop.

hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., to urge, exhort.

pergō, -ere, perrēxi, perrēc-tum, to go on, proceed, hasten.

quīntus, -a, -um, ordinal num., fifth.

Capitōlium, -i, n., the Capitol.

epulor, -āri, -ātus sum, dep.,
to feast, banquet.

probō, -āre -āvī, -ātum, to ap-
prove, commend, test.

nīmfrum, adv., doubtless, surely,
truly.

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, dep., to
use, employ, enjoy.

nesciō, -īre, -ivī, —, not to
know, to be ignorant.

mora, -ae, f., a delay.

salūs, -ūtis, f., safety, welfare.

282

dēvertō, -ere, -ī, —, to turn
aside.

dēliciae, -ārum, f. plu., a delight,
charm, allurement.

ardor, -ōris, m., eagerness, zeal.

languēscō, -ere, -languī, —,
incept., to grow faint, fail,
relax.

vērē, adv., truly, truthfully.

numquam, adv., at no time,
never.

pavor, -ōris, m., a trembling,
terror, dread.

clādēs, -is, f., destruction, disas-
ter, calamity.

nūntius, -ī, m., a messenger,
courier, tidings.

mentiō, -ōnis, f., a mention.

quīn etiam, nay moreover.

redeō, -īre, -ivī, -itum, to go back,
return.

dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to
have no hope, to despair of, give
up.

temeritās, -ātis, f., rashness,
foolhardiness, temerity.

sēgniter, adv., slowly, sluggishly,
lazily.

ōtiōsē, adv., leisurely, without
haste.

interim, adv., meanwhile, in the
meantime.

respīrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to take
breath, to recover, revive.

285

iuventūs, -ūtis, f., youth, young
people.

manūmittō, -ere, -misi, -mis-
sum, to release, set at liberty,
make free.

egeō, -ēre, -ui, —, to need, to
want, to be lacking.

aerārium, -ī, n., a treasury, pub-
lic funds.

(ops), opīs, f., aid, wealth, treas-
ure.

libēns, -entis, adj., willing, with
readiness, with pleasure.

medium, -ī, n., the middle. **in**
medium, for public use.

prōferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, to
produce, bring forth.

praeter, prep., besides.

bullā, -ae, f., *the bulla, an amulet.*
singulī, -ae, -a, adj., *one by one, apiece.*

quisquam, —, **quicquam** (**quidquam**), indef. pron., *any one, any.*

aurum, -ī, n., *gold.*

exemplum, -ī, n., *an example.*

imitor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep. verb, *to imitate.*

tribus, -ūs, f., *a tribe.*

vix, adv., *scarcely, with difficulty.*

tabula, -ae, f., *writing tablet, record.*

scriba, -ae, m., *a scribe, a clerk.*
privātus, -a, -um, adj., *private, personal.*

pūblicus, -a, -um, adj., *public.*
cōpia, -ae, f., *abundance, plenty, opportunity.* In the plu., *forces.*

pōstulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to ask, demand.*

iūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to swear, make oath.*

impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to obtain a request, to gain one's end, to obtain.*

288

cōnseō, -āre, -uī, -um, *to judge, think, believe.*

necessārius, -a, -um, adj., *unavoidable, necessary.*

ēgredior, -ī, -gressus sum, dep., *to go out, leave.*

aliquis (-quī), **aliqua**, **aliquid** (-quod), indef. pron., *some one, any one, something, anything.*

oblīvīscor, -ī, **oblītus** sum, dep., *to forget.*

regredior, -ī, -gressus sum, dep., *to go back, return.*

ante, prep. with acc., *before.*

adsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum, dep., *to follow up, overtake.*

ergō, adv., *accordingly, therefore.*

reditus, -ūs, m., *a going back, return.*

interpretor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *to explain, understand, interpret.*

innōtēscō, -ere, -nōtuī, —, incep., *to become known.*

comprehendō, -ere, -ī, -hēnsus, *to seize, arrest, apprehend.*

vinciō, -īre, **vinxi**, **vinotum**, *to bind, fetter, fasten.*

frangō, -ere, **frēgi**, **frāctum**, *to break, subdue, overcome.*

excelsus, -a, -um, adj., *elevated, high, noble.*

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

A

ā or **ab**, prep. with abl., *from, away from, by*; **ab latere apertō**, *on the right flank*.

abdō, -ere, -dīdī, -dītum [**ab** + **dō**], *to put away, remove, conceal*.

abeō, -īre, -īī, — [**ab** + **eō**], *to go away, depart*.

abiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum [**ab** + **iaciō**], *to throw away, cast off, throw aside*.

abripīō, -ere, -uī, -reptum [**ab** + **rapiō**], *to take away forcibly, snatch away, carry off*.

abstineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum [**abs** + **teneō**], *to keep back, keep from, abstain*.

absum, -esse, -fuī [**ab** + **sum**], *to be away, be absent, be far from*.

ac (see **atque**), conj., *and, and also*.

Acca, -ae, f., *Acca*, a proper name.

accēdō, -ere, -cēssī, -cēssum [**ad** + **cēdō**], *to go to, approach, happen, befall*.

accelerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**ad** + **celerō**], *to hasten, make haste*.

acciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum [**ad** + **ciō**], *to summon, send for, invite*.

accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum [**ad** + **capiō**], *to receive, accept, take*.

accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**ad** + **causa**], *to call to account, blame, accuse*.

acer, **ācris**, **ācre**, adj., *sharp, keen, hasty, impetuous*. Comp. **ācrior**, Sup. **ācerrimus**.

Achillēs, -is, m., *Achilles*, a Grecian hero.

aciēs, -ēī, f., *a sharp edge, point, line of battle, battle array*.

ācriter [**acer**], adv., *sharply, keenly, fiercely*. Comp. **ācrius**, Sup. **ācerrimē**.

ad, prep. with acc., *to, towards, near, at, according to*; with numerals, *about*.

addō, -ere, -dīdī, -dītum [**ad** + **dō**], *to put to, join, add*.

addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum [**ad** + **dūcō**], *to lead to, bring to, lead up*.

adeō [**ad** + **eō**], adv., *to this, so far, so, to such a degree*.

adeō, -īre, -īī, -ītum [**ad** + **eō**], *to go to, come to, approach, draw near*.

adferō, adferre, attulī, adlātum [ad + ferō], *to bring to, carry, apply; manūs adferre, to use force.*

adfinis, -e [ad + finis], *adj., adjoining, near to.* Hence, *subst.*

adfinis, -is, m. and f., a connection by marriage, a relative.

adfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ad + firmō], *to strengthen, maintain, assert.*

adfligō, -ere, -flīxī, -flīctum [ad + fligō], *to overthrow, harass, distress.* **adflīctus, -a, -um,** *part., used as an adj., miserable, wretched.*

adflo, -āre, -āvī, — [ad + flo], *to blow towards.*

adhibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum [ad + habeō], *to turn to, apply, employ, have recourse to.*

adimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēptum [ad + emō], *to take away.*

adiuvō, -āre, -iūvī, -iūtum [ad + iuvō], *to help, assist.*

administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ad + ministrō], *to manage, direct.*

admittō, -ere, -misi, -misum [ad + mittō], *to send to, give access, admit.*

admoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum [ad + moveō], *to move to, bring near, apply.*

adorior, -irī, -ortus sum [ad + orior], *dep., to fall upon, to attack.*

adornō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ad + ornō], *to provide, furnish, equip.*

adsequor, -ī, -secutus sum [ad + sequor], *dep., to follow up, overtake, come up with.*

adolēscēns, -entis [adolēscō], *adj., young.* As *subst., a youth.*

adulor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., to flatter.

adultus, -a, -um [adolēscō], *adj., mature, adult.*

adveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum [ad + veniō], *to come to, arrive at.*

adventus, -ūs [adveniō], *a coming, approach, arrival.*

adversārius, -a, -um [adversus], *adj., opposite, hostile.* As *subst., an opponent, enemy, adversary.*

adversor, -ārī, -ātus sum [adversus], *dep., to oppose, resist.*

adversus, -a, -um [advertō], *adj., turned towards, facing, in front, adverse.*

adversus, prep. with acc., against.

aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [aedēs + faciō], *to build, construct.*

aegritūdō, -inis [aeger], *f., sickness, grief, vexation.*

aequitās, -ātis [aequus], *f., evenness, fairness, equity.*

aequus, -a, -um, adj., even, fair, favorable. *Comp. aequalior, Sup. aequissimus.*

aerārium, -ī [aes], *n., the treasury, the public treasure.*

aetās, -ātis, f., time of life, age.

Āfrica, -ae, f., Africa.

ager, agrī, m., a field, land.

agger, -eris, m., a mound, rampart, heap of earth.

āgmen, -minis [agō], *n., an army on the march, a moving column, troops.*

agnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus [ad + gnōscō], *to recognize, understand.*

agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum, to lead, drive, act, do, move; **grātias agere**, to thank, give thanks.

agricola, -ae, m., a farmer.

aiō, def. verb, to say, assent, affirm.

Alba, -ae, f., Alba.

Albānī, -ōrum, m., inhabitants of Alba.

Alesia, -ae, f., Alesia.

aliās [alius], adv., at another time; **nōn aliās**, at no other time.

aliēnus, -a, -um [alius], adj., of another, of others, another's, others'.

aliquantō, adv., somewhat, rather. **aliquis, aliqua, aliquid**, indef. pron., some one, any one; neut., something.

alius, alia, aliud, adj., another, other.

alō, -ere, -ui, altum or alitum, to feed, nourish, maintain.

alter, -tera, -terum, adj., the other of two, one, another.

altus, -a, -um, adj., high, deep.

alveus, -ī, m., a small ship, a skiff.

ambō, ambae, ambō, both.

amicus, -ī [amō], m., a friend.

amittō, -ere, -misi, -missum [ab + mittō], to send away, let go, lose.

amō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, to love.

amor, -ōris [amō], m., love, affection.

Amūlius, -ī, m., Amulius, the younger brother of Numitor.

an, conj., whether, or; **nesciō an**, I know not whether = probably, perhaps.

ancile, -is, n., a small oval shield.

angustus, -a, -um, adj., narrow, contracted. Comp. **angustior**, Sup. **angustissimus**.

animadvertō, -ere, -ī, -versum [animum + advertō], to turn the mind, give attention to, consider, regard, punish.

animus, -ī, m., the mind.

annus, -ī, m., a year.

ante, prep. with acc., before. As adverb, before, in time or space.

anteferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum [ante + ferō], to bear before, or in front.

antequam, adv., sooner than, before.

Antistius, -ī, m., Antistius Reginus, one of Cæsar's lieutenants.

Antōnius, -ī, m., Marcus Antonius, one of Cæsar's lieutenants.

ānulus, -ī, m., a ring.

anxius, -a, -um, adj., anxious, solicitous.

aper, apri, m., a wild boar.

aperiō, -īre, -ui, -tum, to uncover, open.

apertus, -a, -um, adj., uncovered, open; **latus apertum**, the right side, as that side was not covered by the shield.

appellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, to address, call, call by name, name.

appetō, -ere, -ivi or -ii, -itum, to strive for, seek after, attack, draw nigh, be at hand.

Appius, -ī, m., Appius Claudius, a famous Roman.

appropinquō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, to come near, approach.

apud, prep. with acc., *with, near, before, among, at, in the presence of*.

Āpŭlia, -ae, f., *Apulia, a country in southeastern Italy*.

aqua, -ae, f., *water*.

aquila, -ae, f., *an eagle*.

āra, -ae, f., *an altar*.

arbit̃er, -tr̃i, m., *a spectator, witness*.

arceō, -ēre, -uī, —, *to shut up, keep away, prevent*.

arcessō, -ere, -īvi, -itum, *to call, summon, send for*.

ārdor, -ōris, m., *heat, eagerness, zeal*.

arma, -ōrum, n., *only in the plu., implements, arms, weapons*.

armātūra, -ae [armō], f., *armor, armed men, troops; levis armātūra, light infantry*.

armilla, -ae, f., *a bracelet, armlet*.

armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to arm, equip*.

Arvernus, -ī, m., *an Arvernian*.
The Arverni were a powerful Celtic tribe.

arx, arcis, f., *a citadel, fortress*.

ascēsus, -ūs, m., *an ascent, a way up, an approach*.

aspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum [ad + speciō], *to look at, behold, observe*.

asylum, -ī, n., *a place of refuge, sanctuary, asylum*.

at, conj., *but, but on the other hand*.

atque (before consonants āc), conj., [ad + que], *and, and also, and in fact*.

attribuō, -ere, -ī, -itum [ad + tribuō], *to assign, allot, ascribe, give*.

auctōritās, -ātis [augeō], f., *authority, power, responsibility, influence*.

audācia, -ae [audāx], f., *boldness, daring, bravery, audacity*.

audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, *semi-dep., to venture, dare*.

audiō, -īre, -īvi or -īi, -itum, *to hear, listen to, regard*.

auferō, -ferre, abstuli, ablātum [ab + ferō], *to take away, carry off, remove*.

augeō, -ēre, auxi, auctum, *to increase, enlarge*.

augurium, -ī [augur], n., *the observance of omens, augury, divination*.

augustus, -a, -um, adj., *reverend, venerable, majestic*.

aureus, -a, -um [aurum], adj., *of gold, golden*.

auris, -is, f., *the ear, attention*.

aurum, -ī, n., *gold*.

auspiciū, -ī, n., *divination by the flight of birds, auspices; auspicia adhibēre, to consult the auspices*.

aut, conj., *or, or at least*.

autem, conj., *but, however, moreover*.

Automatia, -ae, f., *Automatia, the goddess of fortune*.

auxilium, -ī, n., *help, aid, succor*.
In the plu., *auxiliary troops, auxiliaries*.

Aventinus, -a, -um, adj., *relating to the Aventine, of the Aventine, one of the seven hills of Rome*.

avus, -ī, m., *a grandfather*.

B

barbarus, -a, -um, adj., *foreign, strange, barbarous*. As noun, a barbarian.

bellicōsus, -a, -um [bellum], adj., *warlike, fond of fighting*.

bellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [bellum], to war, wage war, carry on war.

bellum, -I, n., war.

belua, -ae, f., a beast, wild beast.

benevolentia, -ae [bene + volō], f., good will, favor, friendship.

benignē, adv., in a friendly manner, kindly, courteously.

benignitās, -ātis [benignus], f., kindness, courtesy, friendliness.

bīnī, -ae, -a, num. adj., two by two, two each. Gen. plu. bīnūm.

bis, num. adv., twice.

bonitās, -ātis [bonus], f., goodness, integrity, virtue.

bonus, -a, -um, adj., good. Comp. melior, Sup. optimus.

Brūtus, -I, m., Brutus, one of Cæsar's lieutenants.

bullā, -ae, f., an amulet, generally of gold, worn by free-born boys.

C

C is an abbreviation for the proper name *Gaius*.

cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsum, to fall, happen, decline.

caecitās, -ātis [caecus], f., blindness.

caedēs, -is, f., a cutting down, killing, slaughter.

caedō, -ere, cecidī, caesum, to cut, cut down, slay, kill.

caelum, -I, n., the sky, heaven, heavens. Plu. wanting.

Caesar, -aris, m., Cæsar.

calamitās, -ātis, f., loss, damage, misfortune, disaster, calamity.

Campānia, -ae, f., Campania, a country of Italy, south of Rome.

campester, -tris, -tre [campus], adj., of a level field, flat, level, in the plain.

campus, -I, m., a plain, field; **campus Mārtius**, the field of Mars, an open field in Rome along the Tiber.

Caninius, -I, m., Caninius Rebilus, one of Cæsar's lieutenants.

Cannae, -ārum, f., Cannæ, a hamlet in Apulia.

canō, -ere, cecinī, cantum, to sing, chant.

caper, -prī, m., a he-goat.

capīō, -ere, cēpī, captum, to take, seize, take captive, capture.

Capitōlium, -I [caput], n., the Capitol at Rome; sometimes used for the Capitoline Hill on which the Capitol stood.

capra, -ae, f., a she-goat; **caprae palūs**, the Goat's Pool.

captīvus, -I [capīō], m., a captive, prisoner.

Capua, -ae, f., Capua, a city of Campania.

caput, -itis, n., the head; **capitis poenam**, the punishment of death, capital punishment.

carmen, -inis, n., a song, poem.

Carthāgō, -inis, f., Carthage, a city in northern Africa.

Carthāginiēnsis, -e, adj., Cartha-

- ginian, of Carthage. As noun, a Carthaginian.*
- casa**, -ae, f., a cottage, hut, cabin.
- castellum**, -i, n., a fort, citadel, fortress.
- castra**, -ōrum, n., a camp, an encampment.
- cāsus**, -ūs [cadō], m., occurrence, event, chance, fortune, calamity.
- catulus**, -i, m., a young animal, a whelp.
- causa**, -ae, f., a cause, reason. In the abl. with limiting gen., on account of, for the sake of.
- caveō**, -ere, cāvī, cautum, to be on one's guard, take care, beware.
- cōdō**, -ere, cōssī, cōssum, to give way, withdraw, retreat.
- celebrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to frequent, celebrate, honor.
- celer**, -oris, -ere, adj., swift, quick, hasty. Comp. **celerior**, Sup. **celerrimus**.
- cēlō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to hide from, hide, conceal.
- cōnseō**, -āre, -uī, -um, to estimate, judge, think, be of the opinion.
- centum**, num. adj., one hundred.
- centuria**, -ae [centum], f., a division of a hundred, a century.
- cernō**, -ere, crēvī, crētum, to distinguish, perceive, determine.
- certāmen**, -inis [certō], n., a struggle, contest, combat, battle.
- certus**, -a, -um, adj., determined, certain, sure. Comp. **certior**, Sup. **certissimus**.
- cēssō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [cōdō], to delay, pause, be idle.
- (cōterus)**, -a, -um, adj., (nom. masc. sing. not used), the other, remainder, rest. As noun, the others, the other things.
- Cineās**, -ae, m., Cineas, a counsellor of Pyrrhus.
- circā**, prep. with acc., around, about, among. As adv., round about, around.
- circuitus**, -ūs, m., a circuit, way around.
- circumarō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to plow around.
- circumdō**, -dare, -dedī, -datum, to place around, surround, invest, besiege.
- circumēō**, -īre, -īvī or -īī, -itum, to go around, visit.
- circumplector**, -ī, —, to clasp, surround, encompass.
- circumveniō**, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, to come around, surround, encompass.
- cīvis**, -is, m. and f., a citizen.
- cīvītās**, -ātis, f., citizenship, body-politic, state.
- clādēs**, -is, f., destruction, disaster, slaughter, calamity.
- clāmitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [clāmō], to cry aloud, shout.
- clāmor**, -ōris, m., a shout, cry, clamor.
- Claudius**, -i, m., Claudius, a Roman name of one of the gentes.
- claudō**, -ere, clausī, clausum, to shut, close, shut in, blockade.
- clēmēntia**, -ae, f., mildness, mercy, clemency.
- cliēs**, -entis, m., a client.
- Clūsīnus**, -a, -um, adj., of Clusium; **rēs Clūsīna**, the Clusian state.

- coacervō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, to heap together, collect in a mass.
- Cocles, -itis, m.**, Cocles, meaning one-eyed, a surname of Horatius.
- coepī, coeptus**, def. verb, to begin.
- coerceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum**, to restrain, hold in check, curb.
- cōgnōmen, -inis, n.**, a surname, family name, name.
- cōgnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum** [cum + gnōscō], to become acquainted with, recognize, know.
- cōgō, -ere, cōgī, cōactum** [cum + agō], to drive together, collect, compel, assemble.
- cohors, -tis, f.**, a company, cohort, the tenth part of a legion.
- cohortor, -ārī, -ātus sum**, dep., to encourage, incite, exhort.
- collis, -is, m.**, a hill.
- colō, -ere, -uī, cultum**, to till, cultivate, cherish, honor, worship.
- colōnus, -ī** [colō], m., a husbandman, settler, colonist.
- color, -ōris, m.**, the color, hue.
- comes, -itis** [cum + eō], m. and f., a companion, comrade, associate.
- comitium, -ī** [cum + eō], n., a place of meeting, the comitium, adjoining the Roman Forum.
- committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum** [cum + mittō], to bring together, join, engage in; **pūgnam committere**, to join battle.
- Commius, -ī, m.**, Commius, a chief of the Atrebatas.
- commoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum** [cum + moveō], to move, disturb, agitate.
- communis, -e, adj.**, common, general, public.
- compār, -paris, adj.**, like, equal to.
- comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, to bring together, compare.
- compellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, to accost, address, upbraid.
- compellō, -ere, -pullī, -pulsus** [cum + pellō], to drive together, force, compel.
- comperiō, -īre, -ī, -tus**, to ascertain, find out, discover.
- compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum**, to fill up, fill, complete.
- complūrēs, -a or -ia, adj.**, plu. only, several, many, very many.
- comprehendō, -ere, -ī, -hēnsum** [cum + prehendō], to seize, arrest, capture, comprehend.
- conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** [concilium], to win over, bring about, procure, conciliate.
- concilium, -ī, n.**, a meeting, an assembly, a council.
- concurrō, -ere, -currī or -cucurrī, -cursum** [cum + currō], to run together, establish, assemble, rush up, join battle.
- condiciō, -ōnis, f.**, condition, terms.
- conditor, -ōris** [condō], m., a founder, builder.
- condō, -ere, -didī, -ditum**, to found, establish, build, conceal.
- cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum** [cum + ferō], to bring together, gather, carry.
- cōnfertus, -a, -um, adj.**, crowded, thick, in close array.
- cōnfessiō, -ōnis, f.**, a confession, an acknowledgment.
- cōnfestim, adv.**, immediately.

- cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum** [cum + faciō], to accomplish, complete, finish, execute, perform.
- cōnfidō, -ere, -fīsus sum** [cum + fidō], semi-dep., to trust, be confident, have confidence in, rely upon.
- cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, to make firm, strengthen, establish, encourage, confirm, reassure.
- cōnflīctor, -ārē, -ātus sum**, dep., to contend, struggle.
- cōnfugīō, -ere, -fūgī, —** [cum + fugiō], to flee, take refuge, have recourse to.
- congressus, -ūs** [cum + gradior], m., a meeting, conference, engagement.
- congruō, -ere, -ī, —**, to coincide, correspond, agree with.
- cōnīciō, -ere, cōnīcī, cōnīctum** [cum + iaciō], to throw together, throw, cast; in **fugam cōnīctī**, put to flight.
- cōnīūnx, -iugis**, m. and f., a consort, spouse, husband or wife.
- cōnlēga, -ae, m., a colleague, associate.**
- cōnligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum** [cum + legō], to collect, recover, compose.
- cōnloquium, -ī** [cum + loquor], n., a conference, interview, conversation.
- conor, -ārī, -ātus sum**, dep., to undertake, try, attempt.
- cōnquirō, -ere, -quīsvī, -quīsitum** [cum + quaerō], to seek after, search for, collect.
- cōnsecrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** [cum + sacrō], to dedicate, devote, consecrate.
- cōnsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum**, dep., to follow up, overtake, pursue, obtain.
- cōnserō, -ere, -uī, -tum** [cum + serō], to connect, join; **pūgnam cōnserere**, to join battle.
- cōnsessus, -ūs, m., an assembly.**
- cōnsiderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, to look at closely, consider, examine.
- cōnsidō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum**, to sit down, settle, encamp.
- cōnsilium, -ī, n., deliberation, advice, counsel, plan, wisdom.** Cf. **concilium**.
- cōnsistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitutum**, to stand still, to halt, depend upon.
- cōnspectus, -ūs, m., sight, view, look.**
- cōnspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum** [cum + speciō], to catch sight of, see, perceive, behold.
- cōnspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum**, dep., to see, descry, discern.
- cōnsternō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, to terrify, alarm, dismay, overwhelm.
- cōnstituō, -ere, -ī, -ūtum**, to set up, place, station, determine.
- cōnstō, -āre, -stitī, —**, to stand together, exist, appear, be evident, depend upon.
- cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētum**, to become accustomed, accustom one's self. In perf. tense, to be accustomed, be wont.
- cōnsul, -is, m., a consul.**
- cōnsulāris, -e, adj., of a consul, consular.** As noun, an ex-consul.

cōsulō, -ere, -uī, -tum, *to deliberate, consult, provide for.*

contegō, -ere, -tēxi, -tēctum [cum + tegō], *to cover, bury, conceal, hide.*

contendō, -ere, -ī, -tentum, *to stretch, struggle, contend, hasten.*

contentiō, -ōnis, f., *a stretching, struggle, contest, strife.*

contineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum [cum + teneō], *to hold together, restrain, hold in check.*

contingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctum [cum + tangō], *to touch, happen, fall to one's lot.*

cōntiō, -ōnis, f., *a meeting, assembly.*

contrā, adv., *in opposition, on the other hand.* Prep. with acc., *against, contrary to.*

cōnūbium, -ī, n., *marriage, the right of intermarriage.*

conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum [cum + veniō], *to come together, meet, come, assemble; convenit, it is fit.*

convertō, -ere, -ī, -versum [cum + vertō], *to turn round, turn, change.*

convivium, -ī [cum + vivō], n., *a feasting together, banquet.*

convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [cum + vocō], *to call together, assemble, summon.*

coorior, -īrī, -ortus sum [cum + orior], dep., *to rise, rise in opposition, break forth, arise.*

cōpia, -ae, f., *abundance, plenty.* In the plu., *forces, troops, resources.*

Corinthius, -a, -um, adj., *of Corinth, Corinthian.*

Corinthus, -ī, f., *Corinth, a city of Greece.*

corpus, -oris, n., *a body, person.*

crātis, -is, f., *a hurdle, fascine, wicker-work.*

crēber, -bra, -brum, adj., *thick, frequent, crowded, numerous, abundant.* Comp., **crēbrior**; Sup., **crēberrimus**.

crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, *to believe, trust, think.*

creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to create, produce, make, choose.*

Crīmissus, -ī, m., *the Crīmissus, a river of Sicily.*

crīnis, is, m., *the hair.*

crūdēlitās, -ātis [crūdēlis], f., *cruelty.*

cruor, -ōris, m., *blood, gore.*

culpa, -ae, f., *a fault, blame, guilt, offense.*

culter, -tri, m., *a knife.*

cum, prep. with abl., *with, together with, along with.*

cum, conj., *when, while, since, although.*

cunctātiō, -ōnis, f., *a delaying, lingering, hesitation.*

cupiditās, -ātis, f., *desire, eagerness, passion.*

cūr, adv., *why?*

Curēs, -ium, f. plu., *Cures, a Sabine town, the home of Numa.*

cūria, -ae, f., *a curia, one of the divisions of the Roman people; the senate-house, place of meeting of the senate.*

cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to care for, take care, attend to, see to.*

currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursum, to run.

kursus, -ūs, m., a running, course, journey, race.

curūlis, -e [currus], adj., relating to a chariot, curule; sella curūlis, a curule chair, the chair occupied by the higher officials at Rome. Cf. § 211.

cūstōdiō, -īre, -ivī, -itum, to watch, guard.

cūstōs, -ōdis, m. and f., a guard, keeper.

D

damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to find guilty, condemn, sentence.

dē, prep. with abl., from, of, out of, about, concerning.

dea, -ae, f., a goddess.

dēcēdō, -ere, -cēssī, -cēssum [dē + cēdō], to depart, withdraw, retire.

decem, num. adj., ten.

dēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum, to decide, decree, contend.

dēcēssus, -ūs [dēcēdō], m., a going away, departure, withdrawal.

dēclivis, -e, adj., sloping down, descending.

dēclivitās, -ātis [dēclivis], f., a slope, declivity, descent.

dēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, to give up, surrender.

dēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum [dē + dūcō], to lead away, withdraw, lead forth, conduct.

dēfatigō, -āre, -āvī, -atum, to weary, fatigue, exhaust.

dēfendō, -ere, -ī, dēfēnsus, to ward off, defend.

dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum [dē + ferō], to bear away, bring, carry, report.

dēfessus, -a, -um [dēfetiscor], wearied, exhausted, worn out.

dēfetiscor, -ī, -fessus sum, dep., to become tired, grow weary.

dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, to be wanting, fail, give out.

dēfiniō, -īre, -ivī, -itum, to set bounds to, limit, fix, appoint.

dein, see deinde.

deinceps, adv., successively, one after another.

deinde, adv., then, next, afterwards.

dēlābor, -ī, -lāpsus sum, dep., to fall, glide down, descend.

dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, to blot out, destroy, overthrow.

dēliciae, -ārum, f., delight, charm.

dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, to choose out, select, pick out.

Dēmaenetus, -ī, m., Demaenetus, a Syracusan enemy of Timoleon.

dēmigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to emigrate, depart, go away, remove.

dēmittō, -ere, -misī, -missum [dē + mittō], to send down, let fall.

dēmōlior, -īrī, -ītus sum, dep., to throw down, demolish, destroy.

dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to point out, show, mention.

dēmum, adv., at length, at last, finally.

dēnique, adv., *at last, finally*.
dēpellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum [dē + pellō], *to drive out, drive away, expel, dislodge, avert*.
dēpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum [dē + pōnō], *to lay aside, deposit, give up, lay down*.
dēscendō, -ere, -ī, -scēnsum, *to climb down, descend*.
dēscribō, -ere, -scripsī, -scriptum, *to write down, describe, represent, mark off*.
dēsertus, -a, -um, adj., *deserted, solitary, waste*.
dēsiliō, -ire, -uī, -sultum [dē + saliō], *to leap down, leap*.
dēspectus, -ūs, m., *a view downward, prospect*.
dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [dē + spērō], *to be without hope, despair of*.
dēstinō, -āre, -āvī, ātum, *to fasten, determine, design, intend*.
dēsum, -esse, -fuī [dē + sum], *to be away, fail, be wanting, be lacking*.
dētegō, -ere, -tēxī, -tēctum, *to uncover, unroof*.
dētēstor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *to curse, avert, ward off; dētēstāns, uttering curses against*.
dētrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctum, *to draw off, take off, withdraw*.
dētrimentum, -ī, n., *loss, damage, injury*.
dētrūdō, -ere, -trūsī, -trūsum, *to thrust down, push off*.
dēturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to drive out in disorder, expel, dislodge*.
deus, -ī, m., *a god*. Voc., **deus**.

dēvertō, -ere, -ī, — [dē + vertō], *to turn away, turn aside, betake one's self*.
dēvexus, -a, -um, adj., *inclining, sloping downward*.
diciō, -ōnis [dīcō], f., *dominion, sway, sovereignty*. Nom. sing. not used.
dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum, *to say, speak, tell*.
dīēs, -ēī, m. or f. in sing., *a day, time; in dīēs, from day to day*.
difficilis, -e, adj., *hard, difficult*. Comp. **difficilior**; Sup. **difficilissimus**.
dīligō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus, *to single out, love, esteem*.
dīmicātiō, -ōnis, f., *a fight, contest, combat*.
dīmicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to fight, contend*.
dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum [dī + mittō], *to let go away, send in different directions, dismiss, send away*.
Dīōn, -ōnis, m., *Dion, a Syracusan*.
Dionysius, -ī, m., *Dionysius, the name of two Syracusan tyrants*.
discēdō, -ere, -cēssī, -cēssum, *to withdraw, depart, go away*.
discurrō, -ere, -currī and cucurrī, -cursum [dis + currō], *to run in different directions, run to and fro, run about*.
discutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussum, *to shatter, break up, scatter, disperse, remove, dispel*.
dīsiciō, -ere, -lēcī, -iectum [dis + iaciō], *to throw apart, scatter, disperse, break up, destroy*.

dispōnō, -ere, -posui, -positum [**dis** + **pōnō**], to place here and there, station, arrange, dispose.
dissentiō, -īre, -sēnsi, -sēnsus [**dis** + **sentiō**], to differ in opinion, dissent, be at variance.

disserō, -ere, -ui, -tum, to discuss, harangue, discourse.

dissuādēō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsus [**dis** + **suādēō**], to advise against, oppose by argument, dissuade.

distineō, -ere, -ui, -tentum, to hold apart, hinder, detain, keep apart.

distribuō, -ere, -i, -ūtum, to divide, distribute, apportion.

diū, adv., a long time, long. Comp. **diūtius**; Sup. **diūtissimē**.

diuturnitās, -ātis, f., length of time, long duration.

dividō, -ere, -vīsi, -vīsum, to divide, separate, distribute.

divinitus, adv., by divine influence, miraculously.

dō, dare, dedī, datum, to give, grant, afford, permit; **in fugam dare**, to put to flight; **operam dare**, to bestow care; **poenās dare**, to suffer punishment.

doceō, -ēre, -ui, -tum, to teach, show, inform.

dolōsē, adv., craftily, deceitfully.

dominus, -i, m., a master, lord.

domus, -ūs or -i, f., a house, home, dwelling; **domī, at home**.

dōnec, conj., as long as, until.

dōnum, -i, n., a gift, present.

dubius, -a, -um, adj., doubtful, uncertain.

dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum, to

lead, conduct, make, prolong, consider, reckon, think.

dulcis, -e, adj., sweet, pleasant. Comp. **dulcior**; Sup. **dulcissimus**.

dum, conj., while, as long as, until.

duo, -ae, -o, num. adj., two.

duodecim, num. adj., twelve.

dux, ducis, m. and f., a leader, general, guide.

E

ēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, to give out, bring forth, give birth to.

ēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum [**ē** + **dūcō**], to lead out, bring out.

ēducō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to bring up, rear.

efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum [**ex** + **faciō**], to make, accomplish, complete, bring about, cause.

effundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum [**ex** + **fundō**], to pour out, spread abroad.

egeō, -ēre, -ui, —, to be in need, to want, lack.

Ēgeria, -ae, f., Egeria, the nymph who gave counsel to Numa.

ego, mei, pers. pron., I.

ēgredior, -i, -gressus sum, dep., to go out, go away, march out.

ēlanguēscō, -ere, -languī, —, insep., to grow faint, fail, relax.

elephantus, -i, m., an elephant.

ēliciō, -ere, -ui, —, to draw out, lure forth, call down.

ēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum [**ex** + **legō**], to pick out, choose, select.

ēloquentia, -ae, f., eloquence.

ēmittō, -ere, -mīssī, -missum [**ē + mittō**], to send out, send forth, let go, cast aside.

enim, conj., for, indeed.

eō, ire, īvī or īī, itum, to go, march, proceed.

eō, adv., there, in that place, thither, to such a degree.

Ēpirus, -ī, m., *Epirus*, a country north-west of Greece proper.

epulor, -ārī, -ātus sum, to feast, banquet.

eques, -itis, m., a horseman, a knight.

equitātus, ūs, m., cavalry.

equus, -ī, m., a horse.

ergā, prep. with acc., towards.

ergō, adv., accordingly, therefore; **quid ergō?** what then? what follows?

ēruptiō, -ōnis [ex + rumpō], f., a bursting forth, a sally.

et, conj., and; **adv.**, also, even.

etiam, adv., also, even.

Etrūscī, -ōrum, m., the Etruscans, a people north of Rome.

ēvādō, -ere, ēvāsī, ēvāsum, to go out, escape.

ex, or before consonants **ē**, prep. with abl., out of, from; **ex itinere**, on the march.

exaudiō, -īre, -īvī, -itum, to hear clearly, hear, listen to.

excēdō, -ere, -cēssī, -cēssum, to go out, depart, retire.

excellēns, -entis, adj., superior, excellent.

excelsus, -a, -um, lofty, high, noble, elevated.

excipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, to take out, receive, follow.

excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to call out, summon, arouse, excite.

excutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussum [**ex + quatiō**], to shake off, cast off, remove.

exemplum, -ī, n., an example.

exeō, -īre, -īī, -itum [ex + eō], to go out, depart, withdraw, march out, escape.

exercitus, -ūs [exerceō], m., an army, a disciplined body of men.

exiguus, -a, -um, adj., scanty, small, narrow, short.

existimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to value, judge, think, consider.

expediō, -īre, -īvī, -itum, to set free, make ready.

expeditus, -a, -um, adj., unimpeded, unencumbered, free, light-armed.

expellō, -ere, -puli, -pulsum, to drive out, drive away, expel, banish.

experior, -īrī, -tus sum, dep., to try, prove, experience.

expleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, to fill up, fill.

explōrātor, -ōris, m., a spy, scout.

expōnō, -ere, -posui, -positum, to set forth, expose, land.

expositiō, -ōnis, f., a setting forth, exposure, exposition.

expūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to take by storm, capture, conquer.

existō, -ere, -stitī, —, to stand forth, be manifest, be, become.

expectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to wait for, expect, wait to see.

expirō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ex + spirō], to breathe out, expire, perish, die.

exspoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to despoil, pillage, plunder.

extinguō, -ere, -stinxi, -stinctum, to put out, extinguish, destroy, deprive of life, kill.

exstō, -āre, —, — [ex + stō], to stand out, stand forth, appear, exist, be.

exterior, -us, adj. comp., outer, exterior; Sup. **extrēmus**, outermost, last.

exterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum [ex + terreō], to frighten, terrify.

extollō, -ere, —, — [ex + tollō], to lift up, extol, praise.

extrā, adv. and prep., on the outside, without, beyond.

extrēmus, see **exterior**.

F

faber, -brī, m., a workman, maker, smith.

Fabius, -ī, m., Fabius, a name of a Roman gens.

fābricō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [faber], to make, construct.

facile, adv., easily, readily.

facilis, -e [faciō], adj., easy to do, easy. Comp. **facilior**, Sup. **facillimus**.

faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum, to make, do, perform, form, cause; **certiōrem facere**, to make more certain, inform.

factum, -ī, n., a deed, act.

facultās, -ātis [facilis], f., ability, skill, power, means, opportunity, abundance.

falx, falcis, f., a sickle, wall hook.

fāma, -ae, f., a report, rumor, reputation.

familiāris, -e, adj., familiar, intimate, friendly, of a family.

fānum, -ī, n., a shrine, sanctuary, temple.

fāstīgium, -ī, n., a summit, slope, descent.

fāstus, -a, -um, adj., not forbidden. Hence **fāstus diēs**, a day on which court may be held; a judicial day.

Faustulus, -ī, m., Faustulus, the shepherd who cared for Romulus and Remus.

fēlicitās, -ātis, f., good fortune, good luck.

fēlix, -icis, adj., fortunate, favorable, successful, prosperous.

fēmina, -ae, f., a woman, female.

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, to bear, carry, endure, report; **lēgēs ferre**, to propose laws.

ferōx, -ōcis, adj., bold, fierce, spirited. Comp. **ferōcior**, Sup. **ferōcissimus**.

ferrum, -ī, n., iron, implement of iron, sword.

ferus, -a, -um, adj., wild, untamed, rude, barbarous.

fessus, -a, -um, adj., wearied, tired, worn out.

fēstum, -ī, n., a holiday, festival.

fidēs, -ei, f., trust, faith, confidence, good faith, pledge, belief.

fidūcia, -ae [fidēs], f., trust, confidence, assurance.

filia, -ae, f., a daughter.

filius, -ī, m., a son.

finiō, -ire, -ivī, -itum [finis], to limit, finish, put an end to.

finis, -is, m. and f., end, boundary.
Plu., territory, country.

finitimus, -a, -um [finis], adj.,
bordering upon, neighboring.
As noun, neighbor.

fiō, fierī, factus sum, used as the
pass. of **faciō, to be done, be**
made, become, happen, come to
pass; **certior fierī, to be in-**
formed; **fit proelium, a battle**
takes place.

firmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [firmus],
to strengthen, secure.

firmus, -a, -um, adj., strong, firm,
steadfast.

flāmen, -inis, m., a priest of one
deity, a flamen.

fleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, to weep,
lament.

flōs, -ōris, m., a flower.

flūmen, -inis, n., a stream, river.

foedus, -eris, n., a treaty, league,
alliance.

fore, forem, see sum.

foris, adv., out of doors, from
without.

fōrma, -ae, f., a form, figure, ap-
pearance, beauty.

fors, fortis, f., chance, accident.

forte [fors], adv., by chance, by
accident, as it happened.

fortis, -e, adj., strong, brave,
steadfast.

fortūna, -ae, f., chance, lot, for-
tune, luck.

forum, -ī, n., an open space,
market-place, forum.

fossa, -ae, f., a ditch, trench,
fosse.

fragor, -ōris [frangō], m., a
crashing, din, thunder peal.

frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctum, to
break, crush, dishearten.

frāter, -tris, m., a brother.

frātrīcīda, -ae, m., a murderer of
a brother, a fratricide.

frūctus, -ūs, m., fruit, product,
enjoyment, result.

frūmentum, -ī, n., corn, grain.

fruor, -ī, frūctus sum, dep., to
enjoy, have the use of.

fuga, -ae, f., flight.

fugiō, -ere, fūgī, —, to flee, fly,
take to flight, escape by flight,
avoid.

fugō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to put to
flight, rout.

fulmen, -inis, n., lightning, a
thunderbolt.

funda, -ae, f., a sling.

fundāmentum, -ī, n., usually in
the plu., a foundation, support.

fūrtum, -ī, n., a theft, robbery.

G

Gāius, -ī, m., Gaius, a Roman
prænomen.

Galli, -ōrum, m., Gauls.

Gallia, -ae, f., Gaul, the country
of the Gauls, corresponding
nearly to modern France.

geminī, -ōrum, m., twins.

gēns, gentis, f., a race, tribe, clan,
gens, people.

genus, -eris, n., a race, stock,
family.

Germanus, -ī, m., a German.

gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum, to
bear, carry, wear, carry on,
vage.

gladius, -ī, m., a sword.

glāns, glandis, f., *an acorn, acorn-shaped ball.*

glōriōsus, -a, -um [glōria], adj., *full of glory, glorious.*

grātia, -ae, f., *favor, gratitude, esteem; grātiās agere, to express gratitude; grātiās habēre, to feel gratitude; grātiām re-ferre, to return a favor.*

grātulātiō, -ōnis [grātulor], f., *congratulation, rejoicing, joy.*

grātulor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *to congratulate, rejoice, show one's joy.*

grātus, -a, -um, adj., *acceptable, pleasing, grateful.*

gravis, -e, adj., *heavy, serious, severe, weighty, influential.*
Comp. **gravior**, Sup. **gravis-simus**.

grex, gregis, m., *a flock, herd.*

gymnasium, -ī, n., *a gymnasium.*

H

habēō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *to have, hold, possess.*

Haeduī, -ōrum, m., *the Hædui, a Gallic tribe.*

Hannibal, -alis, m., *Hannibal, the great Carthaginian leader.*

harpagō, -ōnis, m., *a hook, grappling hook.*

harūspex, -icis, m., *a soothsayer.*

haud, adv., *not, by no means.*

Herculēs, -is, m., *Hercules, a Greek hero.*

hic, **haec**, **hōc**, *demons. pron., this, used of something near the speaker; this one, he, she, it.*

hic, adv., *here, in this place.*

Hicetas, -ae, m., *Hicetas, a Syracusan.*

hinc, adv., *from this place, hence.*

homō, -inis, m., *a man, human being.*

honōrificē [honor], adv., *honorably, with respect.*

honor, -ōris, m., *honor, respect, esteem.*

hōra, -ae, f., *an hour.*

Horātius, -ī, m., *Horatius, a Roman name.*

hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *to urge, encourage, exhort.*

hospes, -itis, m., *a stranger, host, entertainer.*

Hostilius, -ī, m., *Hostilius, a Roman name.*

hostis, -is, m. and f., *an enemy.*

hūc, adv., *hither, to this place, thus far.*

hūmānitās, -ātis, f., *humanity, kindness, refinement.*

humānus, -a, -um [homō], adj., *human, kind.*

hydra, -ae, f., *the hydra, a monster with many heads.*

I

iaceō, -ēre, -uī, —, *to lie, be prostrate, lie dead, lie in ruins.*

iam, adv., *now, already, presently.*

Iāniculum, -ī, n., *the Janiculum, one of the hills of Rome.*

Iānus, -ī, m., *Janus, an old Italian god.*

ibi, adv., *there, in that place.*

icō, -ere, **icī**, **ictum**, *to strike; foedus icere, to make a treaty, enter into a covenant.*

Idem, eadem, idem, demons. pron., *the same, likewise.*

idōneus, -a, -um, adj., *fit, suitable, proper.*

igitur, conj., *therefore, then, accordingly.*

ignis, -is, m., *fire.*

ignōminia, -ae, f., *disgrace, dishonor, ignominy.*

ignōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *not to know, to be ignorant of.*

ille, illa, illud, demons. pron., *that, that one, he, she, it.*

imāgō, -inis, f., *a likeness, copy, image, semblance.*

imbēcillitās, -ātis, f., *weakness, feebleness.*

imbellis, -e, adj., *unwarlike, cowardly.*

imbuō, -ere, -ī, -ūtum, *to moisten, fill, imbue.*

imitor, -ārī, -atus sum, dep., *to imitate, copy, represent.*

immortālis, -e [in neg. + mors], adj., *immortal, undying.*

impedimentum, -ī, n., *a hindrance, baggage.*

impediō, -ire, -īvī, -itum, *to entangle, hinder, be in the way of, impede.*

imperitē, adv., *ignorantly, unskilfully, unadvisedly.*

imperium, -ī, n., *a command, supreme power, supremacy, sway.*

imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to command, order, demand, govern.*

impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to accomplish, gain one's end, obtain a request.*

impetus, -ūs, m., *an attack, onset, charge, rush.*

impius, -a, -um, adj., *impious, irreverent, ungodly, wicked.*

impōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum [in + pōnō], *to place upon, establish, impose.*

imprōvisō, adv., *unexpectedly, suddenly.*

impūne, adv., *without punishment, with impunity, safely.*

in, prep. with acc. or abl. With acc. *after words of motion, into, within, against, to.* With abl., *in, within, on, among, during.*

inclīnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to bend, incline, be disposed.*

inclitus, -a, -um, adj., *celebrated, renowned, famous.*

incola, -ae, m. and f., *an inhabitant.*

incolumis, -e, adj., *unharmmed, uninjured, safe.*

incrēdibilis, -e [in neg. + crēdō], adj., *not to be believed, incredible, wonderful.*

increpō, -āre, -uī, -itum, *to sound, rustle, upbraid, chide.*

incumbō, -ere, -cubuī, -cubitum, *to lean upon, apply one's self, exert one's self.*

index, -icis, m. and f., *a sign, indication.*

indicium, -ī, n., *information, indication, proof, evidence.*

indicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to point out, show, declare, inform.*

indīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictum, *to proclaim, announce, declare.*

indīligēns, -entis, adj., *careless, negligent.*

indolēs, -is, f., *nature, character, disposition.*

- induō, -ere, -ī, -ūtum**, to put on, clothe, entangle, pierce; **sē stimulis induere**, to be pierced with the pointed stakes.
- ineō, -ire, -ivī and -iī, -itum**, to go into, enter; **rationem inīre**, to make an estimate.
- infāmis, -e** [in neg. + **fāma**], adj., disreputable, infamous.
- infāns, -fantis**, m. and f., a little child, infant.
- infectus, -a, -um**, adj., unfinished, not done; **rē infectā**, their object being unaccomplished.
- inferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum** [in + **ferō**], to bring in, bring against, cause; **sē inferre**, to betake one's self; **bellum inferre**, to wage war.
- infestō, -āre, —, —**, to disturb, annoy, infest.
- infestus, -a, -um**, adj., disturbed, troublesome, hostile.
- ingēns, -entis**, adj., great, huge, large.
- ingrātus, -a, -um** [in neg. + **grātus**], adj., unpleasing, disagreeable, ungrateful, thankless.
- iniquus, -a, -um** [in neg. + **aequus**], adj., unjust, unequal, uneven, unfavorable.
- initium, -ī**, n., a beginning.
- iniungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum** [in + **iungō**], to join, attach to, inflict; **servitūtem iniungere**, to impose slavery upon any one.
- iniūria, -ae**, f., injustice, wrong, outrage, insult.
- innōtēscō, -ere, -uī, —**, to become known.
- inopia, -ae**, f., want, scarcity, poverty.
- inopināns, -antis**, adj., not expecting, unawares.
- inquam**, def. verb, to say; after one or more words of a quotation.
- inrideō, -ēre, -rīsī, -rīsum**, to laugh at, mock, ridicule.
- inrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum** [in + **rumpō**], to break in, fall upon.
- inruptiō, -ōnis**, f., a breaking in, an attack.
- inscius, -a, -um**, adj., not knowing, unware.
- insequor, -ī, secūtus sum**, dep., to follow, pursue.
- insidior, -ārī, -ātus sum**, dep., to lie in wait, lie in ambush.
- insignis, -e**, adj., distinguished, eminent, marked.
- insolēns, -entis**, adj., unaccustomed, insolent, haughty, arrogant.
- instituō, -ere, -ī, -ūtum**, to put in place, found, establish, resolve, determine, construct.
- institūtum, -ī**, n., a purpose, design, institution, custom.
- instruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctum**, to build, draw up, furnish.
- insula, -ae**, f., an island.
- integer, -gra, -grum**, adj., whole, untouched, entire, fresh.
- integō, -ere, -tēxī, -tēctum**, to cover over.
- intellegō, -ere, -ēxī, -ēctum**, to understand, know, perceive, learn, find out.
- intentus, -a, -um**, adj., attentive, eager, alert.

- inter**, prep. with acc., *between, among, with, during*.
- interdiū**, adv., *by day, in the day-time*.
- interea**, adv., *meantime, meanwhile*.
- intereō, -ire, -ī, -itum** [inter + eō], *to be lost, perish, die*.
- interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum** [inter + faciō], *to destroy, kill, slay*.
- interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -iectum** [inter + iaciō], *to throw between, intervene, lie between*.
- interim**, adv., *meanwhile, in the meantime*.
- interimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēptum**, *to take away, destroy, kill*.
- interior, -ius**, adj., comp., *inner, interior*. Sup. **intimus**.
- interitus, -ūs**, m., *overthrow, destruction, death*.
- intermittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum**, *to leave off, cease, interrupt, come between, intervene*.
- interpretor, -ārī, -ātus sum**, dep., *to interpret, explain, understand*.
- interrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum**, *to break off, break down, interrupt*.
- intersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus**, *to be between, be present, take part in*. The third pers. sing. is impersonal; *it concerns, is of interest*.
- intrā**, adv., *on the inside, within*; prep. with acc., *within, in*.
- intrōducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum**, *to lead in, admit, introduce*.
- inūtilis, -e**, adj., *useless*.
- invādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsum** [in + vādō], *to go into, enter, invade, attack, fall upon*.
- invehō, -ere, -vēxī, -vectum** [in + vehō], *to carry in, attack, assail, inveigh against*.
- inveterātus, -a, -um**, adj., *old, of long standing*.
- invidia, -ae**, f., *envy, hatred, ill-will*.
- invītus, -a, -um**, adj., *against the will, unwilling*.
- ipse, ipsa, ipsum**, demonstrative pron., *self, very, himself, herself, etc.*
- irātus, -a, -um**, adj., *angered, enraged, angry, in anger*.
- is, ea, id**, demons. pron., *this, that, he, she, it, etc.*
- iste, ista, istud**, demons. pron. referring to what is near the person addressed, *this of yours, that of yours, he, she, it, etc.*
- ita**, adv., *so, thus, in this manner, accordingly*.
- Italia, -ae**, f., *Italy*.
- Italicus, -a, -um**, adj., *Italian, of Italy*.
- itaque**, conj., *and so, accordingly, therefore*.
- item**, adv., *likewise, in like manner, moreover*.
- iter, itineris**, n., *a journey, march, way, route, road*.
- iterum**, adv., *again, a second time*.
- iubeō, -ēre, iūssī, iūssum**, *to order, bid, command*.
- iūdicium, -ī**, n., *a judgment, opinion, decision*.

- iugum**, -ī, n., a yoke, ridge, crest of a hill, summit.
- Iūlius**, -ī, m., *Julius*, a Roman name.
- iumentum**, -ī, n., a beast of burden, a draught animal, ox, horse.
- iungō**, -ere, iūnxī, iunctum, to join together, unite, yoke, harness.
- Iuppiter**, **Iovis**, m., *Jupiter*, the chief of the gods.
- iūrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to swear, make oath.
- iūs**, iūris, n., *right, justice*.
- iūsiurandum**, iūrisiurandī, n., an oath.
- iūstitia**, -ae, f., *justice, uprightness*.
- iuvenis**, -is, adj., *young*. Comp. iūnior, Sup. minimus nātū. As noun, a youth, young person.
- iuventūs**, -ūtis, f., *youth, young persons*.
- iuvō**, -āre, iūvī, iūtum, to help, aid, assist.
- K**
- Kalendae**, -ārum, f., *the first day of the month, the Calends*.
- L**
- Labiēnus**, -ī, m., *Labienus*, a Roman name.
- labor**, -ōris, m., *labor, toil, work*.
- labōrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to labor, toil, strive, be in distress, be hard pressed.
- lacrima**, -ae, f., *a tear*.
- laedō**, -ere, laesī, laesum, to wound, injure, offend.
- laetitia**, -ae [laetus], f., *joy, rejoicing, gladness*.
- laetus**, -a, -um, adj., *joyful, glad*.
- laeva**, -ae, f., *the left hand*.
- lambō**, -ere, —, —, to lick, lap.
- Laphystius**, -ī, m., *Laphystius*, a Syracusan.
- lapis**, -idis, m., *a stone*.
- Lārentia**, -ae, f., *Acca Larentia*, wife of Faustulus.
- latrō**, -ōnis, m., *a robber, freebooter*.
- latus**, -eris, n., *the side, flank*. Cf. apertus.
- laus**, laudis, f., *praise, glory, fame, merit*.
- lectica**, -ae, f., *a litter, sedan-chair, palanquin*.
- lēgatiō**, -ōnis, f., *an embassy, legation*.
- lēgātus**, -ī, m., *an ambassador, legate, lieutenant*.
- legiō**, -ōnis, f., *a legion*, consisting of about 6000 men in Cæsar's time.
- legō**, -ere, lēgī, lēctus, to collect, choose, select, read.
- Lemovicēs**, -um, m., *the Lemovices*, a Gallic tribe.
- lēniter** [lēnis], adv., *mildly, gently*. Comp. lēnius, Sup. lēnissimē.
- levis**, -e, adj., *light, nimble*; **levis armātūrae**, *light armed*.
- lēx**, lēgis, f., *a law, enactment*.
- libēns**, -entis, adj., *willing; glad, with pleasure*.

liberalitās, -ātis [liberalis], f.,
affability, generosity, liberality.
liberē, adv., freely, liberally, with-
out hindrance.
liberī, -orum, m., children.
liberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to set
free, to free, liberate.
libertās, -ātis, f., liberty, free-
dom.
librīlis, -e, adj., of the weight of a
pound; **fundae librīlēs**, slings
throwing missiles weighing a
pound.
licet, impers. verb, it is allowed,
permitted, lawful.
lineamentum, -ī, n., feature,
lineament.
lingua, -ae, f., a tongue, lan-
guage.
locus, -ī, m., a place, region.
longē, adv., far, far away.
longinquus, -a, -um, adj., distant,
remote, long.
longitūdō, -inis [longus], f.,
length.
longurius, -ī [longus], m., a long
pole.
loquor, -ī, locūtus sum, dep., to
speak, say, tell, talk of.
lōrica, -ae, f., a corselet, coat of
mail.
Lūcius, -ī, m., Lucius, a Roman
name.
lūctus, -ūs, m., sorrow, lamenta-
tion, grief, distress.
lūcus, -ī, m., a sacred grove,
wood.
lūdibrium, -ī, n., a mockery, deris-
ion, laughing stock, jest.
lūdicer, -cra, -crum, adj., play-
ful, sportive, done for sport.

lūdus, -ī, m., a play, game, show,
exhibition.
lūmen, -inis, n., light, sight (of
the eye).
lūna, ae, f., the moon.
lupa, -ae, f., a she-wolf.
lūstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to ex-
amine, go around, purify.
lūx, lūcis, f., light, daylight.

M

māceria, -ae, f., a wall, enclosure.
mactus, -a, -um, adj., honored;
macte virtūte estō, be hon-
ored in your virtue, hail to you!
good luck attend you!
maestus, -a, -um, adj., sad, sor-
rowful.
magis, adv. comp., more, rather.
Sup. **māximē**.
māgnitūdō, -inis [māgnus], f.,
greatness, magnitude, size.
māgnus, -a, -um, adj., great, large,
extensive. Comp. **māior**, Sup.
māximus.
māior, cf. **māgnus**.
mālō, mälle, mālui [magis +
volō], to choose rather, prefer.
Māmercus, -ī, m., Mamercus, a
tyrant of Catana.
Māmurius, -ī, m., Mamurius, the
maker of the ancilia.
mandātum, -ī, n., an order, in-
junction, command, charge.
mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to
enjoin, order, command, com-
mission.
Mandūbii, -ōrum, m., the Mandu-
bii, a Gallic tribe whose chief
city was Alesia.

- maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūm**, to stay, remain, continue, wait for.
- manūmittō, -ere, -misi, -missum** [**manus** + **mittō**], to set at liberty, make free.
- manus, -ūs, m.,** a hand, band, company, force.
- Mārcus, -i, m.,** *Marcus*, a Roman name.
- Mārs, Mārtis, m.,** *Mars*, the god of war and father of Romulus and Remus.
- Mārtius, -a, -um, adj.,** relating to *Mars*, of the month of March.
- māter, -tris, f.,** a mother.
- māximē, adv., sup.,** in the greatest degree, exceedingly, very, most. Cf. **magis**.
- māximus, see māgnus.**
- mediocris, -e [medius], adj.,** middling, medium, ordinary, moderate.
- medius, -a, -um, adj.,** in the middle, mid, halfway between, the middle of.
- memoria, -ae, f.,** memory, recollection.
- mēns, mentis, f.,** the mind, intellect, thought, purpose, disposition.
- mēnsis, -is, m.,** a month.
- mentiō, -ōnis, f.,** a calling to mind, mention.
- mercēnnārius, -a, -um [mercēs], adj.,** serving for hire, paid, mercenary.
- meridiēs, -ei [medius + diēs], m.,** midday, noon.
- meritum, -i, n.,** a merit, desert, service, favor.
- metior, -iri, mēnsus sum, dep.,** to measure, measure out, deal out.
- metuō, -ere, -i, — [metus],** to fear, be afraid.
- metus, -ūs, m.,** fear, anxiety.
- meus, -a, -um, poss. pron.,** mine, of me, my.
- mīles, -itis, m. and f.,** a soldier.
- mīlia, plu. of mīle.**
- militāris, -e [mīles], adj.,** of a soldier, military, warlike; **rēs militāris, the art of war.**
- minimē, adv., sup. of parum,** in the smallest degree, least of all, not at all, very little.
- minus, adv., comp. of parum,** less.
- mīrābilis, -e [mīrus], adj.,** wonderful, extraordinary, strange.
- mīrus, -a, -um, adj.,** wonderful, marvelous, surprising.
- miseror, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep.,** to bewail, lament, pity.
- mītigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [mītis],** to soften, make gentle, soothe.
- mītis, -e, adj.,** mild, gentle, kind.
- mittō, -ere, misi, missum,** to let go, send.
- moderātē, adv.,** moderately, with moderation, with self-control.
- modius, -i, m.,** a measure, nearly equal to a peck.
- modo [modus], adv.,** measurably, only, merely, simply, just.
- moenia, -ium, n.,** walls, ramparts, a city; fortifications.
- mōlēs, -is, f.,** a pile, mass, bulk.
- mollitia, -ae, f.,** softness, weakness, effeminacy. Sometimes written **mollitiēs**.
- mōmentum, -i, n.,** movement, weight, influence.

monitus, -ūs [moneō], m., a warning, admonition, advice.
mōns, **montis**, m., a mountain.
mora, -ae, f., delay, hindrance.
morbus, -ī, m., a disease, sickness, malady.
moror, -ārī, -ātus [mora], dep., to delay, tarry, stay, hinder.
mors, -tis, f., death.
mortuus, -a, -um [mors], adj., dead.
moveō, -ēre, **mōvī**, **mōtum**, to move, set in motion, influence.
mox, adv., soon, anon, presently.
mulier, -eris, f., a woman.
multitūdō, -dīnis, f., a large number, throng, multitude.
multō, adv., by much, by far, much.
multum, adv., much, far, greatly.
multus, -a, -um, adj., much, many.
 Comp. **plūs**, Sup. **plūrimus**.
mūniō, -īre, -ivī, -itum, to fortify, defend, protect.
mūnitiō, -ōnis, f., a defending, fortifying, defense, fortification.
mūnus, -eris, n., a present, gift, office, service.
mūrālis, -e [mūrus], adj., pertaining to a wall, mural, wall.
mūrus, -ī, m., a wall.
mūsculus, -ī [mūs], m., a little mouse, a war engine.
mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to change, modify.

N

nam, conj., for.
namque, conj., for in fact. A strengthened **nam**.
nanciācor, -ī, **nactus sum**, dep.,

to meet with, fall in with, obtain, find.
nātālis, -e [nātus], adj., of birth, natal; **diēs nātālis**, birthday.
nātiō, -ōnis, f., a nation, race, people.
(nātus, -ūs), m., abl. **nātū**, the only form in use, by birth; **māior nātū**, elder.
nē, conj., lest, that not; **nē . . . quidem**, not even.
-ne, enclitic, used in asking a question.
nec or **neque**, adv. and conj., neither, nor, and not.
necessariō, adv., of necessity, inevitably, necessarily.
necessārius, -a, -um, adj., necessary, needful. As subst., kinsmen, friends, relatives.
necessitās, -ātis, f., necessity.
nefarius, -a, -um, adj., wicked, infamous, impious.
nefastus, -a, -um, adj., unhal-
 lowed, unlucky; **diēs nefastus**, a day on which court may not be held. Cf. **fastus**.
neglegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum, to disregard, neglect, not to care for.
nemus, -oris, n., a grove, wood, forest.
nepōs, -ōtis, m., a grandson, a descendant.
nēquāquam, adv., by no means, in no way.
nesciō, -īre, -ivī, —, not to know, to be ignorant.
neu or **nēve**, adv., nor, and not.
nihil, n., indecl., nothing, in no respect, not at all.

nūmfrum, adv., *without doubt, certainly, surely.*
nisi, conj., *unless, if not.*
nōbilis, -e, adj., *well-known, famous, noble, renowned.*
noctū, adv., *by night, at night.*
nocturnus, -a, -um, adj., *nocturnal, of the night, by night.*
nōlō, **nōlle**, **nōlui** [nōn + volō], *to be unwilling, not to wish.*
nōmen, -inis, n., *a name, account.*
nōminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to call by name, to name.*
nōn, adv., *not.*
nōndum, adv., *not yet.*
nōnne, interrog. adv., *not? whether not?*
nōnnūllus, -a, -um, adj., *some, several.*
nōnnumquam, adv., *sometimes.*
nōscō, -ere, **nōvī**, **nōtum**, *to learn, come to know, know.*
noster, -stra, -strum, poss. pron., *our, ours. In the plu., our men.*
novus, -a, -um, adj., *new, recent, fresh.*
nox, **noctis**, f., *night.*
nūbō, -ere, **nūpāi**, **nūptum**, *to veil one's self, to marry (of the woman).*
nūdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to uncover, lay bare, expose.*
nūllus, -a, -um, adj., *none, no, not any.*
num, interrog. particle, *used to ask a question, and need not be translated. In indirect questions, whether.*
Numa, -ae, m., *Numa Pompilius, second king of Rome.*

nūmen, -inis, n., *divine will, a divinity, a god, divine power.*
numerus, -ī, m., *a number.*
Numitor, -ōris, m., *Numitor, grandfather of Romulus.*
numquam, adv., *never, at no time.*
nunc, adv., *now, at the present time.*
nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to announce, report, inform.*
nūntius, -ī, m., *a messenger, courier, message, tidings.*
nūsqum, adv., *nowhere, in no case.*

O

Ō, interj., *O! oh!*
ob, prep. with acc., *against, on account of, for, for the sake of.*
obeō, -īre, -īvī, -itum [ob + eō], *to go to meet, go against, perform, perish; diem suprēmum obīre, to die.*
obiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum [ob + iaciō], *to throw before, offer, oppose, be in the way.*
oblīvīscor, -ī, **oblītus sum**, dep., *to forget, omit.*
obruō, -ere, -ī, -tum [ob + ruō], *to overwhelm, overthrow, bury.*
obsideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum [ob + sedeō], *to sit down against, besiege, blockade.*
obsidiō, -ōnis, f., *a siege, blockade.*
obstupefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum, *to astonish, astound, stupefy.*
obterō, -ere, -trīvī, -trītum, *to bruise, crush, undervalue.*
obtestor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *to call to witness, appeal to, protest.*

obtineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum [ob + teneō], to occupy, hold, possess, accomplish.

obveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum [ob + veniō], to go to meet, happen, be allotted.

obviam [ob + via], adv., in the way, against; **obviam ire** or **venire**, to meet.

occāsus, -ūs, m., a falling, setting; **sōlis occāsus**, sunset.

occidō, -ere, -cidī, -cīsum [ob + caedō], to cut down, kill, slay.

occidō, -ere, -cidī, -cāsus [ob + cadō], to fall, perish, be slain.

occultē, adv., secretly, privately.

occultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to hide, conceal.

occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to take possession of, seize.

occurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursum [ob + currō], to run to meet, go to meet, fall in with, rush upon.

octō, num. adj., eight.

octōgintā, num. adj., eighty.

oculus, -ī, m., an eye.

odium, -ī, n., hatred, enmity.

odor, -ōris, m., a smell, odor.

offerō, -ere, obtulī, oblātum [ob + ferō], to offer, show, present.

ōlim, adv., at that time, at times, formerly, hereafter.

omnis, -e, adj., every, all, the whole of.

opera, -ae [opus], f., work, labor, pains; **operam dare**, to take pains, to do it.

opiniō, -ōnis, f., opinion, belief, reputation.

oppidum, -ī, n., a town, stronghold.

oppleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, to fill, cover.

opportūnus, -a, -um, adj., fit, suitable, favorable.

opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum, to overwhelm, overthrow, crush, oppress.

oppugnātiō, -ōnis, f., an assaulting, storming, attack, siege.

oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to assault, attack, assail, besiege.

(ops), opīs, f., no nom. or dat. sing., help, succor, resources, means, wealth.

optimē, adv., sup. of **bene**, best.

optimus, -a, -um, adj., sup. of **bonus**, best.

opus, -eris, n., work, labor, fortification, military works.

ōrātiō, -ōnis, f., a speech, oration, address, discourse.

orbis, -is, m., circle; **orbis terrae** or **terrārum**, the world.

ordinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ōrdō], to order, arrange, regulate.

oriēns, -entis [orior], m., the rising (sun), the east.

origō, -inis [orior], f., the beginning, origin, lineage.

orior, -iri, ortus sum, dep., to arise, appear, begin.

orō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to beseech, pray, entreat.

ōs, -ōris, n., the mouth, face, countenance.

ostendō, -ere, -ī, -tentum, to show, exhibit, manifest, declare.

ōtiōsē [ōtium], adv., at leisure, leisurely, without haste.

ōtium, -ī, n., leisure, ease, repose, quiet.

P

- pācō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, to pacify, tranquilize, subdue, make peaceful.
- pactum, -i, n.**, an agreement, compact, way, manner.
- paene**, adv., almost, nearly.
- palūs, -ūdis, f.**, a marsh, pool; **Caprae palūs**, the Goat's Pool, in the Campus Martius.
- pandō, -ere, -ī, passum**, to spread out, open; **crinibus passis**, with dishevelled hair.
- pār, paris**, adj., equal, like; **pari modō**, in like manner.
- parcō, -ere, -ī**, sparingly, frugally.
- parcō, -ere, pepercī** or **parāi, parsum**, to spare, be sparing, refrain from, forbear.
- parēns, -entis, m.** and **f.**, a parent, father or mother.
- pāreo, -ēre, -uī, —**, to appear, be obedient to, submit, comply, obey.
- parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, to prepare, procure, furnish.
- pars, partis, f.**, a part, share.
- particeps, -cipis [pars + capiō]**, adj., taking part, sharing. As noun a comrade, partner.
- parum**, adv., too little, not very, not enough. Comp. **minus**, Sup. **minimē**.
- parvulus [parvus]**, adj., small, little. As noun, child, little one.
- passus, -ūs, m.**, a step, pace.
- pāstor, -ōris, m.**, a shepherd.
- pateō, -ēre, -uī, —**, to be open, clear, manifest, extend.
- pater, -tris, m.**, a father.
- patienter**, adv., patiently, tamely.
- patior, pati, passus sum, dep.**, to endure, suffer, permit, submit.
- patria, -ae [pater], f.**, a fatherland, one's own country.
- paucus, -a, -um, adj.**, few, little.
- paulatim**, adv., little by little, gradually.
- paulisper**, adv., for a little while.
- paulō**, adv., a little, somewhat.
- paulum**, adv., a little, somewhat.
- pavor, -ōris, m.**, terror, dread, alarm.
- pāx, pācis, f.**, peace.
- pecus, -oris, n.**, cattle, herd.
- pedes, -itis, m.**, a foot-soldier, infantry.
- pedester, -tris, -tre [pēs]**, adj., of foot-soldiers, of infantry; **pedestrēs cōpiae**, the force of infantry.
- peditātus, -ūs [pēs]**, m., foot-soldiers, infantry.
- pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum**, to expel, drive away, banish, put to flight.
- per**, prep. with acc., through, along, by means of, on account of, during.
- peragrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, to wander through, traverse.
- percontor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep.**, to question, inquire.
- perdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum**, to destroy, lose, ruin.
- perducō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum**, to lead through, lead, conduct.
- perennis, -e, adj.**, never-failing, perennial.
- perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum [per**

- + **faciō**], to accomplish, perform, finish, complete, cause.
- perfidus**, -a, -um, adj., faithless, false, perfidious.
- perfringō**, -ere, -frēgī, -fractus [frangō], to break through, force a way through.
- perugiō**, -ere, -fūgī, —, to flee for succor, take refuge.
- pergō**, -ere, **perrēxi**, **perrēctum** [per + regō], to go on, continue, proceed, go forward, march.
- periculum**, -ī, n., danger, peril, risk.
- peritus**, -a, -um, adj., skilled, expert.
- permittō**, -ere, -misi, -missum [per + mittō], to send through, allow, grant, permit, entrust.
- perpetuō**, adv., constantly, continually.
- perpetuus**, -a, -um, adj., constant, continuous, perpetual, lasting.
- perrumpō**, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum [per + rumpō], to break through, force a passage through.
- perspiciō**, -ere, -spexī, -spec-tum [per + speciō], to perceive, see, understand, discern.
- perterreō**, -ēre, -uī, -itum [per + terreō], to terrify, alarm.
- pertineō**, -ēre, -uī, -tentum [per + teneō], to extend, relate to, pertain.
- perturbō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [per + turbō], to confound, throw into disorder, disturb, trouble.
- pervenio**, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum [per + veniō], to come through, arrive.
- pēs**, **pedis**, m., a foot.
- petō**, -ere, -ivi or -ii, -itum, to seek, aim at, ask, demand, attack.
- petulāns**, -antis, adj., impudent, insolent.
- pietās**, -ātis [pius], f., filial affection, dutiful conduct, devotion, loyalty, piety.
- pignus**, -oris, n., a pledge, guaranty.
- pilum**, -ī, n., a javelin, dart.
- placābilis**, -e, adj., conciliatory, placable.
- placeō**, -ēre, -ui, -itum, to please, give pleasure.
- plānitīēs**, -ēī, f., a plain, level ground.
- plēbs**, **plēbis**, or **plēbēs**, -ēī, f., the common people, the plebeians.
- plēnus**, -a, -um, adj., full, filled.
- plērumque**, adv., generally, for the most part.
- plūrimus**, cf. **plūs**.
- plūs**, **plūris**, adj., comp., more. Pos. **multus**, Sup. **plūrimus**.
- poena**, -ae, f., punishment, penalty.
- Poenī**, -ōrum, m., the Carthaginians.
- Pompilius**, -ī, m., Numa Pompilius, the second king of Rome.
- pōnō**, -ere, **posui**, **positum**, to put, place, station, post.
- pōns**, **pontis**, m., a bridge.
- populus**, -ī, m., a people, nation, the people.
- Porsena**, -ae, m., Porsena, king of Clusium.
- porta**, -ae, f., a gate, door.

pōscō, -ere, popōscī, —, to ask
for, demand, claim.

possessio, -ōnis, f., a possession,
occupation.

possum, posse, potui, irreg. verb,
to be able, can, have power.

post, adv., behind, afterwards.

post, prep. with acc., behind,
after.

postea, adv., afterwards.

posteaquam, adv., after that.

Also written **postea quam.**

(posterus), -a, -um, adj., not used
in nom. sing. masc., following,
next. In the plu., descendants,
posterity. Comp. **posterior,**
Sup. **postrēmus.**

postrēmō, adv., at last, finally.

postrīdiē, adv., on the next day.

pōstulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to ask,
demand.

potēns, -entis, adj., able, power-
ful.

potentātus, -ūs [potēns], m.,
dominion, chief power.

potior, -iōr, -itius sum, dep., to
become master of, gain posses-
sion of, acquire, gain.

potissimum [potis], adv., sup.,
chiefly, above all, in preference
to all others.

potius [potis], adv., comp.,
rather.

praecidō, -ere, -ī, -cīsum [prae
+ caedō], to cut off.

praecipio, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum
[prae + capiō], to take before-
hand, order, direct, instruct.

praeclārus, -a, -um [prae + clā-
rus], splendid, remarkable, fa-
mous.

praeda, -ae, f., booty, plunder,
prey.

praedicō, -āre, -āvī, ātum [prae
+ dicō], to announce, proclaim,
herald.

praedūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductum
[prae + dūcō], to draw before,
construct in front.

praefectus, -ī [prae + faciō], m.,
commander, lieutenant.

praeficio, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum
[prae + faciō], to set over, place
in command of.

praeparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [prae
+ parō], to prepare beforehand,
prepare.

praerumpō, -ere, -rūpi, -ruptum
[prae + rumpō], to break off,
tear away in front.

praesaepiō, -īre, -saepi, -saep-
tum [prae + saepiō], to hedge
in in front, barricade.

praesertim, adv., especially,
chiefly.

praesidium, -ī, n., defense, guard,
garrison.

praesum, -esse, -fui [prae +
sum], to be before, have charge
of, command.

praeter, prep. with acc., beyond,
before, besides, except.

praeterea, adv., besides, more-
over.

praetereō, -īre, -īi, -itum [prae-
ter + eō], to go by, pass by, dis-
regard.

praeteritus, -a, -um [praetereō],
adj., past.

praeterquam, adv., besides, ex-
cept.

praetorius, -a, -um [praetor],

- adj., *prætorian*, belonging to a general.
- precor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., to pray, beseech, ask.
- premō**, -ere, pressī, pressum, to press down, oppress, overwhelm.
- pretium**, -ī, n., a price, value. (**prex**, **precis**), f., nom. and gen. not used, prayer, request.
- primō**, adv., at first, in the first place.
- primum**, adv., first, for the first time, at first.
- princeps**, -cipis, m., chief, leader.
- prior**, prius, adj., comp., former, prior, first. Sup. **prīmus**.
- prīstinus**, -a, -um, adj., former, old, original.
- prīusquam**, adv., sooner than, before.
- prīvātus**, -a, -um, adj., private, personal.
- prīvō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to deprive, rob.
- prō**, prep. with abl., before, in front of, in place of, instead of, for, according to, in behalf of.
- probō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to approve, try, prove, show.
- Proca**, -ae, m., Proca, king of the Albans.
- procācitās**, -ātis, f., impudence, impertinence.
- prōcēdō**, -ere, -cēssī, -cēssum, to go before, advance, proceed.
- procul**, adv., far, far off.
- Proculus**, -ī, m., Proculus, a Roman name.
- prōcūrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to attend to, avert, ward off.
- prōditiō**, -ōnis, f., treachery, treason.
- prōdō**, -ere, -didī, -ditum [prō + dō], to give forth, hand down, transmit.
- prōdūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum [prō + dūcō], to lead forth, lead out, draw up.
- proelium**, -ī, n., a battle.
- prōferō**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum [prō + ferō], to bring forward, bring forth.
- prōficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum [prō + faciō], to advance, accomplish, effect.
- proficiscor**, -ī, -fectus sum, dep., to set out, depart, march.
- prohibeō**, -ere, -uī, -itum [prō + habeō], to hold back, hinder, prevent, prohibit.
- prōiciō**, -ere, -ieci, -iectum [prō + iaciō], to cast forth, throw, throw down.
- prōmittō**, -ere, -misi, -missum [prō + mittō], to promise.
- prōmoveō**, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum [prō + moveō], to move forward, advance.
- prope**, adv., near. Also used as a prep. with acc. Comp. **propius**, Sup. **proximē**.
- prōpellō**, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum [prō + pellō], to drive forward, impel, drive away, repulse.
- prōpēnsus**, -a, -um, adj., inclining towards, disposed.
- properō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to hasten.
- propinquus**, -a, -um, adj., near, neighboring. As noun, kinsmen, neighbors.

propior, -us, adj., comp., nearer.
propius, adv., comp., cf. **prope**.
prōpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum
 [prō + pōnō], to place before,
 present, offer, propose.
propter, prep. with acc., near, on
 account of, because of.
prōpugnāculum, -ī [prōpugnō],
 n., a bulwark, rampart, defense.
prōpugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [prō
 + pugnō], to rush out to fight,
 sally, defend.
prōspectus, -ūs [prō + speciō],
 m., an outlook, distant view,
 prospect.
prōsternō, -ere, -strāvī, -strātum
 [prō + sternō], to throw down,
 to overthrow, prostrate.
prōsum, **prōdesse**, **prōfui** [prō
 + sum], to be of use, benefit,
 profit.
prōterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum [prō
 + terreō], to frighten off, ter-
 rify, affright.
prōtinus, adv., forward, straight
 on, directly, forthwith.
prōturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [prō
 + turbō], to drive away in dis-
 order, drive off, dislodge.
prōvehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum
 [prō + vehō], to carry forward,
 advance; **aetate prōvehī**, to be
 advanced in years.
prōveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum
 [prō + veniō], to come forth,
 appear.
prōventus, -ūs, m., the result,
 issue.
prōvincia, -ae, f., a province.
proximus, -a, -um, adj., sup.,
 nearest, next. Comp. **propior**.

prudentia, -ae, f., foresight, wis-
 dom, sagacity, prudence.
pūblicē, adv., in the name of the
 state, publicly, officially.
pūblicus, -a, -um, adj., of the
 state, public.
Pūblius, -ī, m., Publius, a Roman
 name.
pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to fight.
pulcher, -chra, -chrum, adj., fair,
 beautiful, noble. Comp. **pul-**
chrior, Sup. **pulcherrimus**.
pulvis, -eris, m., rarely f., dust.
putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to reckon,
 think, consider.
Pyrrhus, -ī, m., Pyrrhus, king of
 Epirus.

Q

quadrāgintā, num. adj., forty.
quaerō, -ere, **quaesivī**, **quaesi-**
tum, to seek, ask, require.
quālis, -e, adj. pron., of what
 sort, as, such as, what kind
 of a; **tālis . . . quālis**, such
 . . . as.
quam, adv., how, as. After com-
 paratives, than. With superla-
 tives, as possible; **tam . . .**
quam, so . . . as.
quamdiū, adv., as long as.
quantus, -a, -um, adj. pron., how
 much, how great, as much as;
tantus . . . quantus, so much
 . . . as.
quasi, adv., as if.
quattuor, num. adj., four.
-que, conj. enclit., and. Always
 joined to another word.
queror, -ī, **questus sum**, dep., to
 complain, bewail.

quī, quae, quod, rel. pron., *who, which, that*. Interrog. (neut. **quid** or **quod**), *who? which? what?*

quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, rel. pron., *whoever, whatever, all who*.

quid, interrog. adv., *why? how?*

quidam, quaedam, quoddam and **quiddam**, indef. pron., *a certain one, somebody, something*. Plu., *some, certain ones*.

quidem, adv., *indeed, in fact, truly*. Often to be expressed by giving a proper emphasis in the sentence. Cf. **nē**.

quies, -ētis, f., *rest, repose, quiet*.

quīn, conj., *but that, but, without, that not*.

quingenti, -ae, -a, num. adj., *five hundred*.

quintus, -a, -um, num. adj., *the fifth*.

Quirīnālis, -e, adj., of *Quirinus* or *Romulus*; **collis Quirīnālis**, the *Quirinal Hill*, one of the seven hills of Rome.

Quirīnus, -i, m., *Quirinus*, a name given to *Romulus*.

quis, quae, quid, interrog. pron., *who? which? what?* After **sī, nisi**, and **num**, indefinite, *any one, anybody, anything, some one, somebody, something*.

quisquam, neut. **quicquam**, indef. pron., *any, any one, anything*.

quisque, quaeque, quidque or **quodque**, indef. pron., *each, each one, every*.

quīvīs, quaevis, quidvis or **quodvis**, indef. pron., *any one you please, any one, any*.

quō, adv., *where, whither*. As conj., *in order that, that thereby*.

quōminus, conj., *that not, so that not*.

quondam, adv., *once, formerly, hereafter*.

quoniam, adv., *since, seeing that, inasmuch as*.

quoque, conj., following the word it makes emphatic, *also, too*.

quot, indecl. adj., *how many*.

R

radius, -i, m., *a staff, ray, beam* (of light).

rādix, -icis, f., *a root, foot* (of a hill or mountain).

rapīna, -ae, f., *robbery, plunder, pillage*.

rapiō, -ere, -uī, -tum, *to seize and carry off, hurry away, plunder*.

rārus, -a, -um, adj., *scattered, far apart, here and there, few*.

ratiō, -ōnis, f., *a reckoning, account, consideration, plan*.

rātus, -a, -um, *thinking*; participle of **reor**.

Rebīlus, -i, m., *Rebīlus*, one of Cæsar's lieutenants.

recēnsēō, -ēre, -uī, —, *to enumerate, review, muster*.

recidō, -ere, recidī, recasum, *to fall back, return, be handed over*.

recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *to take back, recover, receive*; **sē recipere**, *to betake one's self, to retreat*.

recreō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *to restore, revive, renew*.

- rēctē**, adv., *rightly, properly, well*.
recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to decline, refuse, reject, object, protest.
reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditum [red + dō], to give back, return, restore.
redeō, -īre, -īī, -itum [red + eō], to go back, return, come.
redigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum [red + agō], to bring back, reduce, render, compel.
redimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēptum [red + emō], to ransom, redeem, purchase.
redintegrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to restore, renew.
reditus, -ūs [red + eō], m., a returning, going back, return.
redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum [re + dūcō], to lead back, withdraw.
referō, -ferre, rettulī, relātum, to bear back, bring, return; pedem referre, to retreat.
reficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum [re + faciō], to make again, repair, restore.
Rēginus, -ī, m., *Reginus*, a Roman name.
regiō, -ōnis, f., a region, district, country.
rēgius, -a, -um, adj., of a king, royal, kingly.
rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to reign, rule.
rēgnum, -ī, n., a kingdom.
regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum, to rule, govern, conduct.
regredior, -ī, -gressus sum [re + gradior], dep., to go back, return.
relābor, -ī, lāpsus sum, dep., to slide back, flow back, return, recede.
religiō, -ōnis, f., *piety, religion*.
relinquō, -ere, -liquī, -lictum, to leave behind, leave, desert.
reliquus, -a, -um, adj., *left, remaining, the rest of*.
Remus, -ī, m., *Remus*, brother of Romulus.
renāscor, -ī, -nātus sum [re + nāscor], dep., to be born again, grow again.
renūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [re + nūntiō], to report back, report, announce.
reor, rēri, rātus sum, dep., to think, judge.
repellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum [re + pellō], to drive back, repulse, repel.
repente, adv., *suddenly*.
reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertum, to find, discover.
rēs, rei, f., a thing, circumstance, affair, event, matter; *rēs publica*, the state, commonwealth.
rescindō, -ere, -scidī, -scissum, to cut off, tear down, destroy.
reservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to keep back, reserve.
resideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, to remain, reside, abide.
resistō, -ere, -stitī, —, to stand still, halt, come to a stand, resist.
respicō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum [re + speciō], to look back, look for, regard, consider.
respīrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to take breath, recover.

respondeō, -ēre, -ī, -spōnsum,
to answer, reply.

respōnsum, -ī, n., an answer,
reply.

restituō, -ere, -ī, -ūtum, to re-
store, replace, reinstate.

revertor, -ī, -versus sum, dep.,
to turn back, return; perf. also
revertī.

rēx, rēgis, m., a king.

Rhea, -ae, f., Rhea Silvia.

rigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to wet,
moisten, water.

ripa, -ae, f., a bank (of a river).

rite, adv., with proper ceremony,
duly, solemnly.

rōbur, -oris, n., oak, strength,
power, flower.

Rōma, -ae, f., Rome.

Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj., Roman.
As noun, a Roman.

Rōmulus, -ī, m., Romulus, the
founder of Rome.

rūrsus, adv., in turn, again.

S

Sabīnī, -ōrum, m., the Sabines.

saecellum, -ī, n., a little sanctuary,
chapel.

sacer, -cra, -crum, adj., sacred,
consecrated.

sacerdōs, -ōtis, m. and f., a
priest, priestess.

saepe, adv., often. Comp. **sae-
pius, Sup. saepissimē.**

saepiō, -īre, -sī, -tum, to hedge
about, hedge in, fortify.

sagitta, -ae, f., an arrow.

sagittārius, -ī, m., an archer,
bowman.

Salī, -ōrum, m., the Salii, a col-
lege of priests founded by Numa.

saltō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to dance.

saltus, -ūs, m., a forest, woodland,
pasture.

(saltus, -ūs), m., a leaping, leap,
bound. Only in acc. and abl. in
both numbers.

salūs, -ūtis, f., safety, welfare.

sāctē, adv., scrupulously, relig-
iously, reverently. Comp. **sānc-
tius, Sup. sāctissimē.**

sanguis, -guinis, m., blood.

sapiēns, -entis, adj., wise, dis-
creet.

satelles, -itis, m. and f., com-
panion, assistant.

satis, adj., indecl., enough, suffi-
cient. Also used as noun.

**satisfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -fac
tum,** to give satisfaction, satisfy

saxum, -ī, n., a rock.

scalae, -ārum, f., a ladder, scal-
ing-ladder.

scelus, -eris, n., a crime, wicked-
ness.

scindō, -ere, scidī, scissum, to
cleave, divide, rend.

sciō, -īre, -ivī, -itum, to know,
understand.

scissus, part. of scindō, rent,
cleft.

scriba, -ae, m., a secretary, clerk.

scrobis, -is, m. and f., a ditch,
trench.

scūtum, -ī, n., a shield.

sēcrētus, -a, -um, adj., separate,
apart, secret.

secundus, -a, -um, adj., follow-
ing, second, favorable.

secūris, -is, f., an axe.

sed, conj., *but*.

sedeō, -ēre, **sēdī**, **sessum**, to sit, be still, delay.

sēditō, -ōnis, f., dissension, civil discord, sedition.

Sedulius, -ī, m., *Sedulius*, a Gallic leader.

sēgniter, adv., slothfully, slowly, lazily.

sella, -ae, f., a chair, stool; **sella curūlis**, the magistrates' chair.

semper, adv., always, ever.

senātor, -ōris, m., a senator.

senātus, -ūs, m., the senate, the council of state at Rome.

senectūs, -ūtis, f., old age, age.

senior, -ōris, adj., comp. of **senex**, older, elder. As noun, the elders, the older men.

sententia, -ae, f., opinion, judgment, sentiment, purpose.

sepeliō, -īre, -īvī, **sepultum**, to bury.

septentrionēs, -um, m. plu., the seven stars of the Great Bear, the north.

septuāgintā, num. adj., seventy.

sequor, -ī, **secūtus sum**, dep., to follow, succeed, come after, pursue.

sermō, -ōnis, m., a discourse, conversation, talk.

serō, adv., late, too late.

servilis, -e, adj., slavish, servile.

servitūs, -ūtis, f., slavery, servitude.

servus, -ī, m., a slave, servant, bondsman.

seu or **sive**, conj., or if, whether.

sex, num. adj., six.

sexāgintā, num. adj., sixty.

sī, conj., if, whether.

sic, adv., thus, so.

siccus, -a, -um, adj., dry. As noun, dry land.

Sicilia, -ae, f., the island of Sicily.

Siculī, -ōrum, m., the Sicilians, inhabitants of Sicily.

significātiō, -ōnis, f., an indication, signal, warning.

significō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to make signs, show, indicate.

signum, -ī, n., a sign, indication, military standard, banner.

silentium, -ī, n., silence.

sileō, -ere, -uī, —, to be still, be silent.

Silvia, -ae, f., (Rhea) *Silvia*, the mother of Romulus and Remus.

similis, -e, adj., like, similar.

simplex, -icis, adj., simple, plain, unmixed.

simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to pretend, feign.

sine, prep. with abl., without.

singulāris, -e, adj., singular, single, remarkable, alone.

singulī, -ae, -a, distrib. adj., one at a time, single, one to each.

sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., left, on the left, unfavorable.

situs, -ūs, m., situation, site, position.

societās, -ātis, f., union, alliance.

sociō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to unite, associate, share.

socius, -ī, m., ally, companion, associate.

sōl, **sōlis**, m., the sun.

soleō, -ēre, -litus sum, semidep.,
to be wont, be accustomed.

sōlitūdō, -inis [sōlus], f., lone-
liness, solitude, a lonely place,
desert.

sōlum, adv., alone, only.

sōlus, -a, -um, adj., alone, only.

soror, -ōris, f., a sister.

sors, sortis, f., a lot, chance, fate.

spatium, -i, n., a space, extent,
distance.

speciēs (-ēi), f., appearance,
form, looks.

spectāculum, -i, n., a show, spec-
tacle.

spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to look
at, observe, examine, extend, lie.

spernō, -ere, sprēvī, sprētum,
to despise, reject, scorn, spurn.

spolium, -i, n., mostly in the plu.,
spoil, booty, arms taken from
an enemy.

statim, adv., forthwith, immedi-
ately.

statiō, -ōnis [stō], f., a position,
station, post, outposts, sentries,
guards.

statua, -ae [stō], f., a statue,
image.

status, -ūs [stō], m., standing,
position, condition.

stimulus, -i, m., a prick, spur,
pointed stake planted in the
ground to hinder the enemy.

strāgēs, -is, f., overthrow, defeat,
slaughter, carnage.

studium, -i, n., zeal, desire, in-
clination, pursuit.

stultitia, -ae, f., folly.

suādeō, -ēre, suāsī, suāsum, to
advise, urge, persuade.

subeō, -ire, -iī, -itum [sub + eō],
to go under, undergo, endure,
come up.

subiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum [sub
+ iaciō], to place under, make
subject, bring up.

subigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum [sub
+ agō], to overcome, subjugate,
drive, compel.

subitō, adv., suddenly.

sublicius, -a, -um, adj., resting
upon piles; pōns sublicius, the
pile-bridge (over the Tiber at
Rome).

subluō, -ere, —, -tum, to wash
below.

submittō, -ere, -misi, -missum
[sub + mittō], to let down, send
secretly, send as aid.

subolēs, -is, f., offspring.

subrideō, -ēre, -risi, — [sub
+ rideō], to smile.

subsequor, -ī, -secutus sum, to
follow after, follow.

subsidiū, -i, n., a reserve force,
reinforcement, relief, help.

succēdō, -ere, -cēssi, -cēssum
[sub + cēdō], to follow, come
up, come after, succeed.

succumbō, -ere, -cubi, -cubi-
tum [sub + cumbō], to sub-
mit, yield, give up.

succurrō, -ere, -cursum [sub +
currō], to run to help, assist,
succor.

sudis, -is, f., a stake.

sufficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum [sub
+ faciō], to be sufficient, suffice.

suī, gen. of the reflex. pron., nom.
wanting, himself, herself, itself,
themselves.

sum, esse, fui, irreg. verb, *to be*.
summus, -a, -um, adj., super. of
superus, *highest, best, greatest, supreme*.

sūmō, -ere, sūmpai, sūmptum,
to take, undertake, begin.

super, prep. with acc. and abl.,
*over, above, on, about, concern-
 ing, beyond*.

superāstō, -āre, -stiti, —, *to
 stand upon*.

superbia, -ae, f., *haughtiness, ar-
 rogance*.

superincidō, -ere, —, —, *to
 fall upon from above*.

superior, -ius, adj., *higher, greater,
 better*, comp. of **superus**.

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to go
 over, surpass, overcome, sub-
 due*.

superus, -a, -um [**super**], adj.,
above, higher. Comp. **superior**,
 Sup. **suprēmus** or **sum-
 mus**.

**superveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ven-
 tum** [**super** + **veniō**], *to come
 upon, come up*.

suppetō, -ere, -ivī, -itum, *to
 be at hand, be present, to suf-
 fice*.

supplicium, -ī, n., *a punishment,
 penalty*.

suprā, adv., *above, before*.

suscipio, -ere, -cepī, -ceptum
 [**sub** + **capiō**], *to take, receive,
 begin, undertake, undergo*.

sustineō, -ere, -ui, -tentum [**sub**
 + **teneō**], *to hold up, sustain,
 withstand*.

suus, -a, -um, poss. pron., *his,
 hers, its, theirs, one's own*.

Syrācūsae, -ārum, f., *Syracuse,
 the chief city of Sicily*.

Syrācūsānī, -ōrum, m., *the Syra-
 cusans*.

T

tabula, -ae, f., *a writing-tablet,
 record, list*.

tālis, -e, adj., *such, of such a
 kind; tālis . . . quālis, such
 . . . as*.

tamen, adv., *nevertheless, still,
 yet*.

tantus, -a, -um, adj., *so great,
 so much, such*. See **quantus**.

Tarentīnī, -ōrum, m., *the Taren-
 tines, inhabitants of Tarentum*.

Tarpēia, -ae, f., *Tarpeia*.

Tarquīnī, -ōrum, m., *the Tar-
 quins, one of the families of
 Roman kings*.

Tatius, -ī, m., *Tatius, a name of
 a Sabine leader*.

tōlum, -ī, n., *a weapon, javelin,
 missile*.

temerārius, -a, -um, adj., *rash,
 inconsiderate, indiscreet*.

temeritās, -ātis, f., *rashness, in-
 discretion, temerity*.

tempestās, -ātis, f., *a storm, tem-
 pest, weather*.

templum, -ī, n., *a temple, sanc-
 tuary*.

temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to at-
 tempt, try*.

tempus, -oris, n., *time, season*.

teneō, -ere, -ui, -tum, *to hold,
 keep, retain, maintain, defend*.

Terentius, -ī, m., *Terentius, a
 Roman name*.

tergum, -ī, n., *the back, rear*.

terra, -ae, f., the earth, land, region, country.

terreo, -ēre, -uī, -itum, to frighten, terrify, deter.

terribilis, -e, adj., dreadful, fearful.

terror, -ōris, m., alarm, fear, fright.

tēstimōnium, -ī, n., testimony, evidence, proof.

tēstis, -is, m. and f., a witness.

tēstūdō, -inis, f., a tortoise, a shelter of shields used by besiegers, a testudo.

Teutonēs, -um, m., the Teutones, a German tribe.

theātrum, -ī, n., a theater, place of exhibition.

Tiberis, -is, m., the Tiber.

timor, -ōris, m., fear, dread.

Timoleōn, -ontis, m., Timoleon, a Corinthian who went to the assistance of the Syracusans.

Titus, -ī, m., Titus, a Roman name.

tolero, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, to endure, bear, hold out, support.

tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum, to raise, lift up, carry off, take away.

tonitrus, -ūs, m., thunder. Sometimes neuter in the plu.

tormentum, -ī, n., an engine for hurling stones or darts, torture.

tot, indecl. adj., so many.

tōtus, -a, -um, adj., the whole, all.

trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditum [trāns + dō], to give up, deliver, surrender, hand down.

trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractum, to drag along, to draw, derive, delay, prolong.

trāciō, -ere, -ieci, -iectum [trāns + iaciō], to throw across, transfer, lead over, cross over.

trānō, -āre, -āvi, —, to swim across, or over.

trāscendō, -ere, -ī, —, to pass over, cross, surmount.

trāseō, -īre, -iī, -itum [trāns + eō], to go over, go across, pass by.

trānsodiō, -ere, -fodi, -fossam, to dig through, transfix, pierce.

trānsiliō, -īre, -uī, —, to leap over.

trānsmarinus, -a, -um, adj., from beyond sea, transmarine.

trecentī, -ae, -a, num. adj., three hundred.

trēs, tria, num. adj., three.

tribūnus, -ī, m., a tribune.

tribuō, -ere, -ī, -ūtum, to assign, ascribe, distribute, bestow.

trīgintā, num. adj., indecl., thirty.

trux, truciis, adj., fierce, savage.

tū, tuī, pers. pron., you, thou.

tuba, -ae, f., a trumpet.

tum, adv., then, at that time.

tunc, adv., then, at that time, just then.

turbō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, to disturb, throw into confusion.

turma, -ae, f., a troop, squadron.

turpis, -e, adj., disgraceful, unseemly, base.

turpiter [turpis], adv., basely, shamefully, dishonorably.

turris, -is, f., a tower.

tūtēla, -ae, f., safeguard, defense.

tūtus, -a, -um, adj., *safe, secure, protected.*

tuus, -a, -um, poss. pron., *thy, thine, your, yours.*

tyrannis, -idis, f., *arbitrary power, tyranny.*

tyrannus, -i, m., *an absolute ruler, usurper, despot, tyrant.*

U

ūber, -eris, n., *an udder, breast.*

ubi, adv., rel. and interrog., *where, in which place, whereby; where? in what place?*

ullus, -a, -um, adj., *any, any one.*

ūlterior, -ius, adj., comp., *farther, on the farther side, more remote.*

ūltimus, -a, -um, sup. of **ūlterior**.

ūltrō, adv., *beyond, of one's own accord, voluntarily.*

ululātus, -ūs, m., *a howling, war-whoop.*

umquam, adv., *ever, at any time.*

ūndecim, num. adj., *eleven.*

undique, adv., *everywhere, on all sides, from every side.*

ūniversus, -a, -um, adj., *all, whole, entire.*

ūnus, -a, -um, num. adj., *one, one only, alone.*

urbs, **urbis**, f., *a city.*

ūsq̄ue, adv., *even, as far as, all the way.*

ūsus, -ūs, m., *use, practice, experience, need, necessity.*

ut, conj., *that, so that, in order that.* As adv., *as, just as, how.*

uter, **utra**, **utrum**, adj., interrog., *which of two? which?* Relative,

whichever (of two), the one who or which (of two).

uterque, **utraq̄ue**, **utrumque**, adj., *each, both.*

ūtilis, -e [**ūtor**], adj., *useful, serviceable.*

ūtor, -i, **ūsus sum**, dep., *to use, make use of, enjoy, employ, practise, exercise.*

utrimque, adv., *on both sides.*

uxor, -ōris, f., *a wife.*

V

vacuēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum [**vacuus** + **faciō**], *to make empty, make vacant, vacate.*

vadimōnium, -i, n., *bail for appearance, bail, security.*

vāgītus, -ūs, m., *a crying.*

valeō, -ēre, -uī, —, *to be strong, have influence, avail, be able.*

Valerius, -i, m., *Valerius, a Roman name.*

valētūdō, -inis [**valeō**], f., *health, state of health, feebleness.*

vāllum, -i, n., *a rampart formed of stakes, palisade, fortification.*

varius, -a, -um, adj., *various, different, diverse.*

Varrō, -ōnis, m., *Varro, a Roman name.*

vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to lay waste, ravage, devastate.*

vāstus, -a, -um, adj., *waste, desert, vast.*

vehementer, adv., *violently, eagerly, impetuously.* Comp. **vehementius**.

vehiculum, -i [**vehō**], n., *a carriage, vehicle.*

vehō, -ere, vexī, vectum, to
carry, convey, bear.

velutī, adv., as, just as. Also
written **velut.**

veniō, -ire, vēnī, ventum, to
come.

venor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., to
hunt.

ventus, -ī, m., the wind.

verbum, -ī, n., a word.

Vercassivellaunus, -ī, m., Ver-
cassivellaunus, a Gallic chief.

Vercingetorix, -īgis, m., Vercin-
getorix, the leader of the Gauls.

vērō, adv., truly, truthfully.

vereor, -ērī, -itus sum, to stand
in awe of, revere, fear, be afraid.

vērō, adv., in truth, in fact, surely,
but in fact.

versō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to keep
turning, think over, meditate.
In the pass., to be, be situated,
engaged in, busy one's self
with.

vertō, -ere, -ī, versum, to turn,
turn back; *terga vertere*, to
turn their backs, take to flight.

vērū, adv., but in truth, but.

Vesta, -ae, f., Vesta, goddess of
the hearth and home.

vester, -tra, -trum, poss. pron.,
your, yours.

vēstigium, -ī, n., a footstep, trace,
vestige.

vestis, -is, f., clothing, garments,
garb.

vestitus, -ūs, dress, attire, cloth-
ing.

vetus, -eris, adj., old, former, an-
cient. Comp. **vetustior**, Sup.
veterrimus.

vēxō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to harass,
trouble, annoy.

vīcēsīmus, -a, -um, num. adj.,
the twentieth.

vīcīnus, -a, -um, adj., near, neigh-
boring.

viciis, gen. (nom. not used), change,
succession; in **vicem**, in turn,
successively.

victor, -ōris, m., a victor, con-
queror.

victōria, -ae, f., victory.

vīcus, -ī, m., a village, hamlet.

vidēlicet, adv., evidently, plainly,
forsooth, of course.

videō, -ēre, -vidī, -vīsum, to see,
perceive. In the pass., to seem,
appear.

vigīla, -ae, f., a watch, guard,
watching, division of the night.

vīgintī, num. adj., twenty.

vinciō, -ire, vinxī, vinctum, to
bind, fasten.

vincō, -ēre, viciī, victum, to
conquer, defeat, subdue.

vinculum, -ī [vinciō], n., that
which binds, a chain, bond, fet-
ter.

vindicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to
assert a claim to, defend, punish.

vīnum, -ī, n., wine.

vir, virī, m., a man, husband.

virgō, -inis, f., a maiden, girl.

Viridomarus, -ī, m., Viridomarus,
a Gallic chief.

virītim [vir], adv., man by man,
to each man.

virtūs, -ūtis [vir], f., manliness,
worth, valor, courage.

vīs (gen. wanting), acc. vim, f.,
strength, force, power, number.

vīta , -ae, f., <i>life</i> .	<i>make a vow, promise solemnly,</i>
vīvō , -ere, vixī , vīctum , <i>to live</i> .	<i>vow.</i>
vīvus , -a, -um, adj., <i>living, alive</i> .	vōx , vōcis [vocō], f., <i>the voice,</i>
vix , adv., <i>with difficulty, hardly,</i>	<i>utterance, word.</i>
<i>scarcely.</i>	vulgō , adv., <i>commonly, generally.</i>
vocō , -āre, -āvi, -ātum, <i>to call,</i>	vulnerō , -āre, -āvi, -ātum, <i>to</i>
<i>name, summon, invoke.</i>	<i>wound, hurt.</i>
volō , velle , volui , <i>to wish, be</i>	vulnus , -eris, n., <i>a wound.</i>
<i>willing, desire.</i>	vultur , -uris, m., <i>a vulture.</i>
vōtum , -ī, n., <i>a vow, pledge.</i>	vultus , -ūs, m., <i>countenance,</i>
voveō , -ēre, vōvi , vōtum , <i>to</i>	<i>looks, face, expression.</i>

Norwood Press

J. S. Cushing & Co. — Berwick & Smith
Norwood Mass. U.S.A.









